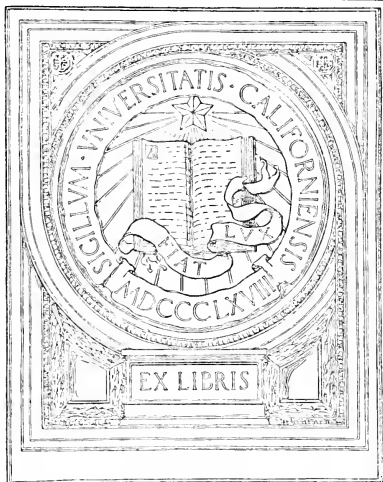


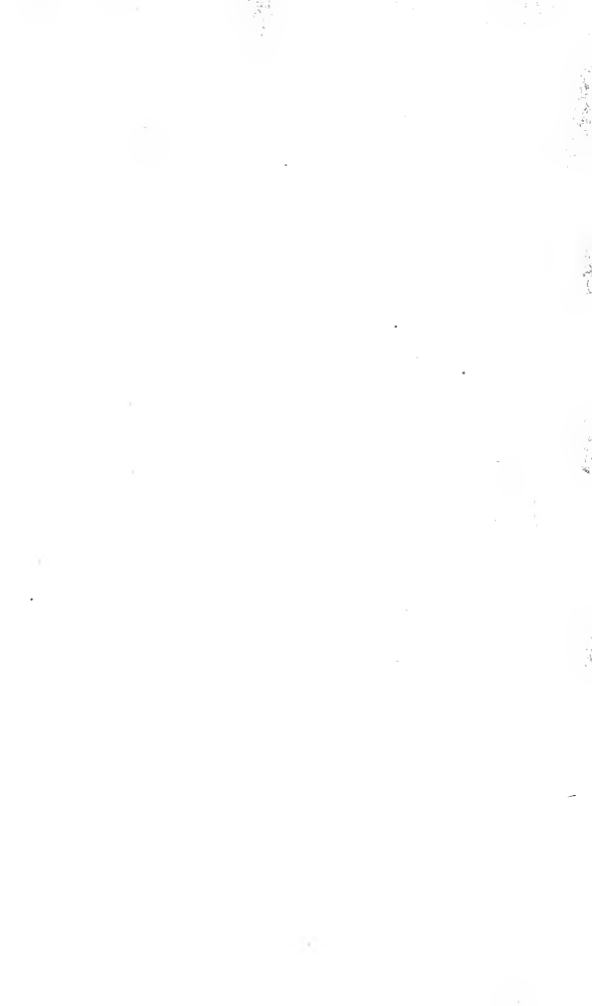
GIFT OF  
Provost  
Monroe L. Deutsch



EX LIBRIS



EX LIBRIS





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







A ROMAN ORATOR

# FIRST YEAR LATIN

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

BOSTON, U.S.A.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

*The Athenæum Press*

1902

121 28 = 7  
C 7 / 3  
1 /

COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY  
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL  

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

NO. 1000  
PUBLISHED BY  
THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

## PREFACE

WHAT grasp of the Latin language may be reasonably expected of an intelligent and industrious pupil of fourteen who has had five recitations a week for a school year of thirty-eight weeks?

1. He should know the principles of pronunciation and should have had sufficient practice in following and imitating his teacher to read Latin that he knows the meaning of without gross errors in accent or in the quantity of final syllables, and with some idea of grouping words and phrases so as to indicate the sense.

2. He should have acquired such familiarity with inflected forms as to recognize unerringly the place of a form. Half a hundred fundamental principles of syntax should have become a permanent part of his mental furnishing, chiefly through manifold illustrations in the exercises and reading lessons, subordinately through practical application in turning English into Latin.

3. Ten of his thirty-eight weeks may well have been devoted to practice in metaphrasing and translating selections of easy Latin into idiomatic English, and to acquiring as large and varied a working vocabulary as the reading and re-reading of twenty-five or thirty pages could be expected to give.

4. Finally, a moderate appreciation of Latin order and of the difference in the arrangement of corresponding words in Latin and in English, and a very moderate degree of facility in applying the principles of syntax in the translation of English into Latin may fairly be demanded.

So much may be set down as a reasonable achievement for an intelligent pupil in a year's time under good teaching.

This book has been written to exhibit in detail, to the best of the authors' ability, the scheme of work roughly sketched above. The first few lessons have purposely been made somewhat easier than is usual, and the progression in difficulty gradual for the benefit of pupils unfamiliar with English grammar. Some classes may be able to compass two of these easier lessons at a time.

To insure approximate evenness in the amount of time and work demanded of learners for the several lessons, no lesson has been permitted to exceed two pages in length.

The importance of the verb in the Latin inflectional system and the great amount of practice required to master its forms thoroughly have seemed a good reason for introducing it at the outset. The development of the tenses of the indicative has been continuous with only such interruptions as seemed necessary to enable the learner to digest and assimilate what he has acquired. It will be seen that the method of comparison is freely used in the treatment of the verb, as, for example, tenses similarly formed in different conjugations are placed side by side to be learned together.

This plan has been adopted for two reasons, either of which would sufficiently justify it: to ease the dead pull upon the memory, and to foster the habit of observation and comparison. It is often easier to learn two things or several that have some relation of likeness or contrast, than to learn either by itself, and the discerning of likenesses and differences is itself largely the process and sum of education. Only when the learner has studied and practised the verb in parts is he required, through review lessons, to survey and master it as a whole.

Several features that need only be mentioned will, it is hoped, commend themselves to teachers:



(1) The compression that will certainly make it possible for high school classes to go through the seventy-five lessons twice in from twenty-five to twenty-eight weeks.

(2) The relative shortening of the exercises for translation into Latin. If any class seems to need more of such practice it may be supplemented by having a translation of the Latin exercises written out and after a little interval retranslated into Latin during the recitation.

(3) The frequent interspersion of reviews and of reading lessons that anticipate no following principle of syntax.

(4) The summary of rules for reference and the index. The latter is strangely omitted from most books of this kind, but is certainly convenient and useful.

(5) The "Essentials of Grammar" prefixed to the lessons, which should help to adapt the book to learners who come to the study of Latin with little or no knowledge of English grammar.

(6) The copious selections for reading at the end of the book, which will be found upon examination to be carefully graded in point of difficulty and altogether interesting in character.

As an aid to teachers who may use this book, the authors have prepared a *Teacher's Manual* containing eight pages of general suggestions followed by notes on each lesson.

The authors wish to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Ada Townsend of Evanston, Ill., for several valuable suggestions, and particularly to Mr. George F. Fiske, Principal of the Wadleigh School, Winchester, Mass., who has read all the proof sheets with a scholar's conscientious care and aided materially in perfecting the work.

WILLIAM C. COLLAR

M. GRANT DANIELL

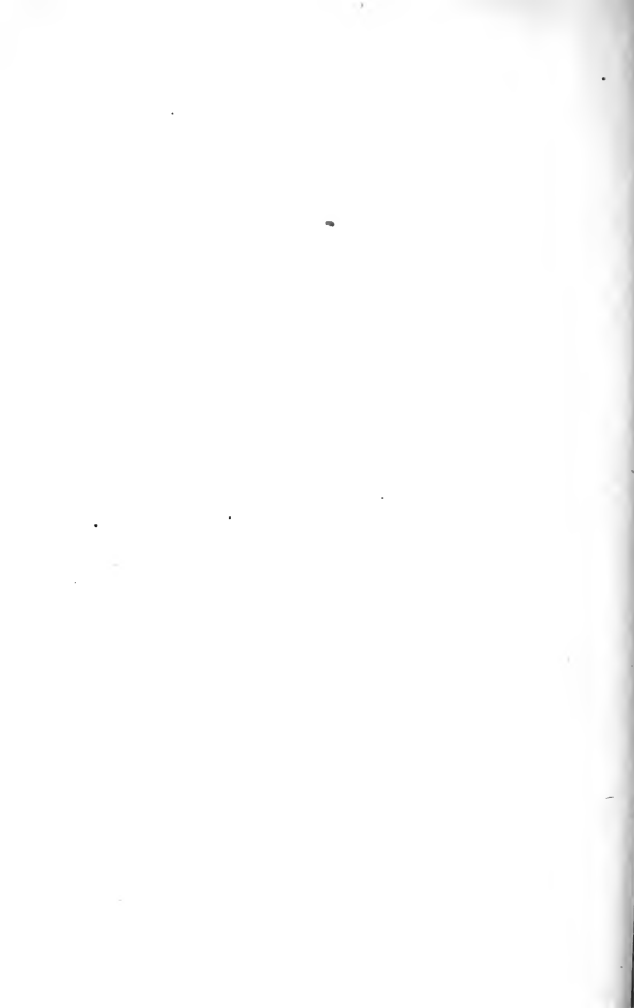


## NOTE TO TEACHERS

It is recommended that of the *Selections for Reading* (pp. 171-202) the *Anecdotes*, the *Stories of Hercules*, and the *Stories of Ulysses* be read from time to time, as pupils advance through the Lessons. These selections are easy and with a little preliminary help from the teacher can be read by pupils with interest and profit, without waiting till the Lessons are finished.

Pupils are early referred to the general Vocabulary for new words that occur in the reading lessons. This has been done in order that they may become familiar by degrees with the use of a general vocabulary, before the continuous reading of the selections at the end of the book is entered upon. They should read the explanatory notes that precede the Latin-English Vocabulary, and from the beginning of their use of it become accustomed to observe the formation and derivation of words, the synonyms, and the English derivatives and cognates that are given.

As many pupils will pass from this book to the *Gate to Caesar* or to *Caesar's Gallic War*, it is recommended that in conjunction with the selections from Caesar the *Stories of Ulysses* be reviewed, since in these the vocabulary and construction of Caesar are somewhat closely imitated.



# CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR . . . . .	1-13
INTRODUCTORY: Alphabet, Pronunciation, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender . . . . .	15-19
I. FIRST DECLENSION.— Subject, Nominative Case.— Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs . . . . .	20, 21
II. FIRST DECLENSION.— <i>Direct Object—Accusative Case</i> . . . . .	22, 23
III. FIRST CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Present. <i>Agree- ment of Verbs.</i> — CONVERSATION . . . . .	24, 25
IV. FIRST DECLENSION.— <i>Genitive Case—Limiting Genitive.</i> — CONVERSATION . . . . .	26, 27
V. SECOND CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Present.— REVIEW.— CONVERSATION . . . . .	28, 29
VI. FIRST DECLENSION.— <i>Indirect Object—Dative Case.</i> — <i>Ablative with in.</i> — CONVERSATION . . . . .	30, 31
VII. SECOND DECLENSION: Words in <b>-us</b> and <b>-um</b> .— REVIEW.— CONVERSATION . . . . .	32, 33
VIII. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.— <i>Agreement of Adjec- tives</i> . . . . .	34, 35
IX. THE VERB <b>sum</b> : Indicative Present.— <i>Predicate Noun and Adjective.</i> — REVIEW . . . . .	36, 37
X. SECOND DECLENSION: Words in <b>-er</b> , <b>-erī</b> .— REVIEW.— CONVERSATION . . . . .	38, 39
XI. SECOND DECLENSION: Words in <b>-er</b> , <b>-rī</b> .— <i>Apposition</i> . . . . .	40, 41
XII. USES OF THE DATIVE: <i>Dative of Possessor, Dative with Adjectives.</i> — REVIEW . . . . .	42, 43
XIII. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: Active Indicative Imperfect.— <i>Ablative of Means</i> . . . . .	44, 45
XIV. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: Active Indicative Future.— <i>Ablative of Manner</i> . . . . .	46, 47
XV. FIRST CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Perfect.— READ- ING LESSON: THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES . . . . .	48, 49
XVI. SECOND CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Perfect . . . . .	50, 51

LESSON	PAGE
XVII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>is</b> . . . . .	52, 53
XVIII. THE INTERROGATIVE <b>quis</b> .—REVIEW . . . . .	54, 55
XIX. THIRD CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect . . . . .	56, 57
XX. REVIEW.—READING LESSON: ICARUS . . . . .	58, 59
XXI. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems . . . . .	60, 61
XXII. THIRD CONJUGATION: Verbs in <b>-iō</b> ; Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect.— <i>Place</i> <i>Whence and Whither</i> . . . . .	62, 63
XXIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems.— <i>Ablative of</i> <i>Cause</i> .—REVIEW . . . . .	64, 65
XXIV. THIRD DECLENSION: Stems in <b>-i</b> . . . . .	66, 67
XXV. THIRD DECLENSION: Gender . . . . .	68, 69
XXVI. REVIEW.—READING LESSON: HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE.—CONVERSATION . . . . .	70, 71
XXVII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—READ- ING LESSON: CAESAR IN GAUL . . . . .	72, 73
XXVIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect.— <i>Ablative of Time</i> . . . . .	74, 75
XXIX. ALL CONJUGATIONS: Active Indicative Pluperfect and Future Perfect.—REVIEW . . . . .	76, 77
XXX. SYNTAX OF NAMES OF TOWNS, AND OF <b>domus</b> AND <b>rūs</b> : <i>Locative Case</i> . . . . .	78, 79
XXXI. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <b>hic</b> AND <b>ille</b> .—READING LESSON: BRITAIN INVADED . . . . .	80, 81
XXXII. PASSIVE VOICE: Active and Passive Indicative Present.— <i>Ablative of Agent</i> . . . . .	82, 83
XXXIII. THE RELATIVE <b>quī</b> .— <i>Agreement of Relative</i> . . . . .	84, 85
XXXIV. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE: Indicative Present, Imper- fect, and Future of <b>regō</b> and <b>capiō</b> . . . . .	86, 87
XXXV. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	88, 89
XXXVI. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE: Indicative Present, Imper- fect, and Future of <b>audiō</b> .—READING LESSON: CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER . . . . .	90, 91
XXXVII. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.— <i>Ablative of Separation</i> . . . . .	92, 93
XXXVIII. PASSIVE VOICE—ALL CONJUGATIONS: Indicative Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect . . . . .	94, 95
XXXIX. REVIEW.—READING LESSON: SCIPIO AND HANNI- BAL . . . . .	96, 97
XL. FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	98, 99

LESSON	PAGE
XLI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.— <i>Ablative of Comparison</i> . . . . .	100, 101
XLII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.— <i>Partitive Genitive</i> . . . . .	102, 103
XLIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.— <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i> . . . . .	104, 105
XLIV. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.— CONVERSATION . . . . .	106, 107
XLV. READING LESSON: A LETTER FROM POMPEII.— CONVERSATION.— REVIEW . . . . .	108, 109
XLVI. FIFTH DECLENSION.— <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . . . . .	110, 111
XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: <i>Purpose Clauses with ut and nē</i> . . . . .	112, 113
XLVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: <i>Purpose Clauses.— Result Clauses with ut and ut nōn</i> . . . . .	114, 115
XLIX. INDIRECT QUESTION.— <i>Sequence of Tenses</i> . . . . .	116, 117
I. READING LESSON: CAESAR WINS A VICTORY.— REVIEW . . . . .	118, 119
II. NUMERALS.— <i>Descriptive Ablative and Genitive</i> . . . . .	120, 121
LII. NUMERALS . . . . .	122, 123
LIII. TEN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.— READING LESSON: CAESAR AND VERGIL . . . . .	124, 125
LIV. THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH . . . . .	126, 127
LV. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE: Indirect Statement.— <i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i> . . . . .	128, 129
LVI. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>idem, ipse, iste</i> . . . . .	130, 131
LVII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.— READING LESSON: AFRICA. — REVIEW . . . . .	132, 133
LVIII. IMPERATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE: <i>Commands and Appeals</i> . . . . .	134, 135
LIX. COMPOUNDS OF <i>sum</i> .— READING LESSON: FRIENDSHIP— <i>Dative with Compounds; Dative of Service</i> . . . . .	136, 137
LX. PARTICIPLES.— READING LESSON: FABRICIUS AND THE PHYSICIAN . . . . .	138, 139
LXI. PARTICIPLES.— <i>Ablative Absolute</i> . . . . .	140, 141
LXII. PARTICIPLES: THE GERUNDIVE . . . . .	142, 143
LXIII. THE GERUND . . . . .	144, 145
LXIV. THE SUPINE.— <i>Ablative of Specification</i> .— READING LESSON: ROMAN CONSULS.— REVIEW . . . . .	146, 147
LXV. REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS: First and Second Conju- gations.— READING LESSON: ROMULUS AND REMUS . . . . .	148, 149
LXVI. REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS: Third and Fourth Conju- gations.— READING LESSON: ROMULUS AND REMUS . . . . .	150, 151

LESSON	PAGE
LXVII. DEPONENT VERBS. — <i>Ablative with Certain Deponents</i>	152, 153
LXVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i> . — <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i> . . . . .	154, 155
LXIX. <b>Cum</b> TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE. — READING LESSON: QUINTUS FABIUS MAXIMUS . . . . .	156, 157
LXX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	158, 159
LXXI. REVIEW. — READING LESSON: RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS . . . . .	160, 161
LXXII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <i>eō, ferō, fiō</i> . — <i>Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing</i> . — READING LESSON: RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS . . . . .	162, 163
LXXIII. IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. — <i>Relative of Purpose</i> . — READING LESSON: RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS	164, 165
LXXIV. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — <i>Dative of Agent</i> .	166, 167
LXXV. EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE. — REVIEW. — READING LESSON: THE ROMANS WIN THEIR FIRST NAVAL VICTORY . . . . .	168, 169
SELECTIONS FOR READING:	
ANECDOTES . . . . .	171-173
STORIES OF HERCULES . . . . .	173-180
STORIES OF ULYSSES . . . . .	180-186
FABLES . . . . .	186-190
STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY . . . . .	190-198
CAESAR: GALLIC WAR . . . . .	199-202
APPENDIX. TABLES OF INFLECTION, CONJUGATION, ETC. . .	203-239
RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	241-244
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	245-290
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	291-301
INDEX . . . . .	303-311



## ILLUSTRATIONS

A Roman Orator (Statue of Cato) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
A Roman Lady . . . . .	14
Priest, Altar ( <i>āra</i> ), and Suppliant ( <i>supplex</i> ) . . . . .	21
Javelin ( <i>pīlum</i> ) and Sword ( <i>gladius</i> ) . . . . .	27
Trumpet ( <i>tuba</i> ) . . . . .	35
Spear ( <i>hasta</i> ) . . . . .	43
Roman Headdresses . . . . .	51
Writing Materials, representing an inkstand ( <i>atramentārium</i> , for black and red ink); a papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[INI] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[S]) to Marcus Lucretius, priest of Mars, decurion, Pompeii . . . . .	57
The Fall of Icarus. Icarus, following his father, in flight has fallen unseen and been washed ashore. Daedalus now discovers his lifeless body. A nymph sits near Icarus. On the left is a Greek temple . . . . .	59
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Aeneas carrying Anchises and the Palladium. CAESAR . . . . .	61
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR . . . . .	69
A Roman Coin. Horatius Cocles at the Bridge . . . . .	71
Ancient Plough ( <i>arātrum</i> ) . . . . .	87
Roman Helmets ( <i>galeae</i> ) . . . . .	89
Coriolanus . . . . .	91
Temple ( <i>templum</i> ). Restoration of the Temple of Vesta at Rome . . . . .	95
Scipio. Ancient Statue . . . . .	97
Hannibal. Ancient bust in Naples Museum . . . . .	97
View of Naples and Vesuvius . . . . .	108
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR . . . . .	119
Roman Soldiers. Showing shields, helmets, swords, javelins, sandals, breast armor, sling, pack carried on a pole . . . . .	123
Caesar. Bust in the Louvre, Paris . . . . .	125

	PAGE
Vergil. Bust at Caproni's, Boston . . . . .	125
Roman Sandals . . . . .	143
A Roman Coin. Obverse: veiled head of <i>Pietas</i> . CAESAR CO[N]- s[VL]TER. Reverse: <i>lituus</i> (augur's crook), <i>praefericulum</i> (dish used in sacrifices), and axe. A[VLVS] HIRTIVS PR[AEFECTVS] .	145
The Twins discovered by Faustulus . . . . .	149
Roman Coins, representing military standards . . . . .	151
Vinea . . . . .	155
Shields ( <i>scūta</i> ) . . . . .	163
Battering Ram ( <i>ariēs</i> ) . . . . .	202

# FIRST YEAR LATIN

## ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

NOTE. — These essentials apply in the main to both English and Latin grammar.

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH

#### NOUNS

1. A **Noun** is a word used as the name of a person, place, or thing : *boy, London, ship, book, star.*

*a.* A **Proper Noun** is the name of a particular person, place, or thing : *George, Boston, September, Monday.*

*b.* A **Common Noun** is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects : *boy, city, month, day.*

*c.* A **Collective Noun** is a name that in the singular form may be applied to a group of objects : *crowd, family, herd, committee.*

*d.* A **Verbal Noun** is the name of an action : *seeing, reading, writing, to see, to read, to write.*

*e.* An **Abstract Noun** is the name of a quality or condition : *goodness, truth, weakness, poverty.*

#### PRONOUNS

2. A **Pronoun** is a word used to take the place of a noun : *I, you, him, this, who.*

NOTE. — The noun for which a pronoun stands is called its antecedent. Thus, in *John goes to school, but he does not study*, the noun *John* is the antecedent of the pronoun *he*.

a. A **Personal Pronoun** is a pronoun that shows by its form whether it stands for the speaker, *I, we*, etc., that is, the **First Person**; for the person spoken to, *thou, you*, etc., that is, the **Second Person**; or for the person or thing spoken of, *he, she, it, they*, etc., that is, the **Third Person**.

NOTE. — Nouns are almost always in the third person.

b. A **Relative (or Conjunctive) Pronoun** is a pronoun that connects a subordinate clause (20), in which it stands, with the antecedent: "*The evil that men do lives after them.*" The relative pronouns are *who, which, what*, and *that*.

c. An **Interrogative Pronoun** is a pronoun that is used to ask a question: *Who is there? What shall we do?* The interrogative pronouns are *who, which*, and *what*.

d. A **Demonstrative Pronoun** is a pronoun that points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those*.

e. An **Indefinite Pronoun** is a pronoun that points out an object indefinitely: *some, one, any, other, all*, etc.

f. A **Reflexive Pronoun** is a pronoun that refers back to the subject: *He hurt himself*.

## ADJECTIVES

3. An **Adjective** is a word used to qualify or limit the meaning of a noun or pronoun: *good lesson, beautiful moon, the boy, five girls*.

a. *A, an*, and *the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called **Articles**. *The* is the **Definite Article**, *a* or *an* the **Indefinite Article**.

*b.* **Numeral Adjectives** are adjectives of number. They are either **Cardinal**, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four*; or **Ordinal**, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth*.

*c.* The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns *which* and *what* may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively **Demonstrative Adjectives**: *this book, that house*; **Indefinite Adjectives**: *some boys, any pencil*; and **Interrogative Adjectives**: *Which way shall we go? What man is that?*

*d.* Adjectives are often used as nouns: “*The land of the free and the home of the brave.*”

## VERBS

**4.** A **Verb** is a word used to declare or assert something about a person or thing: *I ride; you laugh; the leaf falls*.

*a.* A **Transitive Verb** is a verb that in the active voice (28) commonly requires an object (14) to complete its meaning: *The boy strikes the ball; the cat catches a mouse*.

*b.* An **Intransitive Verb** is a verb that does not commonly admit an object: *Birds fly; I walk*.

NOTE. — Certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind blew the snow into our faces; the wind blew furiously*.

*c.* A **Regular Verb** is a verb that forms its imperfect (past) tense (33) and past participle (34, *a*) by the addition of *d*, *t*, or *ed* to the present: present *love*, past *loved*, past participle *loved*.

*d.* An **Irregular Verb** is a verb that does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d*, *t*, or *ed* to the present : present *give*, past *gave*, past participle *given*.

*e.* An **Auxiliary Verb** is a verb that is used in the conjugation of other verbs : *I am loved* ; *do you love* ? *he has given*.

*f.* An **Impersonal Verb** is one that is used only in the third person singular, having no personal subject : *It rains* ; *it snows*.

NOTE.—In Latin there are many more impersonal verbs and impersonal uses of other verbs than in English.

#### ADVERBS

5. An **Adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb : *He walks swiftly* ; *the orange is very large* ; *he talks too fast*.

*a.* An **Adverb of Place** answers the question *where* ? — *here, below, there, hence*.

*b.* An **Adverb of Time** answers the question *when* ? — *then, now, often, seldom*.

*c.* An **Adverb of Manner** answers the question *how* ? — *so, thus, well, ill*.

*d.* An **Adverb of Degree** answers the question *how much* ? — *little, almost, much, very, enough*.

*e.* A **Modal Adverb** expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made : *yes, no, certainly, perhaps*.

*f.* A **Relative (or Conjunctive) Adverb** connects a subordinate clause (20) with that on which it depends : *The army advanced when the day dawned* ; “ *Go where glory waits thee*.”

## PREPOSITIONS

6. A **Preposition** is a word used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence: "*I stood on the bridge at midnight.*"

## CONJUNCTIONS

7. A **Conjunction** is a word used to connect words, phrases (16), clauses (20), and sentences (9): *black and white*; *he was a man of honor, but of a bad temper*; *you may go or you may stay.*

a. A **Coördinate Conjunction** is a conjunction that connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank (20, c). The conjunctions in the examples above are Coordinate.

b. A **Subordinate Conjunction** is one that connects a subordinate clause (20) with a principal clause (20, b): *I shall go to town if it is pleasant*; *he failed because he was not industrious.*

## INTERJECTIONS

8. An **Interjection** is a word used to express strong feeling, and is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence: *oh! ah! alas! hurrah!*

---

NOTE. — The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech :

Three little words we often see  
Are Articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*.

A Noun's the name of anything;  
As *school* or *garden*, *hoop* or *swing*.

Adjectives tell the kind of noun;  
As *great*, *small*, *pretty*, *white*, or *brown*.

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand ;  
*His* head, *her* hat, *your* arm, *my* hand.

Verbs tell of something being done ;  
 As *read*, *write*, *spell*, *sing*, *jump*, or *run*.

How things are done the Adverbs tell ;  
 As *slowly*, *quickly*, *ill*, or *well*.

They also tell us where and when ;  
 As *here* and *there* and *now* and *then*.

A Preposition stands before  
 A noun ; as *in* or *through* a door.

Conjunctions join : the words together ;  
 As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite ;  
 As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise ;  
 As *Oh!* how pretty ! *Ah!* how wise !

### THE SENTENCE

9. A **Sentence** is a group of words expressing a complete thought : *Stars shine ; he walks.*

10. A **Declarative** sentence is a sentence that declares or asserts something as a fact : *Water runs down hill.* An **Interrogative** sentence is a sentence that asks a question : *Who was the second president of the United States?* An **Imperative** sentence is a sentence that expresses a request, a command, or an entreaty : "*Drink, pretty creature, drink*"; "*Stand not upon the order of your going, but go at once.*" An **Exclamatory** sentence is a sentence, whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative, that expresses strong feeling or emotion : "*How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!*"

11. A **Sentence** is made up of two parts, one called the **Subject**, and the other the **Predicate**.



a. The **Subject** represents that about which something is said or asserted : *Birds sing ; you read.*

b. The **Predicate** says or asserts something about that which the subject represents : *Birds sing ; you read.*

NOTE. — Either the subject or the predicate or both may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers : *My sister's small birds | sing sweetly in the morning.*

12. The **Simple Subject** is the noun or pronoun which signifies that about which the assertion is made. The **Simple Predicate** is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate in the preceding note.

13. The **Complete Subject** is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The **Complete Predicate** is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus in the example of the note under 11 the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

14. The **Object** of a verb is a word or expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which receives the action : *I fold the paper.*

NOTE. — The **Direct Object** represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb ; the **Indirect Object** that to or for which the action is performed. Thus in *he gave me the book*, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

15. A **Predicate Noun** or a **Predicate Adjective** is a noun or an adjective used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject : *George is a farmer ; Lincoln was elected president ; the workmen are busy ; those men are reputed wise.*

*a.* The predicate noun or adjective is called the **Complement** of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called **Copulative Verbs**. The verb *be* in its various forms (*am, was, has been, etc.*) is often called the **Copula**.

*b.* The predicate noun has the same case as the subject; hence the term **Predicate Nominative**.

16. A **Phrase** is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech: in *a man of honor, of honor* is an **Adjective Phrase** because it modifies the noun *man*; in *the sun shines by day, by day* is an **Adverbial Phrase** because it limits the verb *shines*.

17. A **Simple Sentence** is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The boy bats the ball*.

18. A **Compound Sentence** is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: "*It rains and the wind is never weary.*"

NOTE.—An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon (qualify or limit) another statement.

19. A **Complex Sentence** is a sentence containing one independent (principal) and one or more dependent (subordinate) statements: *We hastened home | when the clouds began to gather*.

NOTE.—A dependent or subordinate statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way; thus the dependent statement *when the clouds began to gather* limits the verb *hastened*, telling *when* we hastened.

20. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called **clauses**, and as has already been seen, they may be either **independent (principal)** or **dependent (subordinate)**.

a. Dependent or subordinate clauses are named from their use **Adjective Clauses**: *A man who is honorable is respected*; **Adverbial Clauses**: *We go in when it rains*; or **Substantive Clauses**: *That my friend has lost his watch is certainly true*.

b. The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the **Principal Clause**. Any clause that has another dependent upon it may be called a principal clause.

c. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent, or both dependent, are said to be **Coördinate**.

### INFLECTION

21. **Inflection** is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use: *dog, dogs*; *man, men*; *love, loves, loved*.

### DECLENSION

22. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its **Declension**. Nouns and pronouns are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender.

NOTE.—In Latin, adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case, to agree with the nouns which they modify.

### NUMBER

23. A noun or pronoun is in the **Singular Number** when it means one: *hat, ox, I*; in the **Plural Number** when it means more than one: *hats, oxen, we*.

### CASE

24. There are three cases in English:

1. The **Nominative**, primarily used as the subject of a sentence: *He throws the ball*.

2. The **Possessive (Genitive)**, used to denote possession or ownership: *John throws his ball; see the queen's crown.*

3. The **Objective**, used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition: *John throws the ball to him.*

*a.* Only personal pronouns and the relative pronoun *who* have, in English, three case-forms. Nouns have the nominative and objective alike, with a separate form for the possessive (genitive).

*b.* In Latin there are seven cases; but the forms of the cases are not all different.

#### GENDER

25. The gender of English nouns is what is called **Natural Gender**, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the **Masculine Gender**: *man, boy, father*; a noun denoting a female is in the **Feminine Gender**: *woman, girl, mother*; one denoting either male or female is in the **Common Gender**: *cat, dog, parent*; one denoting a sexless object is in the **Neuter Gender**: *river, wind, mountain.*

*a.* In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: *nauta, sailor* (masc.), *māter, mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called **Grammatical Gender**, determined chiefly by the ending.

#### COMPARISON

26. The inflection of adjectives and adverbs to show degree (higher or lower) is called **Comparison**. There are three degrees of comparison, the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*,

superlative *wisest*; positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best*; positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest*.

a. Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*; *wisely*, *less wisely*, *least wisely*.

NOTE. — Comparison in Latin is indicated by change of form, and sometimes by the use of adverbs.

## CONJUGATION

27. The inflection of a verb is called **Conjugation**. Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

a. The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love*, *loves*, *loving*, and *loved*; the verb *rise* has *rise*, *rises*, *rising*, *rose*, and *risen*. Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of *verb phrases* formed by the use of auxiliaries: *I am loved*, *I shall love*, *I shall have been loved*, etc.

NOTE. — The statement in 27, however, is true of the Latin verb, which has many changes of form, as will be seen.

## VOICE

28. A verb is in the **Active Voice** when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *James struck John*; in the **Passive Voice** when it represents the subject as acted upon: *John was struck by James*.

a. Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

## MOOD

29. A verb is in the **Indicative Mood** when it states a fact or is used in a question: *Roses bloom*; *why do you smile?*

30. A verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood** when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if, though,* and the like: *If he were here, I should be glad*; "*Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*"

NOTE. — The subjunctive mood as a separate form is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative. In Latin, on the other hand, the subjunctive has a great variety of uses.

31. A verb is in the **Imperative Mood** when it expresses a command or an entreaty: *Draw your swords*; "*Give me of thy bark, O birch tree.*"

a. The subject of the imperative (*thou* or *you*) is seldom expressed.

## THE INFINITIVE

32. The **Infinitive** (*to love, to have loved,* etc.) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number, and is not used in making assertions. Like a noun it may be the subject or the complement of a verb: *To see is to believe*. Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers: *We like to begin our work early*.

a. The infinitive may also be used in other noun relations, and sometimes as an adjective or adverb.

b. The verbal noun in **-ing**, corresponding to the Latin gerund, is by some regarded as an infinitive: *Seeing is believing* = *to see is to believe*.

## TENSE

**33.** A verb is in the **Present**, **Imperfect (Past)**, or **Future Tense** according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time: *I love, I loved, I shall love.*

*a.* The **Perfect (Present Perfect) Tense** represents an action as completed in the present: *I have loved*; the **Pluperfect (Past Perfect)**, as completed in the past: *I had loved*; and the **Future Perfect**, as completed in the future: *I shall have loved.*

## THE PARTICIPLE

**34.** A **Participle** is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun: *a living death, a driven well.* Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers: *Knowing the candidate intimately, we shall not hesitate to vote for him.*

*a.* There are in English three participles in the active voice: present *loving*, past *loved*, perfect *having loved*; and three in the passive voice: present (*being*) *loved*, past *loved*, perfect *having been loved.*

*b.* The participle in **-ing** is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the **Progressive Form** of the verb: *You are loving, he was loving.*

NOTE. — The Latin has no special tenses for the progressive form.

**35.** A **Finite Verb** is a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.



A ROMAN LADY



## INTRODUCTORY

The sections on pronunciation may be most profitably used for reference. Pupils catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher, and, if they make mistakes, are interested in being referred to rules. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the poem on page 18, pronouncing slowly each line, the pupils following successively, and then together.

## ALPHABET

**36.** The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

**37.** *I* does service both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant, and is called *i-consonant*.

**38.** Of the consonants

The mutes are . . . . . **p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.**

The liquids are . . . . . **l, m, n, r.**

The sibilant is . . . . . **s.**

The double consonants are . . . **x = cs or gs, z = ds.**

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD

**39.**

## VOWELS

**ā** like the last *a* in *aha'*.

**ē** as in *they*.

**ī** as in *machine*.

**ō** as in *note*.

**ū** like *oo* in *boot*.

**ǎ** like the first *a* in *aha'*.

**ě** as in *met*.

**ī** as in *pin*.

**ǒ** as in *obey*.

**ũ<sup>1</sup>** like *oo* in *foot*.

<sup>1</sup> In *qu, gu*, and sometimes in *su*, before a vowel, *u* is a semivowel or consonant, is pronounced like *w*, and joined in utterance with the preceding letter; so likewise in *cui* and *huic*: **quis, quī, who, an'-guis, snake, cōn-sue'-tus, accustomed.**

## 40.

## DIPHTHONGS

**ae** like *ai* in *aisle*.

**ei** (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.

**eu** (rare) like *eu* in *feud*.

**au** like *ou* in *our*.

**oe** like *oi* in *boil*.

## 41.

## CONSONANTS

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following :

**c** as in *come*.

**i-consonant** like *y* in *yet*.

**t** as in *time*.

**ch** like *k* in *kite*.

**g** as in *get*.

**s** as in *sun*.

**v** like *w* in *wine*.

**ph** like *f* in *far*.

## SYLLABLES

42. 1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : **ae-gri-tū'-dō**, *sickness*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following : **a-mā'-bi-lis**, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the second vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable : **im'-pro-bus**, *bad* ; **ho'-spes**, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts : **ab'-est** (**ab**, *away* ; **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima* ; the one next to the last, the *penult* ; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

## QUANTITY

43. 1. Vowels are *long* (-) or *short* (◡). In this book the long vowels are marked, except in some titles; unmarked vowels must be regarded as short.

2. A vowel is short before a vowel or *h*: *pō-ē'-ma*, *poem*; *grā'-tī-ae*, *thanks*; *nī'-hil*, *nothing*.

3. Vowels are long before *nf*, *us*, and *gn*: *īn-fāns*, *infant*; *ī-gnis*, *fire*.

4. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long: *in-caū'-tus*, *heedless*; *in-ī'-quus* (*inaequus*), *unequal*; *cō'-gō* (*cōgō*), *collect*.

5: A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *vō'-cēs*, *voices*; *ae'-dēs*, *temple*.

6. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *sunt*, *they are*; *tem'-plam*, *temple*; *dux*, *leader*.

## ACCENT

44. 1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: *tu'-ba*, *trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *prae-dī'-cō*, *fortell*; *prae'-di-cō*, *declare*; *il-le'-ce-brae*, *snares*; *pa-ter'-nus*, *paternal*.

3. Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic: *amat'-ne*, *does he love?* *dōna'-que*, *and gifts*.

45. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, twinkle, Little Star," from *Arundines Cami*, may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements. See introductory note, p. 15.

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā,<sup>1</sup> micā, parva stella!  
 Mīror quaenam sis, tam bella!  
 Splendēns ēminus in illō,  
 Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,  
 Nec calōre prāta pāscit,  
 Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,  
 Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi, noctū quī vagātur,  
 Ob scintillulam grātātur;  
 Nī micārēs tū, nōn scīret  
 Quās per viās errāns iret.

Meum saepe thālamum lūce  
 Speculāris cūriōsā;  
 Neque carpseris sopōrem  
 Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.

CASES

46. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative, locative*. Their characteristics of form, meaning, and use are illustrated in the paradigms and exercises which follow.

<sup>1</sup> The rhythm of these lines depends on accent, as in English poetry, not on quantity, as in classic Latin poetry.

⊙ *a.* The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension.

⊙ *b.* In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in **ă**.

*c.* The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in **m**; the Accusative plural in **s**.

*d.* The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

## GENDER

47. The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

### GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

1. Nouns denoting males and names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*: **agricola**, *farmer*; **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **Padus**, *Po*; **aquilō**, *north wind*; **Iānuārius**, *January*.

2. Nouns denoting females and names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are *feminine*: **rēgīna**, *queen*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*; **Āfrica**, *Africa*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **pirus**, *pear tree*.

## LESSON I

## FIRST DECLENSION

## THE SUBJECT — NOMINATIVE CASE

## Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs

48.

*Models*

	NOUN		VERB
<i>Sing.</i>	hasta, <i>spear</i> .	<i>Sing.</i>	volat, <i>flies</i> . <sup>1</sup>
<i>Plur.</i>	hastae, <i>spears</i> .	<i>Plur.</i>	volant, <i>fly</i> .

a. Form the plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, then the plural of the verbs, according to the models.

49.

## VOCABULARY

NOUNS	VERBS
columba, f. <i>dove</i> .	ambulat, <i>walks</i> .
hasta, f. <i>spear</i> (p. 43).	cantat, <i>sings</i> .
nauta, m. <i>sailor</i> .	natat, <i>swims</i> .
puella, f. <i>girl</i> .	saltat, <i>dances</i> .
sagitta, f. <i>arrow</i> .	sonat, <i>sounds, resounds</i> .
tuba, f. <i>trumpet</i> (p. 35).	volat, <i>flies, speeds on</i> .
CONJUNCTION	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN
et, <i>and</i> .	quis, <i>who?</i> quid, <i>what?</i>

50.

*Model Sentences*

1. Puella cantat, *the girl sings*.
2. Puellae cantant, *the girls sing*.
3. Cantatne puella, *does the girl sing?*
4. Cantantne puellae, *do the girls sing?*

<sup>1</sup> Also *is flying, does fly*. So of other verbs.

*a.* In Latin there is no article: **puella** may be translated *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*; and **puellae**, *girls* or *the girls*.

*b.* What is the subject in each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate?

*c.* Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

*d.* Observe that **-ne** is the sign of a question, but is not separately translated (44, 3).

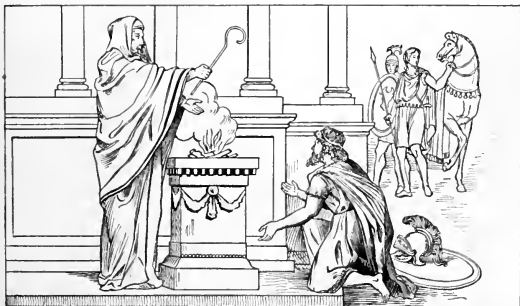
**51. Rule.** — *The subject of a verb is in the nominative.*

**52.**

**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Hasta volat.* 2. *Hastae volant.* 3. *Nauta natat.*  
 4. *Nautae natant.* 5. *Ambulatne puella?* 6. *Puellae ambulat.*  
 7. *Columbaene volant?* 8. *Sagitta volat.* 9. *Sonatne tuba?*  
 10. *Quis natat?* 11. *Puella natat.* 12. *Quis ambulat?*  
 13. *Nauta ambulat.* 14. *Nautae cantant et saltant.*

II. 1. *The sailor dances.* 2. *Do the sailors dance?* 3. *Who is singing?* 4. *Girls are singing.* 5. *What is flying?* 6. *The spear is flying.* 7. *Are trumpets resounding?* 8. *Spears and arrows fly.* 9. *The dove walks and flies.*



PRIEST, ALTAR, AND SUPPLIANT

## LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*The Stem<sup>1</sup> ends in *a*

## THE DIRECT OBJECT — ACCUSATIVE CASE

53. *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hasta, a spear</i> (as subject).	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hastaē, of a spear, or spear's.</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hastaē, to or for a spear.</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hastam, a spear</i> (as object).	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hastā, with, from, by a spear.</i>	-ā
	PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hastaē, spears</i> (as subject).	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hastārum, of spears, or spears'.</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hastīs, to or for spears.</i>	-īs <sup>2</sup>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hastās, spears</i> (as object).	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hastīs, with, from, by spears.</i>	-īs

*a.* The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative. For the locative case, see 195-197.

*b.* Terminations consist of case-endings joined with the final letter of the stem; but sometimes the final letter of the stem disappears, and sometimes the case-ending. That part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the terminations are added is called the *base*: **hast-**.

*c.* Form the nominative plural and the accusative singular and plural of each noun in 55. Form the plural of the verbs.

<sup>1</sup> The stem is the body of the word to which endings are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

<sup>2</sup> *Fīlia, daughter*, and *dea, goddess*, have the termination **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.



54. Rule of Gender. — *Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.*

55. VOCABULARY

NOUNS	VERBS
agricola, m. <i>farmer.</i>	amat, <i>loves, likes.</i>
aqua, f. <i>water.</i>	arat, <i>ploughs.</i>
Galba, m. <i>Galba.</i>	habet, <i>has.</i>
stella, f. <i>star.</i>	laudat, <i>praises.</i>
terra, f. <i>land, country.</i>	videt, <i>sees.</i>

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Nom. quis, <i>who?</i>	quid, <i>what?</i>
Acc. quem, <i>whom?</i>	quid, <i>what?</i>

56. *Model Sentences*

1. Agricola terram arat, *the farmer ploughs the land.*
2. Nautae agricolās laudant, *the sailors praise the farmers.*

a. Observe that **terram** is the object of **arat**, and **agricolās** of **laudant**. Point out the objects in the sentences of 58.

b. Imitate the order of the Latin in writing Latin sentences.

57. Rule. — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

58. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galba tubam laudat. 2. Tubāsne laudat Galba?  
 3. Puellae tubās laudant. 4. Nauta stellam videt. 5. Nautae stellās vident. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba?  
 8. Galba, quis terram arat? Agricola terram arat. 9. Arantne agricolae terram? 10. Quid volat? Sagitta volat.

II. 1. Who is walking? The sailor is walking. 2. The sailors are walking. 3. What has the farmer? The farmer has land. 4. Does Galba praise the farmers? 5. The girl sees the water and the land. 6. Do the girls love the doves?

## LESSON III

## FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-VERBS

Amō, amāre (stem amā-), love

59. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations, distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending *-re* of the active infinitive present.

I.	amāre, to love,	distinguishing vowel	ā.
II.	monēre, to advise,	“	ē.
III.	regēre, to rule,	“	ē.
IV.	audīre, to hear,	“	ī.

60.

## Paradigm

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT

## SINGULAR

## PERSONAL ENDINGS

1st Person.	amō, I love, am loving, do love.	-ō (or -m), I.
2d Person.	amās, you love, are loving, do love.	-s, thou or you.
3d Person.	amat, he loves, is loving, does love.	-t, he, she, it.

## PLURAL

1st Person.	amāmus, we love, are loving, do love.	-mus, we.
2d Person.	amātis, you love, are loving, do love.	-tis, you.
3d Person.	amant, they love, are loving, do love.	-nt, they.

a. Observe that in *amō* the final *ā* of the stem disappears, giving *amō* instead of *amaō*. In what forms is the *a* not marked long?

b. In the preceding lessons verbs have been used only in the third person, in the singular ending in *-t*, and in the plural ending in *-nt*. The above paradigm shows that verbs change their ending to denote person as well as number.

61. Rule. — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

*a.* When the subject is in the first or the second person, it is not commonly expressed. Why is it not necessary to express it?

*b.* When no subject is expressed with the third person of the Latin verb, translate with *he, she, it* in the singular, and *they* in the plural.

*c.* Like *amō* inflect the following verbs in the active indicative present.

62. INDICATIVE PRESENT	INFINITIVE PRESENT
<i>ambulō, I walk.</i>	<i>ambulāre, to walk.</i>
<i>arō, I plough.</i>	<i>arāre, to plough.</i>
<i>cantō, I sing.</i>	<i>cantāre, to sing.</i>
<i>laudō, I praise.</i>	<i>laudāre, to praise.</i>
<i>natō, I swim.</i>	<i>natāre, to swim.</i>
<i>saltō, I dance.</i>	<i>saltāre, to dance.</i>
<i>sonō, I sound.</i>	<i>sonāre, to sound.</i>
<i>volō, I fly.</i>	<i>volāre, to fly.</i>

### 63. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Ambulat, arat, cantat.* 2. *Arantne? cantantne? laudantne?* 3. *Natās, saltās, sonās.* 4. *Amāmus, volāmus, ambulāmus.* 5. *Arātis, cantātis, amātis.* 6. *Ambulāre, amant, natat.* 7. *Cantāre, ambulātis, laudāmus.* 8. *Amat, volāre, sonant.*

II. 1. *I do swim, he swims, I am swimming.* 2. *Do we dance? we sing, does he praise?* 3. *They are flying, he loves, you walk.* 4. *You are praising, they swim, he does dance.* 5. *He ploughs, to swim, do they love?*

### 64. CONVERSATION

1. *Quis columbam amat? Puella columbam amat.*
2. *Quem laudās? Galbam laudō.*
3. *Quid volat? Columba volat.*
4. *Arantne agricolae terram? Terram arant.*
5. *Nautae, quem laudātis? Agricolās laudāmus.*

## LESSON IV

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*

## THE GENITIVE CASE

65. *a.* Observe in the paradigm (53) that the genitive singular has the same form as the dative singular and the nominative plural.

*b.* Observe carefully in the paradigm the English equivalents of the genitive.

*c.* Form the genitive singular and plural of the nouns in the following vocabulary.

*d.* Like *amō* inflect the verbs in the vocabulary.

## 66.

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

*fēmina*, -ae,<sup>1</sup> *f. woman.*  
*filia*,<sup>2</sup> -ae, *f. daughter.*  
*fortūna*, -ae, *f. fortune.*  
*poēta*, -ae, *m. poet.*  
*rēgīna*, -ae, *f. queen.*

VERBS<sup>3</sup>

*dēlectō*, *dēlectāre*, *delight.*  
*fugō*, *fugāre*, *put to flight, rout.*  
*liberō*, *liberāre*, *set free, free.*  
*ōrnō*, *ōrnāre*, *adorn, deck.*  
*portō*, *portāre*, *carry, bring.*

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

*Gen. cūius, of whom? whose? of what?*

## 67.

*Model Sentences*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Filiae nautae cantant,</i>     | { <i>the daughters of the sailor sing,</i><br><i>or, the sailor's daughters sing.</i>  |
| 2. <i>Columbae puellārum volant,</i> | { <i>the doves of the girls are flying,</i><br><i>or, the girls' doves are flying.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> In the vocabularies the genitive ending is added to show the declension.

<sup>2</sup> For peculiarity in declension of *filia*, see p. 22, foot-note 2.

<sup>3</sup> Hereafter the general meaning of the verb will be given, not the meaning of any particular form.

a. Observe that *nautae* limits *filiae*; not all daughters, but only those of the sailor are meant. In the same way *puellārum* limits *columbae*.

68. Rule. — *A noun used to limit another, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive.*

69.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, liberās. 2. Ōrnāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, liberant. 4. Liberatne? liberō, portāmus. 5. Dēlectāre, ōrnāre, portāre.

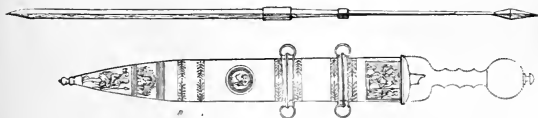
6. Columbās agricolārum liberant. 7. Fortūna poētae rēginam dēlectat. 8. Laudāmus filiās fēminae. 9. Filiane Galbae rēginam ōrnat? 10. Stellae filiās nautārum dēlectant.

II. 1. I plough the farmer's land. 2. I plough the farmers' land. 3. The poets' daughters love the land. 4. They put to flight the girl's dove. 5. Do they bring Galba's spears? 6. They adorn the queens' daughters.

70.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quis poētam laudat? Filia rēginae poētam laudat.
2. Amātisne Galbam? Galbam amāmus.
3. Puella, cūius hastam portās? Galbae hastam portō.
4. Cūius rosae (*roses*) puellam ōrnant? Fēminae rosae puellam ōrnant.
5. Quid portātis? Sagittās et tubam portāmus.



“Thine, Roman, is the pilum,  
Roman, the sword is thine.”

## LESSON V

SECOND CONJUGATION —  $\bar{E}$ -VERBSmoneō, monēre (stem monē-), *advise*

71.

*Paradigm*

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT

## SINGULAR

- 1st Person. moneō, *I advise, am advising, do advise.*  
 2d Person. monēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*  
 3d Person. monet, *he advises, is advising, does advise.*

## PLURAL

- 1st Person. monēmus, *we advise, are advising, do advise.*  
 2d Person. monētis, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*  
 3d Person. monent, *they advise, are advising, do advise.*

a. Review the table of personal endings (60).

b. Observe that to the stem monē- the same endings are added to inflect moneō that were added to the stem amā- to inflect amō.

c. Observe the three forms where moneō has not the e of the stem marked long. Compare forms of amō (60).

d. To the stems docē-, habē-, terrē-, vidē- add the personal endings (60) omitting the long mark in the proper places.

72.

## VOCABULARY

advena, -ae, m. and f. *stranger.*Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia.*incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant.*pecūnia, -ae, f. *money.*pīrāta, -ae, m. *pirate.*doceō, docēre, *teach.*habeō, habēre, *have.*moneō, monēre, *advise, warn.*terreō, terrēre, *scare, frighten.*videō, vidēre, *see.*cūr, adv. *why?*quia, conj. *because.*

## 73.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Habēs, docēs, monēs. 2. Terrentne? videntne? monentne? 3. Monēmus, docēmus, habēmus. 4. Moneō, habētis, terret. 5. Vidētis, vidēmus, habet. 6. Terrēmus, videō, terrētis. 7. Habēre, terrēre, vidēre. 8. Monētis, terreō, docent.

9. Advena filiās poētae docet. 10. Pirātae pecūniam incolārum habent. 11. Fortūna filiārum fēminam dēlectat. 12. Quis incolās monet? Galba incolās monet.

II. 1. They are advising, they have, I am warning. 2. You frighten, we see, does he teach?

3. Do they teach the girls? 4. The pirates frighten the inhabitants. 5. They have the queen's money. 6. The trumpets sound, and scare the doves.

## 74.

## REVIEW

1. What is the gender of *stella*, *terra*, *tuba*? 2. What is the gender of *agricola*, *poēta*, *Galba*? 3. Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. 4. In the sentence *puella ambulat*, what is the predicate? 5. What is the predicate in *agricola terram arat*? 6. Point out the subject, the predicates, and the object in 73, II. 6. 7. What English case corresponds to the Latin accusative? 8. Is *salto* a sentence? 9. Is *dances* a sentence?

## 75.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quid vidētis? Pirātās vidēmus.  
 2. Quem docēs et monēs? Advenam doceō et moneō.  
 3. Cūr stellās amātis et laudātis? Quia micant (*twinkle*).  
 4. Cūius pecūniam habet Cornēlia? Poētae pecūniam habet Cornēlia.

## LESSON VI

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*THE INDIRECT OBJECT — DATIVE CASE. ABLATIVE WITH *in*76. *a.* Like *hasta* decline *fābula*, *domina*, *lūna*.*b.* Form the dative and the ablative singular and plural of the nouns in the following vocabulary.

77.

## VOCABULARY

*domina*, -ae, f. *mistress, lady.**dōnō*, *dōnāre*, *give.**fābula*, -ae, f. *story, tale.**habitō*, *habitāre*,  *dwell, live.**īnsula*, -ae, f. *island.**lūcēō*, *lūcēre*, *shine.**lūna*, -ae, f. *moon.**manēō*, *manēre*, *remain.**rosa*, -ae, f. *rose.**mōnstrō*, *mōnstrāre*, *show, point out.**via*, -ae, f. *way, road, street.**nārrō*, *nārrāre*, *tell, relate.*

## PREPOSITION

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

*in*, with abl., *in, on.**Dat. cui*, *to or for whom? to or for what?**a.* Which of the above are *ā*-verbs and inflected like *amō*? Which are *ē*-verbs and inflected like *monēō*? How do you know? Inflect all in the active indicative present.

78.

*Model Sentence*

*Poēta rēgīnae rosam dōnat*, { *(the poet to the queen a rose gives)*<sup>1</sup>  
   { *Eng., the poet gives the queen a rose.*

*a.* Observe that *what* the poet gives is a *rose (rosam)*, the *direct object*; the *person to whom* he gives it is the *queen (rēgīnae)*, the *indirect object*.79. *Rule.* — *The indirect object is in the dative.*<sup>1</sup>NOTE. — The first rendering of the Latin sentence in 78 into English words is a *metaphrase*, that is, a word by word, or literal, rendering; the second is a *translation*. A metaphrase of every Latin sentence in the exercises should first be given, and then be followed by a translation.



80.

*Model Sentence*

Columbās videō in viā, { (doves I see in the road)  
 { Eng., I see doves in the road.

a. Observe that *in* with the ablative answers the question *where*?

**81. Rule.** — *Place where, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, usually in.*

a. Point out the direct and the indirect objects in 82, I. and II.

82.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Lūna dominae viam mōnstrat. 2. Cornēlia puellis fābulam nārrat. 3. Lūna et stellae lūcentne? 4. Agricola poētis īnsulam mōnstrat. 5. Īnsula poētam dēlectat. 6. Et in īsulā habitat. 7. Pirātae in aquā manent. 8. Nautae fēminae īsulās mōnstrant. 9. Incolae in terrā habitant. 10. Pirātae fēminās terrent et fugant. 11. Poētae filiābus fābulās nārrant.

II. 1. For the farmer. 2. On the islands. 3. To the inhabitants. 4. In the road. 5. For the doves. 6. On the ways. 7. In the moon. 8. For the daughters.

9. He shows the woman a rose. 10. They give the daughters roses. 11. They bring roses for the strangers. 12. Do the pirates live on an island?

83.

## CONVERSATION

1. Cui viam mōnstrat Galba? Advenae viam mōnstrat Galba.

2. Cūr in īsulis habitātis? Quia īsulās amāmus.

3. Cui pecūniam dōnās? Nautae pecūniam dōnō.

4. Cūius columbās liberās? Puellae columbās liberō.

5. Quid poētam ōrnat? Rosae poētam ōrnant.

## LESSON VII

## SECOND DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *o*

84.

*Paradigms*hortus, m. *garden*.dōnum, n. *gift*.

## SINGULAR

## TERMINATIONS

## TERMINATIONS

<i>Nom.</i>	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī	-ī	dōnī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hortī	-ī	dōna	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs

*a.* The vocative singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension has a special form in *ě*: hortě, (*O*) *garden*. For the locative case, see 195-197.

*b.* For rules for case-endings, see 46, *a, b, c, d*.

*c.* Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* generally contract the genitive ending *-iī* to *-ī*: cōnsilium, gen. cōnsilī, *advice, plan*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.

*d.* Filius, *son*, and proper names in *-ius* also contract *iē* in the vocative to *ī*: fili, (*O*) *son*; Mercurius, voc. Mercu'ri, (*O*) *Mercury*. The rule for the accent is the same as in *c*.

**85. Rule of Gender.** — *Nouns of the second declension ending in -um are neuter; most others are masculine.*

## 86.

## VOCABULARY

amīcus, -ī, m. *friend*.dominus, -ī, m. *master, owner*.equus, -ī, m. *horse*.hortus, -ī, m. *garden*.Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus*.servus, -ī, m. *servant, slave*.aurum, -ī, n. *gold*.dōnum, -ī, n. *gift, present*.frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain*.oppidum, -ī, n. *town*.pōculum, -ī, n. *cup*.vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*.

## 87.

## REVIEW

1. What is the case of the subject? Give the rule. 2. What is the case of the direct object? Give the rule. 3. What is the case of the indirect object? Give the rule. 4. What case answers to our possessive? 5. Give the rule for the genitive.

## 88.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Pōculum lūcet; pōcula lūcent. 2. Oppidum videō; oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? Domine, servōs monēs. 4. Equus dōnum frūmentī amat. 5. Equī domīnōrum servōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amīcō fābulam nārrat. 7. Domīnī amīcīs dōna aurī dōnant. 8. In oppidīs amīcōs habēmus. 9. Servi equīs frūmentum et aquam portant.

II. 1. The grain delights the horse. 2. The gifts of gold delight the masters. 3. Marcus, have you friends in the garden? 4. The servant brings wine in cups for the friends. 5. Do (his) friends show Marcus a gift? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town. 7. The lady teaches.

## 89.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quid habēs, serve, in pōculō? Vīnum in pōculō habeō.  
 2. Cui vīnum portās? Amīcō vīnum in pōculō portō.  
 3. Quem equus terret? Cornēliam equus terret.  
 4. Cūius equus Cornēliam terret? Mārcīne equus Cornēliam terret?

## LESSON VIII

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

90. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined like nouns of those declensions, according as they modify masculine, feminine, or neuter nouns.

91.

*Paradigm*

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus bonus	hasta bona	dōnum bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī bonī	hastae bonae	dōnī bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō bonō	hastae bonae	dōnō bonō
	etc.	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of the above paradigm. See 84, a.

b. For the full declension of **bonus**, see 483.

92. **Rule.** — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

NOTE. — The rule does not mean that adjectives must have the *same endings* as their nouns. If, for example, an adjective is joined with a masculine noun of the first declension, the endings of the noun and adjective are not the same, as is shown in the following

93.

*Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
<i>Gen.</i>	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of *nauta bonus*. Decline together, adding the vocative case, *amicus cārus*, *dear friend*; *columba alba*, *white dove*; *pōculum māgnum*, *large cup*; *agricola validus*, *strong farmer*; *poēta grātus*, *pleasing poet*.

## 94.

## VOCABULARY

## NOUNS

## ADJECTIVES

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart*.

bonus, bona, bonum, *good, kind*.

cibus, -ī, m. *food*.

cārus, cāra, cārum, *dear*.

oppidānus, -ī, m. *townsman*.

clārus, clāra, clārum, *clear, famous*.

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin* (p. 27).

grātus, grāta, grātum, *pleasing, welcome*.

rēmus, -ī, m. *oar*.

māgnus, māgna, māgnum, *great, large*.

ventus, -ī, m. *wind*.

validus, valida, validum, *strong, robust*.

nōn, adv. *not*. ubi, adv. *where*. est, *he, she, it is*: sunt, *they are*.

## 95.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Equōs māgnōs laudāmus. 2. Poētae clārī cantant.  
3. Galba amicō cārō aurum dōnat. 4. Dōnum Galbae boni  
amicum dēlectat. 5. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet.  
6. Clārōs poētās videt puella. 7. Ventī māgnī nautās nōn  
terrent. 8. Cāre Mārce, ubi est frūmentum agricolārum?  
Estne in māgnō carrō? 9. Oppidānī pīla pīrātārum vident.

II. 1. A great wagon; strong oars; the robust pirates.  
2. Good inhabitants; of good water; strong townsmen.

3. The good master has a good slave. 4. He gives the  
good slave a welcome gift. 5. Is the slave's food in the  
garden? 6. Dear Cornelia, where do (your) daughters live?  
They live in the great town. 7. They love the town and the  
kind townsmen. 8. To the famous poet they give white roses.



TRUMPET

## LESSON IX

THE VERB **Sum** — INDICATIVE PRESENT

## Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective

96.

*Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>1st Person.</i>	sum, <i>I am.</i>	sumus, <i>we are.</i>
<i>2d Person.</i>	es, <i>you are.</i>	estis, <i>you are.</i>
<i>3d Person.</i>	est, <i>he, she, or it is.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>

97.

## VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, n. <i>war.</i>	lātus, lāta, lātum, <i>wide, broad.</i>
Britannia, -ae, f. <i>Britain.</i>	longus, longa, longum, <i>long.</i>
caelum, -ī, n. <i>sky, heavens.</i>	meus, mea, meum, <i>my, mine (229).</i>
dea, -ae, f. <i>goddess.</i>	novus, nova, novum, <i>new.</i>
Eurōpa, -ae, f. <i>Europe.</i>	parvus, parva, parvum, <i>small, little.</i>
Graecia, -ae, f. <i>Greece.</i>	tuus, tua, tuum, <i>your, yours.</i>
inimicus, -ī, m. <i>enemy.</i>	—————
Rōma, -ae, f. <i>Rome.</i>	erat, <i>he, she, or it was.</i>
Vesta, -ae, f. <i>Vesta.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>

98.

*Model Sentences*

1. Victōria est rēgīna, *Victoria is a queen.*
2. Incolae sunt agricolae, *the inhabitants are farmers.*
3. Estis oppidānī, *you are townsmen.*

a. Observe that **rēgīna** denotes the same person as **Victōria**, **agricolae** the same persons as **incolae**, and **oppidānī** the same as the unexpressed subject of **estis**. Nouns thus used with forms of **sum** are called *predicate nouns* (15).

99. Rule. — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

100. *Model Sentences*

1. Hortus est māgnus, *the garden is large.*
2. Hortī sunt māgnī, *the gardens are large.*
3. Poēta est grātus, *the poet is welcome.*

a. Adjectives used as **māgnus**, **māgnī**, and **grātus** are above, with forms of **sum**, are called *predicate adjectives* (15). They must of course agree with their nouns, like adjectives otherwise used, in gender, number, and case.

b. Point out the predicate nouns and the predicate adjectives in 102, I. and II.

101. REVIEW

1. Give the rule of gender of nouns of the first declension ; of the second declension.
2. What masculine nouns of the first declension have occurred?
3. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees?
4. Why is **nauta bona** not correct?

102. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galba est validus. 2. Galba est agricola. 3. Mea filia est parva. 4. Tuum pōculum estne māgnū? 5. Britannia est insula Eurōpae. 6. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 7. Carrī Galbae sunt bonī et validī. 8. Nōn grātum est bellum. 9. Bella nōn sunt grāta. 10. In caelō erant stellae. 11. Graecia est Eurōpae terra parva. 12. Stellās parvās in caelō videō. 13. Clārō<sup>1</sup> in caelō stellās parvās vidēmus. 14. Oppidānī Galbam et equōs validōs vident.

II. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. The new gifts are pleasing. 5. The enemies are bringing long javelins. 6. You are my dear friend. 7. The cup was yours.

<sup>1</sup> Adjective, preposition, noun is a common order.

## LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION — *Continued*

103.

*Paradigms*puer, m. *boy*.liber, libera, liberum, *free*.

SINGULAR		SINGULAR		
		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

*a.* Observe that **puer** and **liber** have no termination **-us** in the nominative singular; elsewhere they have the same terminations as **hortus** (84). Observe that the terminations of **libera** are the same as those of **hasta** (53), and of **liberum** the same as those of **dōnum** (84).

*b.* Decline together **vir liber**, *free man*; **fēmina tenera**, *tender woman*; **bellum asperum**, *fierce war*; **poēta miser**, *wretched poet*.

104.

## REVIEW

1. What is the ending of the vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension? 2. What cases of the second declension end in **ō**? What cases in **īs**? 3. What is the ending of the accusative singular? 4. What two cases in the neuter plural end in **a**? 5. Decline **dominus**, *master*. 6. Decline **bellum**, *war*. 7. Read again 84, *c* and *d*, and write out the declension of **nūntius**, *messenger*.



## 105.

## VOCABULARY

Duilius, Duilī, m. <i>Duilius</i> .	asper, aspera, asperum, <i>rough, fierce</i> .
filius, fili, m. <i>son</i> (478).	liber, libera, liberum, <i>free</i> .
liberī, -ōrum, m. plur. <i>children</i> .	miser, misera, miserum, <i>wretched, poor</i> .
nūntius, nūntī, m. <i>messenger</i> .	superō, superāre, <i>surpass, overcome</i> .
puer, puerī, m. <i>boy</i> .	tener, tenera, tenerum, <i>tender</i> .
vir, virī, m. <i>man</i> (478).	vocō, vocāre, <i>call</i> .

## 106.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Filii virōrum liberōrum. 2. Rēmus nautae asperī.  
3. Ventis asperis. 4. Miserō in carrō. 5. Cibus puerōrum  
miserōrum. 6. Ō cāre fili! 7. Vocatne? superantne?

8. Puerōs bonōs vocāmus. 9. Liberī multī sunt lātis in  
viis. 10. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram nārrat. 11. Sunt  
virī multī in oppidō liberō. 12. Quid habent puellae tenerae?

II. 1. The owners of poor slaves. 2. For the wretched  
wars. 3. For your small sons. 4. In the messengers' gardens.  
5. O (my) poor friend!

6. The son of Duilius is free. 7. We see fierce pirates.  
8. They frighten small boys and tender women. 9. The inhabit-  
ants overcome the enemies. 10. We are free men. 11. We  
live in the land of the free.<sup>1</sup> 12. We are sons of free men.

## 107.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quis virō viam mōnstrat? Dea bona viam mōnstrat.
2. Quid clārō in caelō lūcet? Lūna nova lūcet.
3. Virī validī, quem superātis? Inimicōs asperōs supe-  
rāmus.
4. Habentne puerī pila? Duilī pila longa habent.
5. Cui nūntius fābulam nārrat? Viris liberis fābulam nārrat.

<sup>1</sup> Adjectives are frequently used in the plural in Latin, as in English, without a noun, both in the masculine and neuter. See 3, *d*.

## LESSON XI

SECOND DECLENSION — *Continued*

## APPOSITION

108.

*Paradigms*

	ager, m. <i>field</i> .		piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>slow, lazy</i> .	
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ager	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Gen.</i>	agrī	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
<i>Dat.</i>	agrō	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
<i>Acc.</i>	agrū	pigrū	pigram	pigrū
<i>Abl.</i>	agrō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	agrī	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
<i>Gen.</i>	agrōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	agrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	agrōs	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
<i>Abl.</i>	agrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

a. Observe that **ager** and **piger** are declined like **puer** and **liber**, except that e before r occurs only in the nominative.

109.

## VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, m. *field*.liber, librī, m. *book*.

magister, magistrī, m.

*master, teacher*.Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus*.multus, multa, multum, *much*.multī (plur.), multae, multa, *many*.niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow, lazy*.pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, pretty*.dominus, *master* of a household or of slaves.magister, *master* of a school.

Distinguish carefully { liber, librī, *book*.  
 liber, libera, liberum, *free*.  
 liberī, liberōrum, *children*.

### 110. Model Sentences

1. Galba agricola agrum habet, *Galba, the farmer, has a field.*
2. Mārcum amīcum amō, *I love Marcus, (my) friend.*

a. Observe that *agricola* denotes the same person as *Galba* and is joined to *Galba* as a descriptive or explanatory noun; *amīcum* is related in the same way to *Mārcum*. Such nouns are called *appositives*.

111. Rule. — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

a. Read again 98. You will see that the *appositive* closely resembles the *predicate noun*. Wherein do they differ?

### 112. EXERCISES

I. 1. Virī, oppidī incolae. 2. In agrīs pulchris agricolae.  
 3. Librī pulchrī magistrōrum. 4. Ventōrum asperōrum.  
 5. Pigrōrum servōrum. 6. Nautae, amīcō meō. 7. Equī albi et nigrī. 8. Pueris miseris Duili.

9. In agrō Mārcī amīcī equōs videō. 10. Servus Sextum amīcum amat. 11. Liber, dōnum pulchrum Cornēliae, magistrum dēlectat. 12. Pulchrumne est caelum? 13. Servus bonus nōn piger est. 14. Agricolae multī equōs nigrōs habent. 15. Puellae pulchrae sunt dominae filiae. 16. Tuī librī sunt dōnum grātum.

II. 1. To Galba, my friend, I give a book. 2. To the children of Sextus we give many gifts. 3. To the men's sons they give pretty books. 4. The men dwell in a poor town. 5. They dwell in Greece, a rough country of Europe. 6. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Britain.

## LESSON XII

## ADDITIONAL USES OF THE DATIVE

113. Review the present of **sum** (96) and learn the indicative imperfect and future, and the infinitive present (502).

114. *Model Sentence*

Puerō est sagitta, { (to the boy is an arrow)  
 { Eng., the boy has an arrow.

a. Observe that the above sentence is equivalent in meaning to **puer sagittam habet**. The dative thus used is called the *dative of the possessor*, or the *possessive dative*. The thing possessed, here **sagitta**, is the subject.

115. Rule. — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

116. *Model Sentence*

Dōnum puerō est cārum, { (the gift to the boy is dear)  
 { Eng., the gift is dear to the boy.

a. Observe that **puerō** limits **cārum** just as the indirect object **rēgīnae** limits the verb **dōnat** in 78.

117. Rule. — *Adjectives meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites, take the dative.*

## 118. EXERCISES

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Suntne? erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Esne? erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Esse.

8. Magistrō est liber. 9. Magister librum habet. 10. Duiliō sunt pueri multī. 11. Duilius puerōs multōs habet. 12. Erantne viae longae et asperae? 13. Nūntiī erunt miserī. 14. Caelum nigrum nautis nōn est grātum.

II. 1. I am, we are. 2. Were we? I was. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he? they are. 5. He was, they were. 6. He will be, they will be. 7. You are, you were. 8. You will be, to be.

9. You will be a free man. 10. Galba has a black horse. 11. A man had lazy and wretched sons. 12. The gifts will be welcome to Marcus, my friend. 13. The good children surpass the lazy (children).

## 119.

## REVIEW

1. Decline **servus, vir, magister**. 2. Decline the adjectives **cārus, niger, tener** in the three genders. 3. Decline **oppidānus liber, nauta asper, dōnum pulchrum, poēta clārus**. 4. What adjectives in **-er** have occurred that keep the **e** in declension? 5. After reading the following Conversation point out a direct object, an indirect object, a predicate adjective, an appositive, a dative of the possessor, a genitive, and a dative with an adjective, and give the rule for each.

## 120.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quem docet Sextus, amicus tuus? Filium Duili docet.  
 2. Puerōne erat tuba grāta? Puerō tuba erat cāra et grāta.  
 3. Cui sunt rosae tenerae? Puellis sunt rosae tenerae.  
 4. Cūr magistrō mōnstrātis librōs pulchrōs? Quia librōs amat.  
 5. Vidēsne, Ō nūntie, lūnam novam? Lūnam nigrō in caelō videō.



SPEAR

## LESSON XIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — *Continued*

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS

121.

*Paradigms*

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE IMPERFECT

## SINGULAR

1. amābam, *I was loving.*<sup>1</sup>
2. amābās, *you were loving.*
3. amābat, *he was loving.*

## PLURAL

- amābāmus, *we were loving.*
- amābātis, *you were loving.*
- amābant, *they were loving.*

## SINGULAR

1. monēbam, *I was advising.*
2. monēbās, *you were advising.*
3. monēbat, *he was advising.*

## PLURAL

- monēbāmus, *we were advising.*
- monēbātis, *you were advising.*
- monēbant, *they were advising.*

*a.* Observe that the imperfect of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense-sign **-ba-**, and to that the personal endings (60); **amā + ba + m**, etc. How is the imperfect of **moneō** formed?

*b.* Review the verbs of 66 and 72 and form the imperfect first person singular of each. Write out the imperfect of the verbs below.

122.

## VOCABULARY

NOTE. — Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

arātrum, -ī, n. <i>plough</i> (p. 87).	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i>
aureus, aurea, aureum, <i>golden.</i>	ōrnō, ōrnāre, <i>adorn, deck.</i>
dēfessus, dēfessa, dēfessum, <i>tired.</i>	pūgnō, pūgnāre, <i>fight.</i>
deus, deī, m. <i>a god</i> (482).	scūtum, -ī, n. <i>shield.</i>
gladius, gladiī, m. <i>sword</i> (p. 27).	somnus, -ī, m. <i>sleep, drowsiness.</i>
impleō, implēre, <i>fill.</i>	terreō, terrēre, <i>scare, frighten.</i>
Mercurius, Mercurī, m. <i>Mercury.</i>	vocō, vocāre, <i>call, summon.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Also *did love, loved.*

123.

*Model Sentences*

1. Virī inimīcōs hastīs et sagittīs fugābant, *men routed the enemies with spears and arrows.*
2. Servī pōcula aquā implēbant, *servants were filling cups with water.*
3. Equīs frūmentum portant, *they bring grain by means of horses.*

*a.* Observe that the ablatives **hastīs**, **sagittīs**, **aquā**, and **equīs** answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of means or instrument*.

**124. Rule.**—*The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

125.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Amābantne? amābat, dēlectābam. 2. Monēbat, monēbant, docēbam. 3. Fugābāmus, fugābant, liberābāmus. 4. Terrēbāsne? habēbat, habēbant. 5. Vidēbātis, terrēbātis, ōrnābātis. 6. Pūgnābāmus, vocābāmus, implēbant.

7. Vir agrum nostrum arātrō arābat. 8. Liberī columbās tubis terrēbant. 9. Deus somnō puerum superābat. 10. Puellae pulchrae pōcula nostra rosīs ōrnābant. 11. Agricolae frūmentō carrōs implēbant. 12. Mercurius nūntius erat deōrum. 13. Viris sunt sagittae et hastae.

II. 1. By means of shields. 2. With horses and ploughs. 3. With our swords. 4. With golden trumpets. 5. They were seeing, was he dancing?

6. We were teaching by means of books. 7. With your sword you were liberating friends. 8. I ploughed the field with a new plough. 9. Sleep was welcome to the tired god, Mercury. 10. The men fought with spears and long javelins.

## LESSON XIV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — *Continued*

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER

126

*Paradigms*

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE FUTURE

## SINGULAR

1. amābō, *I shall love.*
2. amābis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he will love.*

## PLURAL

- amābimus, *we shall love.*  
 amābitis, *you will love.*  
 amābunt, *they will love.*

## SINGULAR

1. monēbō, *I shall advise.*
2. monēbis, *you will advise.*
3. monēbit, *he will advise.*

## PLURAL

- monēbimus, *we shall advise.*  
 monēbitis, *you will advise.*  
 monēbunt, *they will advise.*

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense-sign **-bi-**, and to that the personal endings (60); but the **i** is dropped in the first person and changed to **u** in the third person plural. How is the future of **monēō** formed?

b. Review the verbs of 66, 72, and 77, and form the future first person singular of each. Write out the future of the verbs below.

127.

## VOCABULARY

aedificō, aedificāre, *build.*  
 aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*  
 agitō, agitāre, *drive, chase away.*  
 āra, -ae, f. *altar* (p. 21).  
 cum, prep. with abl. *with.*  
 cūra, -ae, f. *care.*  
 gaudium, gaudī, n. *joy, gladness.*

in, prep. with acc. *into, upon.*  
 labōrō, labōrāre, *work, suffer.*  
 properō, properāre, *hasten.*  
 quō, adv. *whither?*  
 studium, studī, *zeal, eagerness.*  
 templum, -ī, n. *temple* (p. 95).  
 teneō, tenēre, *hold, keep.*



128.

*Model Sentences*

1. Vir cum studiō labōrat, *the man works with zeal (zealously).*
2. Vir māgnō cum studiō labōrat, *the man works with great zeal.*
3. Vir māgnō studiō labōrat, *the man works with great zeal.*

a. Observe how *manner* is expressed in the above Latin sentences: (1) cum studiō; (2) māgnō cum studiō; (3) māgnō studiō. Observe that (2) and (3) are translated in the same way. The ablative thus used answers the question *how? in what way?*

**129. Rule.**—*The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

a. Observe that **cum** and the ablative may often be translated by an adverb: cum studiō, *zealously*; cum cūrā, *carefully*; cum gaudiō, *joyfully, gladly*.

130.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Amābunt, monēbunt, properābunt. 2. Amābitne? monēbit, tenēbimus. 3. Manēbuntne? mōnstrābimus, terrēbō. 4. Labōrābisne? docēbitis, properābō.

5. Agricolaē sunt equī validī. 6. Quō properābit agricola validus? 7. In<sup>1</sup> agrōs properābunt agricola et puerī. 8. In agris labōrābunt māgnō cum studiō. 9. Cum gaudiō frūmentum in oppidum portābunt. 10. Māgnā cūrā equōs agitābunt. 11. Nōn in oppidō manēbunt.

II. 1. You will build. 2. He will hasten. 3. Who will drive? 4. We shall drive. 5. You will hold. 6. For sick children.

7. You will build a temple with great care. 8. You will adorn the temple with an altar. 9. We shall carry the sick children carefully into the temple. 10. They will joyfully see the altar and the goddess. 11. Whose altar will they see? They will see the altar of Vesta, the kind goddess.

<sup>1</sup> Observe the use and meaning of **in** here and in 8 and 11.

## LESSON XV

FIRST CONJUGATION — *Continued*

## READING LESSON

131. *Principal Parts of Verbs*

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

*a.* The *principal parts* of a verb, illustrated by the model, are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them.

*b.* The principal parts of almost all verbs of the first conjugation are formed after the model of **amō**. Observe that the perfect stem **amāv-** is formed by adding **v** to the verb-stem: **amā-**, **amāv-**. Give the principal parts of the verbs of the first conjugation in 77, 105, 122, 127.

132. *Paradigm*

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE PERFECT

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS <sup>1</sup>
1. amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love.</i>	-ī
2. amāvistī, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istī
3. amāvit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it

## PLURAL

1. amāvimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. amāvistis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istis
3. amāvērunt, <i>-ēre, they have loved, etc.</i>	-ērunt, -ēre

*a.* The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations, as we shall see.

*b.* Observe that the second translation of the perfect is the same as the last of the imperfect, p. 44, foot-note 1. But there is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes a *completed*

<sup>1</sup> With connecting vowel.

act, the imperfect an act *going on, continued, or repeated*. See illustrations in the Reading Lesson (134).

c. Inflect in the perfect the verbs of Vocabularies 66, 105.

## 133.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Vocāvitne? amāvit, superāvit. 2. Pūgnāvērunt, agitāvērunt, labōrāvērunt. 3. Properāvimus, aedificāvimus, amāvimus. 4. Amāvine? vocāvistī, properāvistis. 5. Portāvit, dēlectāvit, fugāvit.

II. 1. You have praised, you ploughed, you related. 2. I have adorned, I brought, I set free. 3. They danced, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

## 134.

## THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES

Rōmulus Rōmam, pulchrum Ītalīae oppidum, aedificāvit. Incolās oppidī vocāvit Rōmānōs. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et mākīmē amābant patriam. Saepe cum Sabīnīs, vicīnīs, prō patriā pūgnābant et saepe armīs in bellō superābant. Ōlim erat victōria diū dubia. Nam Sabīnī arma habēbant bona et pilīs longīs mākīnā cum audāciā pūgnāvērunt. Sed Rōmānī Sabīnōs fugāvērunt et multōs sagittīs volnerāvērunt. Cāra Rōmānīs erat illa (*that*) victōria.

## 135.

## VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *arms*.

audācia, -ae, f. *boldness, daring*.

diū, adv. *for a long time, long*.

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful*.

incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant*.

Ītalīa, -ae, f. *Italy*.

mākīmē, adv. *very, greatly*.

nam, conj. *for*.

ōlim, adv. *once, formerly*.

patria, -ae, f. *native country*.

prō, prep. with abl. *before, for, in defence of*.

Rōmānus, -ī, m. *a Roman*.

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus*.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Sabines*.

saepe, adv. *often*.

sed, conj. *but*.

vicīnus, -ī, m. *neighbor*.

victōria, -ae, f. *victory*.

volnerō, -āre, *wound*.

## LESSON XVI

SECOND CONJUGATION — *Continued*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

136.

*Paradigm*

## ACTIVE INDICATIVE PERFECT

## SINGULAR

1. monuī, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise.*
2. monuistī, *you have advised, etc.*
3. monuit, *he has advised, etc.*

## PLURAL

1. monuimus, *we have advised, etc.*
2. monuistis, *you have advised, etc.*
3. monuerunt, *-ēre, they have advised, etc.*

*a.* Verbs of the second conjugation form the perfect stem variously; **moneō** forms it by dropping final *e* of the verb-stem (71, *b*) and adding *u*; so do **doceō**, *teach*; **habeō**, *have*; **terreō**, *frighten*; **teneō**, *hold*, and most others of this conjugation. The perfect participles are very irregular. For personal endings, see 132 and *a*.

*b.* Learn the principal parts of the following verbs and inflect them in the perfect tense :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus, <i>teach.</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus, <i>have.</i>
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus, <i>frighten.</i>
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	———, <i>hold.</i>
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	lūctus, <i>shine.</i>
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsus, <i>remain.</i>
impleō	implēre	implēvī	implētus, <i>fill.</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsus, <i>see.</i>

137.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuit, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistī. 4. Vidine? vidēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

6. Stellae lūxērunt. 7. Puerō erat pōculum pulchrum. 8. Aqua pōcula implēvit. 9. Puerī pōcula aquā implēvērunt. 10. Cum cūrā puellam aegram portāvērunt. 11. Scūta et gladiōs inimicōrum vidī prō portis. 12. Ōlim Rōmulus Sabinōs superāvit et fugāvit.

II. 1. The moon shone into a little town. 2. Often it shone upon the arms of men. 3. The swords and trumpets frightened the children. 4. But the townsmen hastened to fight with the enemies. 5. The women and children gladly remained. 6. The men fought boldly. 7. The women taught the boys and girls carefully.



ROMAN HEADDRESSES

## LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE **Is**

**Is**, adjective, *this, that*; plur., *these, those*.

**Is**, pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it*; plur., *these, those, they*.

138.

*Paradigm*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eaē	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

*a.* Compare the declension of **is**, column by column, with the declension of **bonus** (483). The endings (stem **i** or **e**) in the plural are the same as those of **bonus**. Where are they different in the singular?

NOTE. — Be careful not to confound **eī**, dative, and **eō**, ablative.

139.

*Table of Meanings for Reference***Is** AS A PRONOUN

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>this, that; he, she, it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of this, of that; of him, his; of her, hers; of it, its.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for this or that; to or for him, her or it.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>this, that; him, her, it.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>by, with, etc., this or that; by, with, etc., him, her or it.</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>these, those; they.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of these, of those; of them, their.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for these or those; to or for them.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>these, those; them.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>by, with, etc., these or those; by, with, etc., them.</i>

140. *Model Sentences*

1. Is vir cum patientiā labōrat, *that man works patiently.*
2. Eum laudāmus, *we praise him, i.e. that (man).*
3. Patientiam eius laudāmus, *we praise his (of him) patience.*

*a.* Is in the first sentence is used with a noun and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It designates its noun in connected speech unemphatically, as previously mentioned or understood: *the aforesaid*. See also 201, *c*, and 212, *b*.

*b.* Is in 2 and 3 is used without a noun and is a demonstrative *pronoun*. The meanings of is as a pronoun are shown in 139.

*c.* Learn the indicative perfect of sum (502).

*d.* Decline together id dōnum, *that gift*; is nūntius, *that messenger*; ea patria, *this country*.

## 141. EXERCISES

I. 1. Id scūtum, is gladius, ea fābula. 2. Eō gladiō, eī gladiō, eō bellō. 3. Eō cibō, eā pecūniā, in eā terrā. 4. In eō somnō, eōrum hortōrum, eius aurī.

5. Ea arma fuērunt mea, sed ea pecūnia fuit tua. 6. Ii viri asperi fuērunt vicinī nostrī. 7. Eōsne vidistis? Nōn eōs, sed eōrum filiōs vidimus. 8. Dominus eius equī fuit vir piger. 9. Equus eius fuit dēfessus. 10. Sed puer parvus eī aquam dōnāvit et dominō et dominae pōcula vinō implēvit.

II. 1. For this goddess, Vesta. 2. For these goddesses, by these arms. 3. On that black horse, for him, for them. 4. Of the aforesaid townsman, of their fortune, those men.<sup>1</sup>

5. I have had kind friends. 6. Their sons I have taught, but not their daughters. 7. You have seen and praised them. 8. You gave them many presents. 9. They have kept them carefully.

<sup>1</sup> As subject and as object.

## LESSON XVIII

THE INTERROGATIVE *Quis*

142.

*Paradigm**Quis? who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

143.

*Table of Meanings for Reference*

NOTE. — The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

*Nom.* *who? which? what?**Gen.* *of whom? whose? of which? of what?**Dat.* *to or for whom? to or for which? to or for what?**Acc.* *whom? which? what?**Abl.* *by, etc., whom? by, etc., which? by, etc., what?*

144.

*Model Sentences*1. *Quis (quī) vir patriam nōn amat? What man does not love his country?*2. *Quis patriam nōn amat? Who does not love his country?*3. *Quod dōnum amat puella? What gift does the girl like?*4. *Quid amat puella? What does the girl like?*

a. Observe that *quis* has two distinct uses: in 1 and 3 it is an interrogative *adjective*; in 2 and 4 it is an interrogative *pronoun*. As an interrogative adjective it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. As a pronoun it has no feminine.



b. The form **quod** is always used in place of **quid** as an interrogative *adjective*, and often **quī** is so used in place of **quis**.

## 145.

## EXERCISES

NOTE. — The learner should accustom himself, in making out the meaning of the Latin, to pronounce any Latin word, the sense of which is not evident, as a part of his English sentence. For example, taking sentence 12 below, if the meaning of **cūius** is not clear, say: "Cūius arms has that boy?" Probably this would suggest: "Whose arms has that boy?"

I. 1. Quī id templum aedificāvērunt? 2. Quī virī id templum aedificāvērunt? 3. Quid est in eō templō? 4. Quae fēmina nōn amat liberōs? 5. Cui dōnat Mārcus id pōculum? 6. Quibus virīs nōn est patria cāra? 7. Quōs agrōs arat is agricola? 8. Quem laudātis? 9. Quid in pōculō habet servus? 10. Quam puellam laudat magister? 11. Quō arātrō eōs agrōs arāvit agricola? 12. Cūius arma habet is puer?

II. 1. Who was a messenger of the gods? 2. Whose messenger was Mercury? 3. Whose shield did that boy have? 4. To whom did he give the shield? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have you overcome those men?

## 146.

## REVIEW

1. What are the two personal endings of the third person plural of the perfect? 2. In 134 explain the difference in the use of the tenses of **vocāvit**, line 2, and **amābant**, line 3. 3. What forms of the verb make up the principal parts? 4. What is the perfect stem of **sum**? 5. From 141, I. 5-10, select five examples of **is** used as a pronoun and four of **is** used as an adjective. 6. What form of **quis** is used interrogatively in the neuter as an adjective? What forms in the masculine?

## LESSON XIX

## THIRD CONJUGATION — Ĕ-VERBS

NOTE. — Observe that verbs of this conjugation have stems ending in short e, those of the second conjugation in long e. See 59.

regō (stem rege-), *rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

147. Learn the active indicative present, imperfect, future, and perfect of regō (499).

a. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those already learned, one set (60) applying to the first three tenses, the other (132) to the perfect.

b. Compare the present of regō with the present of moneō in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

c. Compare the future of regō with the present of moneō. Compare the two imperfects.

d. Like regō inflect in the same tenses dūcō, *lead*; emō, *buy*; mittō, *send*. For the principal parts, see Vocabulary. The perfect and perfect participles of verbs of the third conjugation are very irregular. No rule can be given.

## 148.

## VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, n. *gold*.

bene, adv. *well*.

hodiē, adv. *to-day, now*.

incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant*.

ōlim, adv. *once, formerly*.

plēnus, plēna, plēnum, *full*.

terra, -ae, f. *land, country*.

tum, adv. *then, at that time*.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy*.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send, throw, hurl*.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule, manage*.

reportō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātus, *bring back, gain*.

## 149.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Regit, regēbat, reget. 2. Emō, emēbam, emam.  
3. Dūcunt, dūcent, dūcēbat. 4. Rēxit, rēxērunt, dūxit. 5. Dūxērunt, ēmistī, ēmistis. 6. Mīsī, mīsimus, mīsīt. 7. Mittimus, mittunt, mittent.

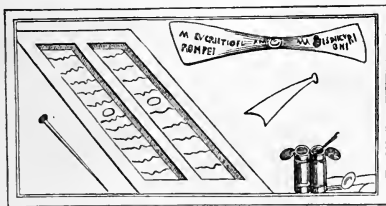
8. Agricolae<sup>1</sup> sunt agrī plēnī frūmentī. 9. Id frūmentum in oppidum māgnum mittet. 10. Id in carris plēnis equis validis mittit. 11. Quī eōs equōs longā in viā agitābunt?  
12. Filii ēius, Mārcus et Brūtus, eōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent.  
13. Incolae ēius oppidī frūmentum agricolae, nōn carrōs, ēmērunt. 14. Puerī aurum et dōna amicis reportāvērunt.  
15. Cāra erant<sup>2</sup> amicis ea pulchra dōna.

II. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I will send, I have sent. 5. You (sing.) send, you will send, you (plur.) have sent. 6. To send, to buy, to lead.

7.<sup>2</sup> The Romans once had (perf.) many lands. 8. Often they did not rule (impf.) them well. 9. Then the inhabitants of those lands fought boldly. 10.<sup>2</sup> What arms had they?  
11. Their arms were long spears. 12. These they hurled; with these they wounded the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> Dative of possessor.

<sup>2</sup> Translate in two ways.



WRITING MATERIALS

## LESSON XX

## 150. REVIEW: READING LESSON

1. Give the infinitives of *amō*, *moneō*, and *regō*. 2. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? 3. What are the perfect stems of *amō*, *moneō*, *emō*, *mittō*? 4. What are the personal endings of the perfect? 5. To the perfect stem of *amō* add the personal endings of the perfect. 6. Translate the third person singular in three ways. 7. Give the table of personal endings of the present, imperfect, and future. 8. What is the tense-sign of the imperfect? 9. What is the tense-sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? 10. Write the future of *emō*. 11. Review Vocabularies 72, 77, 122, 127, 135.

## 151. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Advena dēfessus*. 2. *Plēnā in lūnā*. 3. *Cum studiō*. 4. *Cum gaudiō eius pueri aegri*. 5. *Cūius aureus gladius?* 6. *Quod deōrum templum?* 7. *Eārum fābulārum grātārum*. 8. *Eā victōriā nostrā (of ours)*.

9. *Quis agrum arātrō diū arāvit?* 10. *Cūr es dubius, puer bone?* 11. *Cūr in insulis manēbis?* 12. *Mārcō et Brūtō fuērunt equi nigrī*. 13. *Mārcus et Brūtus equōs nigrōs habuērunt*.

II. 1. You have managed the strangers well. 2. Who are sending sick men into the temples? 3. We shall lead our friends into the towns. 4. He will buy arms with great care. 5. With whose gold does he buy arms?

## 152. ICARUS

See 179, note.

*Frāter et Sorōrcula (brother and little sister)*

*F.* *Fābulam bonam amicus hodiē nārrāvit.*

*S.* *Dē quō tibi (to you) nārrāvit amicus?*

*F.* *Dē Īcarō, Daedali filiō, puerō miserrimō (most unlucky).*

S. Ubi (*where*) habitābat Īcarus? In Britannīā?

F. Minimē; in Crētā, insulā māgnā et pulchrā. Daedalus Īcarō alās finxit et eī cērā aptāvit. Alae Īcarō erant māximē grātae. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre docuit, sed altius (*too high*) volāvit Īcarus. Sōl (*sun*) cēram solvit et alae dēcidērunt.

S. Sed quid dē Īcarō?

F. Īcarus quoque dēcidit in mare (*sea*).

S. Ēheu, miserrimum Īcarum!

## 153.

## VOCABULARY

ala, -ae, f. *wing*.

cēra, -ae, f. *wax*.

dē, prep. with abl. *from, about*.

ēheu, interj. *alas!*

minimē, adv. *not at all*.

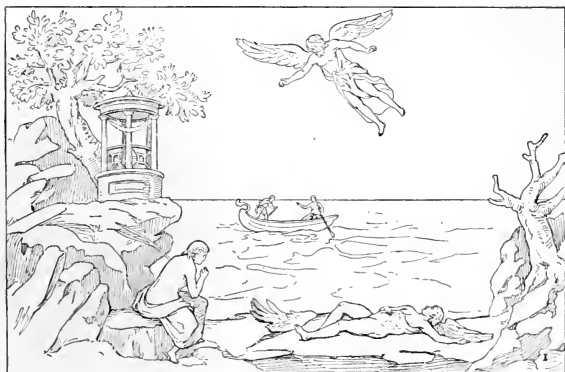
quoque, adv. *also, too*.

aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, *fit*.

dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, —, *fall off or down*.

figō, fingere, fīxī, fictus, *fashion, devise*.

solvō,olvere, solvī, solūtus, *melt*.



THE FALL OF ICARUS

## LESSON XXI

## THIRD DECLENSION

The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*

CONSONANT STEMS: MUTES (38)

154.

## Paradigms

	rēx, m. <i>king</i>	mīles, m. <i>soldier</i>	virtūs, f. <i>virtue</i>	caput, n. <i>head</i>	TERMINATIONS	
STEMS: rēg-	milit-	virtūt-	capit-	M. & F.	N.	
SINGULAR						
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	militī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

*a.* Review 46, *a, b, c, d.* For the locative case, see 195–197.

*b.* To decline a noun with stem ending in a consonant it is necessary to know the gender, the nominative, the genitive, and the stem. Repeat the stem for all cases except the nominative, and in neuters the accusative singular, and add the proper terminations.

*c.* The stem can be found by dropping *-is* of the genitive singular, which is always given in the vocabularies.

*d.* Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

*e.* Observe that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given.

*f.* Following the directions of *b*, decline *eques*, *lapis*, and *pedes* (155).

*g.* Decline together *mīles bonus*, *good soldier*; *ea virtūs*, *that virtue*; *id caput*, *this head*.

## 155.

## VOCABULARY

*caput*, *capitis*, n. *head*.

*dux*, *ducis*, m. *leader*, *general*.

*eques*, *equitis*, m. *horseman*.

*et . . . et*, conj. *both . . . and*.

*fortiter*, adv. *bravely*.

*lapis*, *lapidis*, m. *stone*.

*mīles*, *mīlitis*, m. *soldier*.

*pedes*, *peditis*, m. *foot-soldier*.

*rēx*, *rēgis*, m. *king*.

*virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f. *courage*, *virtue*.

## 156.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Et rēgēs et ducēs militēs dūxērunt. 2. Rēgem et ducem vidī hodiē. 3. Capita multōrum peditum vidimus. 4. Equitēs prō rēge et duce pūgnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō reportāvērunt victōriam. 6. Lapidibus et sagittis multōs volnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum et studium peditum victōriam rēgī reportābant. 8. Quis scūta emet equitibus? 9. Eum militem lapide asperō volnerābam. 10. Nostrōs militēs lapidibus volnerābunt.

II. 1. On the head of a king. 2. On the heads of kings. 3. By the courage of soldiers. 4. To wound with stones and spears. 5. For the general of the foot-soldiers.

6. In a town I saw a king. 7. The king was a good general and ruled well. 8. He bought food for the inhabitants. 9. He sent arms into the town. 10. He led the soldiers bravely, and they loved him.



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON XXII

## THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -IŌ

## PLACE WHENCE AND WHITHER

**capiō** (stem *cape-(i-)*), *take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**

**157.** Learn the active indicative present, future, imperfect, and perfect of **capiō** (500).

*a.* Wherein does the inflection of **capiō** differ from that of **regō** in the present? In the imperfect? In the future? The final stem vowel of **capiō** varies between **-e** (**capere**) and **-i** (**capiō**).

*b.* All verbs in **-iō** with the infinitive in **-ēre** are conjugated like **capiō**. Like **capiō** inflect in the same tenses **fugiō**, *flee*; **iaciō**, *hurl* (161).

**158.***Model Sentences*

1. **Magister liberōs ā scholā dīmīsīt**, *the teacher dismissed the children from school.*
2. **Oppidānī dē mūrō lapidēs iaciunt**, *townsmen throw stones down from the wall.*
3. **Militēs ex portā properāvērunt**, *soldiers hastened forth from the gate.*
4. **Lēgātōs ad oppidum mīsērunt**, *they sent deputies to the town.*

*a.* Observe that **ā scholā**, **dē mūrō**, **ex portā** denote *place from which* motion is directed. On the other hand, **ad oppidum** (as also expressions like **in insulam**, *into the island*, **in terram**, *upon the land*) denotes the *place to which* motion is directed. Hence two rules.

**159. Rule.** — *Place whence, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

NOTE. — Before words beginning with a vowel or **h**, **ab** and **ex** are used instead of **ā** and **ē**.



160. Rule. — *Place whither, not including names of towns, is expressed by the accusative with ad or in.*

## 161.

## VOCABULARY

ā (ab), prep. with abl. <i>away from, from, by.</i>	mūrus, -ī, m. <i>wall.</i>
ad, prep. with acc. <i>to, towards.</i>	pēs, pedis, m. <i>foot.</i>
dē, prep. with abl. <i>down from, from.</i>	quia, conj. <i>because.</i>
ē (ex), prep. with abl. <i>out of, from.</i>	quō, adv. <i>whither.</i>
lēgātus, -ī, m. <i>deputy, lieutenant.</i>	schola, -ae, f. <i>school.</i>

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, receive.*

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *dismiss, send off.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, —, *flee, run away.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl, cast.*

## 162.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Dē capite ad pedem. 2. Ā scholā in oppidum. 3. Ā ducibus ad militēs. 4. Capiet, capit, capiunt. 5. Fugiant, fugient, fūgit. 6. Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam. 7. Cēpērunt, iēcit, iēcimus. 8. Fūgimus, fugimus, dīmīsimus.

9. Quī lēgātōs ad rēgem mīsērunt? Incolae eōs dē multis oppidīs mīsērunt. 10. Cūr dimittent agricolae carrōs et equōs? Quia militēs eōs capient. 11. Quō eōs dīmīsērunt et quō fūgērunt? In (*within*) mūrōs. 12. Quae arma militibus fuērunt (115)? 13. Eis militibus fuērunt scūta et gladii.

II. 1. From the feet of the horsemen. 2. With stones from heaven. 3. Both in school and from school. 4. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl. 5. You hurl, you will hurl, you hurled.

6. Women and children were fleeing from the fields. 7. Boys were throwing stones from the wall. 8. They were hastening from school to the water. 9. The master will send the children away from school to-day. 10. The lieutenant led the soldiers within the walls.

## LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*

## Consonant Stems: Liquids (38)

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

163.

*Paradigms*

	pater, m. <i>father</i>	homō, m. <i>man</i>	volnus, n. <i>wound</i>	corpus, n. <i>body</i>
STEMS:	patr-	homin-	volner-	corpor-
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	pater	homō	volnus	corpus
<i>Gen.</i>	patris	hominis	volneris	corporis
<i>Dat.</i>	patrī	hominī	volnerī	corporī
<i>Acc.</i>	patrem	hominem	volnus	corpus
<i>Abl.</i>	patre	homine	volnere	corpore
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	patrum	hominum	volnerum	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus

a. Review the table of terminations (154); also 154, *b* and *c*.

b. Decline is homō, id corpus, pater cārus.

164.

*Model Sentences*

1. Homō puerum virtūte laudat, *the man praises the boy for (on account of) his bravery.*
2. Equus aquae inopiā labōrat, *the horse suffers from want of water.*
3. Tuō volnere sum miser, *I am wretched because of your wound.*
4. Pedes longā viā est dēfessus, *the foot-soldier is tired with the long march.*

*a.* Observe that the ablatives *virtūte*, *inopiā*, *volnere*, *viā* all denote *cause* or *reason*. Notice the various prepositions used in translating these ablatives: *for*, *on account of*, *from*, *because of*, *with*.

**165. Rule.** — *The ablative is used to express cause.*

**166. VOCABULARY**

<i>corpus</i> , <i>corporis</i> , n. <i>body</i> .	<i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , f. <i>praise</i> , <i>glory</i> .
<i>homō</i> , <i>hominis</i> , m. <i>man</i> .	<i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i> , m. <i>father</i> .
<i>inopia</i> , -ae, f. <i>want</i> , <i>lack</i> .	<i>volnus</i> , <i>volneris</i> , n. <i>wound</i> .
<i>doleō</i> , <i>dolēre</i> , <i>dolui</i> , —, <i>grieve</i> .	

**167. EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Hominēs eōs militēs lapidibus et hastis volnerāvērunt.* 2. *Militēs miserī, multa volnera habētis!* 3. *Volnera sunt et in pedibus et in corporibus.* 4. *Hodiē patrēs volneribus vestris (your) dolēbunt.* 5. *Sed laudem capiētis māgnam ā rēge.* 6. *Nam tum nōn in mūrōs oppidī fugiēbātis.* 7. *Cum audāciā pūgnābātis et peditēs et equitēs.* 8. *Victōriam māgnam virtūte reportāvistis.*

*a.* Point out five different uses of the ablative above, and tell how you can distinguish them.

II. 1. The teachers dismiss the children from school. 2. Children hurl stones from the walls. 3. What king will flee on account of wounds? 4. We shall lead the deputies away from the town to the water. 5. The soldiers suffered from lack of food and water.

**168. REVIEW**

1. Give the rule for the *place* of an action. 2. For the *place whence*. 3. For the *place whither*. 4. For *means* or *instrument*. 5. For *manner*. 6. What question does the ablative of *place* answer? 7. What the ablative of *manner*? 8. What the ablative of *means* or *instrument*? 9. What the ablative of *cause*? 10. What two cases of a noun with consonant stem must be known to enable you to decline it? What else must you know?

## LESSON XXIV

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*Stems in *i*

169.

*Paradigms*

	hostis, m. <i>enemy</i>	nūbēs, f. <i>cloud</i>	urbs, f. <i>city</i>	animal, n. <i>animal</i>		
					TERMINATIONS	
STEMS:	hosti-	nūbi-	urbi-	animāli-	M. & F.	N.
					SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal	-s	—
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī	-e	-ī
					PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia	-īs, -ēs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. Compare the first table of endings above with the first under 154. What differences do you find?

b. Compare the terminations of the neuter with those of 154 and point out the differences.

c. The following sometimes have the ablative singular in *ī* and *e*: *avis*, *cīvis*, *fīnis*, *īgnis*, *nāvis* (171). A few sometimes have the accusative in *-im*: *turris*, *turrim*, *tower*.

d. As a guide to the learner, all nouns having *i*-stems will be followed by the stem in the succeeding vocabularies.

e. To decline a noun with stem ending in *i*, add the proper terminations to the stem with *i* dropped, except in the nominative. Decline *avis pulchra*, *pretty bird*, and *mare māgnum*, *great sea*.

## 170.

*Nouns with I-Stems*

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-ēs* not increasing<sup>1</sup> in the genitive. 2. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*. 3. Nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*. 4. Monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* following a consonant.

## 171.

## VOCABULARY

animal, animālis (animāli-), n. *animal*.

avis, -is (avi-), f. *bird*.

cīvis, -is (cīvi-), m. and f. *citizen*.

ferrum, -ī, n. *iron, sword*.

fīnis, -is (fīni-), m. *end, border*,

plur. *boundaries, territory*.

hostis, -is (hosti-), m. *enemy, foe*.

ignis, -is (īgni-), m. *fire*.

mare, -is (mari-), n. *sea*.

nāvis, -is (nāvi-), f. *ship*.

nūbēs, -is (nūbi-), f. *cloud, flock*.

-que, conj. *and* (44, 3).

urbs, urbis (urbi-), f. *city*.

hostis, general word for *enemy*; a *public enemy*.

inimicus, a *private* or *personal enemy*; opposite of amicus.

## 172.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Quī pila dē mūris urbium iaciunt? 2. Pirātae ē finibus Italiae fugiēbant ad insulās. 3. Eī animālī fuit māgnū corpus, sed caput parvum. 4. Māgnā nāvium inopiā labōrāmus. 5. Hostēs terrā marique vāstant ferrō ignique. 6. Pater ēius equitis laudem virtūte fili capiet. 7. Cīvēs nūbem equitum in fine terrae vidērunt. 8. Ei hostēs pila iēcērunt; cīvēs ex urbe fūgērunt.

II. 1. The deputies are tired from head to foot. 2. Boys see great fires in the city. 3. They take (their) books and hasten from school. 4. Whither will that cloud of birds fly? From the sea to the land. 5. Why did the citizens praise those men? On account of their courage. 6. We grieved at the wounds of those men.

<sup>1</sup> That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

## LESSON XXV

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*

## GENDER

## MASCULINE

173. Rule. — *Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, and -es increasing<sup>1</sup> in the genitive, are masculine.*

## FEMININE

174. Rule 1. — *Nouns in -dō, -gō, together with abstract and collective nouns in -iō, are feminine.*

Rule 2. — *Nouns in -ās, -ēs not increasing in the genitive, -is, -ūs, -x, and -s following a consonant are feminine.*

## NEUTER

175. Rule. — *Nouns in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs are neuter.*

NOTE. — The above rules are subordinate to the general rules of gender (47, 1 and 2).

176. *Table for Review of Nouns of Third Declension*

## MASCULINE

\* cīvis, cīvis (cīvi-), m. *citizen.*

\* dux, ducis, m. *leader.*

eques, equitis, m. *horseman.*

\* finis, finis (fini-), m. *end, border,*  
plur. *territories.*

homō, hominis, m. *man.*

\* hostis, hostis (hosti-), m. *enemy.*

\* ignis, ignis (igni-), m. *fire.*

\* lapis, lapidis, m. *stone.*

mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier.*

pater, patris, m. *father.*

pedes, peditis, m. *foot-soldier.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*

\* rēx, rēgis, m. *king.*

<sup>1</sup> That is, having more syllables than in the nominative.

## FEMININE

avis, avis (avi-), f. *bird*.laus, laudis, f. *praise*.nāvis, nāvis (nāvi-), f. *ship*.nūbēs, nūbis (nūbi-), f. *cloud*.urbs, urbis (urbi-), f. *city*.virtūs, virtūtis, f. *courage*.

## NEUTER

animal, animālis (animāli-), n. corpus, corporis, n. *body*.*animal*.caput, capitis, n. *head*.mare, maris (mari-), n. *sea*.volnus, volneris, n. *wound*.

a. Exceptions to the rules of gender (173-175) are starred. See how many of these exceptions come under the general rules of gender (47, 1 and 2). In future note exceptions as they occur.

b. Apply the appropriate rule of gender to each noun not starred.

c. Distinguish carefully nouns ending in -ūs and -us; as, for example, virtūs and corpus.

d. Make a list of all the above nouns having consonant stems (38) and another of i-stem nouns.

177. Read again 85. Apply the rules of gender, decline, and learn the meanings of the following :

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *endurance*.fragor, fragōris, m. *crash*.imperātor, imperātōris, m. *general*.pōns, pontis (ponti-), m. *bridge*.salūs, salūtis, f. *safety*.socius, sociī, m. *comrade, ally*.tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon*.terror, terrōris, m. *terror*.

A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON XXVI

## REVIEW: READING LESSON

## 178.

## REVIEW

1. Remember that to decline a noun of the third declension you must know: (1) its gender; (2) whether it is a consonant or an i-stem noun; (3) its nominative and genitive singular; (4) the appropriate table of terminations. 2. How do you know that *eques, equitis*, is not an i-stem noun and that *nūbēs, nūbis* is? 3. How can you tell, without knowing the genitive, that *cliēns, client, mare, sea*, and *arx, citadel*, are i-stem nouns? 4. Write down the table of terminations of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems (154); then, by the side of it, the table of masculine and feminine nouns with i-stems (169). 5. Compare the two tables. Is there any difference in the singular? 6. What are the differences in the plural? 7. In the same way write side by side the tables of terminations of neuter nouns. 8. What difference do you note in the singular? 9. What in the plural? 10. Decline *fragor māgnus, loud crash; tua salūs, your safety; pulchra nūbēs, beautiful cloud; mare asperum, rough sea; novum volnus, new wound*.

## 179.

## HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE

NOTE.—Some proper names and less common words that are not to be used again soon are given only in the general vocabulary.

Porsena, Rōmānōrum hostis, fuit rēx clārus. Ōlim urbem Rōmam obsidēbat. Māgnus erat Rōmānōrum terror, quia parva eis erat spēs (*hope*) salūtis. Sed virtūs validi viri eōs dēfendit. Nam paucis cum sociis prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostis sustinet, dum Rōmānī ā tergō (*behind him*) pontem rescindunt. Mox sociōs dīmittit et sōlus sē (*himself*) pontemque contrā hostis dēfendit. Tandem conruit pōns māgnō fragōre. Tum inter hostium tēla Horātius armātus in Tiberim dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs trānat.



## 180.

## VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, *armed.*

contrā, prep. with acc. *against.*

dum, conj. *while.*

inter, prep. with acc. *between, among.*

mox, adv. *soon, presently.*

paucī, -ae, -a, plur. *few.*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone (312).*

tandem, adv. *at last.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend.*

obsidēō, obsidēre, obsidī, obsessus, *besiege.*

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, *bear, hold in check.*

trānō, trānāre, trānāvī. —, *swim across.*

## 181.

## CONVERSATION

1. Quis fuit Porsena? Rēx Etrūscōrum fuit. 2. Militēsne multī eī fuērunt? Nōn paucōs habuit militēs. 3. Cūr urbem Rōmam nōn cēpit? Virtūte virī validī. 4. Cūius virtūtem nōn superāvit Porsena? Virtūtem Horātī, virī Rōmānī. 5. Diūne hostis sustinēbat Horātius? Nōn diū, nam hostēs erant multī. 6. Fūgitne tandem Horātius? Tandem in Tiberim dēsiluit (*jumped down*) et ad sociōs trānāvīt.



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON XXVII

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *i*

## READING LESSON

182.

*Paradigms*audāx, *bold*; stem audāci-brevis, *breve, short*; stem brevi-

	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	brevem	breve
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	brevī	brevī
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs, -ēs	audācia	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus

ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, eager*; stem ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Adjectives having one form in the nom. sing. for all genders, like *audāx*, are called adjectives of one ending; those having two

forms, like *brevis*, *breve*, adjectives of two endings; those having three forms, like *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, adjectives of three endings.

*b.* Observe that adjectives of two and three endings have only *-ī* in the ablative singular. Compare the endings of *i*-stem adjectives with those of *i*-stem nouns (169). What differences are there?

NOTE.—Adjectives of one ending have the genitive given in the vocabularies; those of two or three endings have only the nominative given.

*c.* Decline *ācre animal*, *keen animal*; *breve corpus*, *short body*; *hostis audāx*, *bold enemy*; *avis ācris*, *keen bird*.

### 183. CAESAR IN GAUL (B.C. 58-51)

See 179, note.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar, audāx dux Rōmānōrum, Gallōs superāvit. Militēs Caesarem māximē amābant, nam exemplum omnibus praebēbat cōstantiae et fortitūdinis. Militum salūtem imperātor diligenter cūrābat, omnisque tolerābat labōrēs aequē āc (*equally with*) militēs. Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs, sed commūne periculum eās nōn coniūnxit. Itaque Caesar bellum cum eis gessit et tandem omnem Galliam in (*under*) potestātem populī Rōmāni redēgit.

### 184. VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris, m. <i>Caesar</i> .	gēns, gentis (genti-), f. <i>race, tribe</i> .
commūnis, -e, <i>common</i> .	labor, labōris, m. <i>toil, hardship</i> .
cōstantia, -ae, f. <i>steadfastness</i> .	omnis, -e, <i>all, the whole, every</i> .
exemplum, -ī, n. <i>example</i> .	periculum, -ī, n. <i>danger</i> .
fortis, -e, <i>brave</i> .	populus, -ī, m. <i>people</i> .
Gallia, -ae, f. <i>Gaul</i> .	potestās, potestātis, f. <i>power</i> .

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus, *care for, take care*.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *manage, carry on (war)*.

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus, *cause, furnish, show*.

redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus, *reduce*.

tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātus, *bear, endure*.

## LESSON XXVIII

## FOURTH CONJUGATION — Ī-VERBS

## ABLATIVE OF TIME

audiō (stem audī-), *hear*PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear*

**185.** Learn the active indicative present, imperfect, future, and perfect of **audiō** (501).

*a.* Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō** (500). Observe that three syllables of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding ones of **capiō**: **audīs**, **audīmus**, **audītis**.

*b.* Observe that the perfect stem **audīv-** is formed by adding **v** to the verb-stem: **audī-**, **audīv-**. For the personal endings, see 132.

NOTE. — A few verbs of the fourth conjugation form the perfect irregularly; for example, **veniō** simply lengthens the **e** of the verb-stem: **veniō**, **vēnī**; **reperiō** doubles the **p** of the verb-stem: **reperiō**, **repperī**.

*c.* Like **audiō** inflect in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come* (189).

**186.**

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Audiō, audiēbam, audiam. 2. Auditne? audiēbat, audiet. 3. Audiunt, audiēbant, audient. 4. Audīmus, audīvimus, audīētis. 5. Audīvī, audīs, audīvērunt. 6. Venis, venit, vēnistī. 7. Vēnit, venīmus, vēnimus. 8. Reperis? repperistis, reperitis. 9. Repperi, reperit, repperit.

II. 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we found, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear.

187.

*Model Sentences*

1. Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant, *men toil in summer and winter.*
2. Decem annīs Caesar multa bella gessit, *within ten years Caesar carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that the ablatives above are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when? in or within what time?*

188. Rule.—*Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

189.

## VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, f. <i>summer.</i>	lūx, lūcis, f. <i>light.</i>
annus, -ī, m. <i>year.</i>	nox, noctis (nocti-), f. <i>night.</i>
decem, num. adj. indecl. <i>ten.</i>	p̄rimus, -a, -um. <i>first.</i>
hiems, hiemis, f. <i>winter.</i>	secundus, -a, -um, <i>second.</i>
hōra, -ae, f. <i>hour.</i>	tempus, temporis, n. <i>time.</i>

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī. ventūrus,<sup>1</sup> *come.*

190.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Hieme ventus mare nūbisque agitāt. 2. Aestāte somnus est hominibus dēfessis grātus. 3. Puerī nūbem avium p̄imā lūce in marī vidērunt. 4. Secundā noctis hōrā māgna avium nūbēs vēnit ex marī in terram. 5. Caesar bellum fortibus cum gentibus gessit eāsque paucis annis superāvit. 6. Perīculum commūne labōrēs Rōmānis sociisque praebuit.

II. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. Who reduced the Gauls under (in with acc.) the power of the Roman people? 3. At what time did they come to the city? 4. At the second hour of the night (there) will be a full moon. 5. We have found an example of constancy.

<sup>1</sup> Future active participle. This is given in the principal parts, if it occurs, where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

## LESSON XXIX

## PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT — ALL CONJUGATIONS

191. Read again 59 and 131, *b*, and review the principal parts of all verbs that have occurred in the vocabularies, beginning with Lesson XVI.

192.

*Paradigms*

## PLUPERFECT

*I had loved, etc.**I had advised, etc.*

1. amāveram	amāverāmus	monueram	monuerāmus
2. amāverās	amāverātis	monuerās	monuerātis
3. amāverat	amāverant	monuerat	monuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have<sup>1</sup> loved, etc.**I shall have<sup>1</sup> advised, etc.*

1. amāverō	amāverimus	monuerō	monuerimus
2. amāveris	amāveritis	monueris	monueritis
3. amāverit	amāverint	monuerit	monuerint

*a.* Observe that the pluperfect is formed on the perfect stems **amāv-**, **monu-**, by adding the imperfect of **sum** (502), and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum**. There is an exception in one form. Which?

*b.* Form in the same way as those above the first person singular of the pluperfect and future perfect of **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, **sum** on the perfect stems **rēx-**, **cēp-**, **audīv-**, **fu-**. Inflect and verify by reference to 499-502.

*c.* All verbs form the pluperfect and future perfect on the perfect stem in the same way.

*d.* Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect of **tolerō**, *bear*; **obsideō**, *besiege*; **gerō**, *manage*; **veniō**, *come*.

*e.* Review Vocabularies 180, 184, 189.

<sup>1</sup> Translate the second and third persons *will have*, etc.

## 193.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāverat, monuerat, rēxerat. 2. Cēperat, audiverat, audiverant. 3. Audiverit, audiverint, cēperit. 4. Amāverant, monuerant, rēxerant. 5. Cēperō, rēxerō, audiverō. 6. Gesserās, vēnerās, obsēderās. 7. Gesseram, tolerāveram, obsēderam. 8. Fuerat, fuerant, fueris. 9. Fuerimus, fuerāmus, fuerō.

10. Dux filium virtūte laudāverat. 11. Forti homini fuerint multi et ācrēs amīcī (115). 12. Caesar multa bella in Galliā decem annis gesserat. 13. Galli oppida māgnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 14. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 15. Inopia cibī populō forti māgnōs praebuerit labōrēs. 16. Inter tēla ācrium hostium vēnerant ad mūrōs.

II. 1. We shall have come. 2. You had found. 3. He will have held in check. 4. They had caused. 5. They had come. 6. They will have defended. 7. Whom had he cared for?

8. Horatius had long held the enemy in check. 9. Soon he had dismissed (his) comrades. 10. Then he jumped down (dēsilit) into the Tiber. 11. Alone he swam across to (his) comrades. 12. The common danger had not frightened the Gauls.

## 194.

## REVIEW

1. What word must always be used in translating the pluperfect? Ans. *had*. 2. Recall the three ways of translating the perfect, as *amāvit*. 3. Compare the pluperfect of *sum* with the imperfect of the same verb. 4. Compare the future of *sum* with the future perfect of the same verb. 5. How can you tell whether an *-iō* verb is of the third or the fourth conjugation? 6. What is the Latin way of saying "the Roman people"?

## LESSON XXX

## SYNTAX OF NAMES OF TOWNS: LOCATIVE CASE

195. Names of towns and a few other words have a form called the *locative case*, which expresses the idea of *at, in, on*.

a. The locative has the following endings for names of towns:

	SING.	PLUR.	
1st Declension	-ae	-īs	{ Rōmae, <i>at or in Rome</i> ; Athēnīs, <i>at or in Athens</i> .
2d Declension	-ī	-īs	{ Corinthī, <i>at or in Corinth</i> ; Delphīs, <i>at or in Delphi</i> .
3d Declension	-ī(e)	-ibus	{ Carthāginī, <i>at or in Carthage</i> ; Trallibus, <i>at or in Tralles</i> .

b. Other locative forms are *domī*, *at home*; *humī*, *on the ground*; *mīlītiae*, *in the field* (of war); *rūrī*, *in the country*.

## 196.

*Models*

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | { in oppidō, <i>in the town</i> .<br>in Ītaliā, <i>in Italy</i> .  | { Capuae, <i>at or in Capua</i> .<br>Delphīs, <i>at or in Delphi</i> .<br>domī, <i>at home</i> .<br>rūrī, <i>in the country</i> . |
| 2. | { ad flūmen, <i>to the river</i> .<br>in urbem, <i>into the city</i> .<br>in Ītaliā, <i>to or into Italy</i> . | { Athēnās, <i>to Athens</i> .<br>Rōmam, <i>to Rome</i> .<br>domum, <i>home</i> .<br>rūs, <i>to or into the country</i> .          |
| 3. | { ab, dē, ex agrīs, <i>from the fields</i> .<br>ab, dē, ex Ītaliā, <i>from Italy</i> .                         | { Athēnīs, <i>from Athens</i> .<br>Rōmā, <i>from Rome</i> .<br>domō, <i>from home</i> .<br>rūre, <i>from the country</i> .        |



a. For the syntax of expressions of *place where*, *place whither*, and *place whence* other than names of towns, illustrated in the first column of models, refer to 81, 160, 159.

b. Observe that the foregoing expressions of place denoted by names of towns, together with *domus*, *rūs*, etc., have no preposition.

**197. Rules for names of towns and *domus* and *rūs***

1. Place **where** is expressed by the locative.

2. Place **whither** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

3. Place **whence** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**198.**

**VOCABULARY**

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens*.

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage*.

Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth* (47, 2).

Delphī, -ōrum, f. plur. *Delphi*.

frāter, frātris, m. *brother*.

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal*.

Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian*.

iaceō. iacēre, iacuī, iacitūrus, *lie down, lie*.

**199.**

**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Primā lūce, hieme, aestāte. 2. Secundā noctis hōrā, decem hōris, annō secundō. 3. Rūre Rōmam venire.

4. Meus frāter domī rūri manēbat. 5. Rōmānī domī militiaeque erant clārī. 6. Corinθī et Delphīs templa pulchra vidēbāmus.

7. Hannibal equitēs peditēsque Capuam mīsit.

8. Tandem ex Ītaliā Carthāginem commūni periculō<sup>1</sup> prope-rāvit. 9. Cūr, pigri puerī, humī iacētis?

II. 1. From Delphi you came to Athens. 2. From Athens you hastened to Corinth. 3. From Corinth you came home to Rome.

4. From home we will send you (tē) into the country.

5. The boys were lying on the ground because they were tired.

<sup>1</sup> See 165.

## LESSON XXXI

THE DEMONSTRATIVES **Hīc** AND **Ille**: READING LESSON

200.

*Paradigms***hīc**, *this*; plur. *these***ille**, *that*; plur. *those*

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hīc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>

a. Compare the declension of **ille** with that of **is** (138).

201.

*Model Sentences*

- Hīc** puer est laetus, **illa** puella est trīstis, *this boy is merry, that girl is sad.*
- Brūtus** et **Mārcus** sunt amīcī; **ille** est impiger, **hīc** est piger, *Brutus and Marcus are friends; the former is active, the latter is lazy.*
- Hōc** dōnum deae est grātum, **illud** deō, *this gift is pleasing to the goddess, that (one) to the god.*

a. Observe in the model sentences two different uses of **hīc** and **ille**: in 1 and the first part of 3 they are used as demonstrative *adjectives* in agreement with nouns; in 2 and the last part of 3 they are used alone as demonstrative *pronouns*.

b. *Hic* and *ille* are sometimes used as personal pronouns, like *is*, but less frequently, meaning *he, she, it*; often in contrast *hic* means *the latter*, *ille* *the former*, as in the second model sentence.

c. Observe that *is* has been used in the exercises indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis, in agreement with a noun; while *hic* means *this* and *ille* *that* with a certain emphasis. *Hic* is applied to what is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*. *Ille* is applied to what is remote from the speaker in *place, time, or thought*.

d. *Ille* agreeing with a noun and commonly placed after it sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*.

## 202. BRITAIN INVADED (B.C. 55 AND 54)

In insulā illā Britannīā ōlim habitābant Britannī. Hanc terram Rōmānī bis invāsērunt. Illī Britannī māgnā cum virtūte prō patriā pūgnābant; Rōmānī imperium aurumque capere tentābant. Illōs Cassivelaunus, dux impiger et audāx, hōs Caesar dūcēbat. Illī (dat.) erant militēs multī et fortēs, sed hic bellum cum eō fēliciter gerēbat. Caesar illius agrōs vāstāvit oppidaque cēpit. Tandem Britannus lēgātōs ad Caesarem misit. Hic obsidēs imperāvit (*demanded*). Hōs obsidēs trīstis ex Britannīā Rōmam dūxit.

## 203. VOCABULARY

bis, adv. *twice*.

Britannus, -ī, m. *a Briton*.

fēliciter, adv. *successfully*.

imperium, imperī, n. *power, rule*.

impiger, -gra, -grum, *active*.

laetus, -a, -um, *merry, joyful*.

obses, obsidis, m. *hostage*.

trīstis, -e, *sad, gloomy*.

invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus, *invade*.

## 204. EXERCISES

1. Caesar gave his soldiers that (well-known) example of steadfastness. 2. Caesar had found a brave people in Britain. 3. They carried on war with him. 4. Great was the power of those tribes. 5. The hostages were not joyful, for Caesar had led them from (their) home.

## LESSON XXXII

## PASSIVE VOICE: ABLATIVE OF AGENT

## ACTIVE AND PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT

## 205.

*Paradigms*

ACTIVE SINGULAR	PERS. END.	PASSIVE SINGULAR	PERS. END.
1. amō, <i>I love.</i>	-ō	amor, <i>I am loved.</i>	-r
2. amās, <i>you love.</i>	-s	amāris, <i>-re, you are loved.</i>	-ris, -re
3. amat, <i>he loves.</i>	-t	amātur, <i>he is loved.</i>	-tur
PLURAL		PLURAL	
1. amāmus, <i>we love.</i>	-mus	amāmur, <i>we are loved.</i>	-mur
2. amātis, <i>you love.</i>	-tis	amāminī, <i>you are loved.</i>	-minī
3. amant, <i>they love.</i>	-nt	amantur, <i>they are loved.</i>	-ntur

a. Observe that the passive forms above differ from the active only in the personal endings. To the stem amā- (final ā dropped in the first person) the passive endings are added, instead of the active.

b. Compare in the same way the imperfect and future active and passive (497). The passive endings are added to the tense-stems amābā- and amābi-, except in the second person singular of the future, where -bi- is changed to -be-. What is true of amō in the present, imperfect, and future holds true of moneō.

c. Review the active and learn the present, imperfect, and future of amō (497) and moneō (498) in the passive. Like amō inflect in the same tenses laudō, *praise*; and like moneō inflect doceō, *teach*.

## 206.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Amat, amātur. 2. Amābat, amābātur. 3. Amābit, amābitur. 4. Amant, amantur. 5. Amābant, amābantur. 6. Amābuntne? amābuntur? 7. Amābō, amābor. 8. Amāmus,

amāmur. 9. Moneō, moneor. 10. Monēbam, monēbar.  
 11. Monēbō, monēbor. 12. Monēs, monēris. 13. Monēbitis,  
 monēbimini. 14. Monētis, monēmini.

II. 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising,  
 they were praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised.  
 4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We  
 shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are  
 taught. 8. You will teach, you will be taught.

## 207.

*Model Sentences*

1. *Agricola agrum arat, the farmer ploughs the field.*
2. *Ager ab agricolā arātur, the field is ploughed by the farmer.*

a. Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive :  
 (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive ;  
 (2) the subject, that is, the *doer* or *agent*, in the active is expressed  
 in the passive by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

208. **Rule.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb  
 is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

NOTE. — When the doer is not a person, the preposition is omitted.

## 209.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus frāter hunc puerum impigrum laudābat. 2. Hic  
 puer ā meō frātre laudābātur. 3. Illi hominēs hōs omnis  
 sustinēbunt Britannōs. 4. *Ā* quō nōn amātur imperium?  
 5. Haec puella laeta docet ; illa trīstis ā nostrō magistrō docē-  
 tur. 6. Insulam Britanniam bis fēliciter invāsērunt Rōmānī.  
 7. Hī obsidēs Rōmam ā Caesare portābuntur ; eōrum patria  
 vāstābitur. 8. Mārcus domi iacet aeger.

II. 1. Who does not love power? 2. All these Britons  
 will be held in check by those men. 3. This merry girl was  
 taught by the master. 4. My brothers were praised by this  
 boy.

## LESSON XXXIII

THE RELATIVE *Quī*

210.

*Paradigm**quī, who, which, what, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

211.

*Table of Meanings for Reference*

NOTE. — The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

*Nom. who, which, what, that.**Gen. of whom, of which, whose, of what.**Dat. to or for whom, to or for which, to or for what.**Acc. whom, which, what, that.**Abl. by, etc., whom, which, what.*

a. Compare the declension of *quī* with that of *quis* (142). In what does the difference consist?

212.

*Model Sentences*

- Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant, the girls whom we praised were good.*
- Cōnsilium quod ille homō dat laudātur, the advice which that man gives is praised.*
- Homō cui sunt multī rēmī est nauta, the man who has (to whom there are) many oars is a sailor.*
- Is quī est fortis laudātur, he who is brave is praised.*

a. Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but the case may be different. In the model sentences the antecedents are in the nominative, while the relatives are (1 and 2) in the accusative, (3) in the dative, (4) in the nominative.

b. Observe that *is* in the fourth sentence does not refer to any particular person, but means *one, a man*; this is a common use of *is* as the antecedent of *quī*.

**213. Rule.** — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its relation to some word in its own clause.*

## 214.

## VOCABULARY

captīvus, -ī, m. *prisoner, captive.*

cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n. *advice, plan.*

frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*

gaudium, gaudī, n. *joy.*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge, great.*

māter, mātris, f. *mother.*

servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus, *save.*

## 215.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs impigrī ā quibus patria nostra vāstātur sunt Rōmānī. 2. Hostēs quī patriam nostram invāsērunt sunt Rōmānī. 3. Iī hominēs quōrum virtūte urbs tenēbātur et servābātur domum ē bellō venient. 4. Frūstrā, māter misera, dolēs volnere quod filius tuus habet. 5. Ingēns fuit fēminārum gaudium quārum virī (*husbands*) ē bellis vērunt. 6. Laetus est ille obses quī nōn tenētur sed liberātur. 7. Cōnsilia quae illi hominēs dabant urbem servāvērunt ingentem.

II. 1. That poor mother whose son is lying on the ground is grieving bitterly (*māximē*). 2. This (man) was a soldier at Zama. 3. He was wounded by the sword that you see. 4. The man to whom the sword belonged (*fuit*) at that time is a prisoner at Capua. 5. The prisoner by whom this soldier was wounded will be led (*dūcētur*) to Rome.

## LESSON XXXIV

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF *Regō* AND *Capiō*

**216.** *a.* Review the active voice of *regō* and *capiō*, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (499, 500).

*b.* Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings (205) for the active except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

**217.**

## EXERCISES

I. 1. *Regit, regitur.* 2. *Regēbat, regēbātur.* 3. *Reget, regētur.* 4. *Regunt, reguntur.* 5. *Regent, regentur.* 6. *Regis, regeris.* 7. *Regēbās, regēbāris.* 8. *Regēs, regēris.* 9. *Regimus, regimur.* 10. *Regitis, regimini.* 11. *Regam, regar.* 12. *Capiunt, capiuntur.* 13. *Capiēbat, capiēbātur.* 14. *Capiet, capiētur.* 15. *Capient, capientur.* 16. *Capiēs, capiēris.* 17. *Capis, caperis.* 18. *Capiēbās, capiēbāris.* 19. *Capimus, capimur.* 20. *Capitis, capimini.*

*a.* Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō, lead; mittō, send; scribō, write.*

*b.* Like *capiō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *iaciō, throw; recipiō, receive.*

II. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? Are they sent? 8. He will send, he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were writing, I was writing. 11. We write, we shall write. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were thrown. 14. He will throw, they will be thrown. 15. Who receives? Who was received? 16. Who will receive? They will be received. 17. We shall receive, you will be received.



## 218.

## VOCABULARY

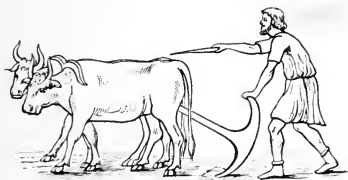
castra, -ōrum, n. plur. *camp.*cōsul, cōsulis, m. *consul.*exsul, exsulis, m. *exile.*iam, adv. *already, now.*īra, -ae, f. *anger, wrath.*pāx, pācis, f. *peace.*abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus, *lead away.*recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *receive.*scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *defeat, conquer.*

## 219.

## EXERCISES

1. Militem gladiō volnerātum (*wounded*) vidēbāmus. 2. Exsul mātrem ingentī cum gaudiō vidit. 3. Tristēs erunt mātres quae cum captivīs capientur. 4. Iam ad cōsulem mittentur lēgātī. 5. Lēgātī dē pāce in castra cōsulis vērunt. 6. Bene ā cōsule recipiēbantur. 7. Nōn iam<sup>1</sup> fuit imperātor irae plēnus. 8. Īra cōsulis vincitur, hostēs ab eō abdūcuntur. 9. Frūstrā epistolās quās repperī scrīpsistī.

<sup>1</sup> Nōn iam, *no longer.*



ANCIENT PLOUGH

Nudus ara, sere nudus. — *Vergil*

## LESSON XXXV

## PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**220.** *a.* Learn the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (492).

*b.* The personal pronoun of the third person, when not reflexive, is supplied by the demonstrative *is*, and sometimes by *hic* or *ille*.

**221.***Model Sentences*

1. **Ego** tē laudō ; tū mē culpās, *I praise you ; you blame me.*
2. **Omnēs** hominēs sē (or sēsē) amant, *all men love themselves.*
3. **Tū** tē amās ; omnēs nōs amāmus, *you love yourself ; we all love ourselves.*
4. **Filius** mēcum domī manet, *my son stays at home with me.*

*a.* Observe that verbs have been used already many times in the first and second persons without the subjects **ego**, **tū**, **nōs**, **vōs** being expressed (61, *a*). They are used only for emphasis or contrast.

*b.* The reflexive pronoun refers back to the subject of the clause in which it stands, as in 2 above : **sē** refers to **hominēs**.

*c.* The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used with reflexive sense, as in 3 above : **tē** and **nōs**.

*d.* The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them : **mēcum**, instead of **cum mē** ; **vōbiscum**, instead of **cum vōbīs**, etc. So also usually with relative and interrogative pronouns : **quibuscum**, *with whom*.

**222.***Model Sentences*

1. **Ego** quī scrībō sum tuus amīcus, *I who write am your friend.*
2. **Tū** quī scrībīs es meus amīcus, *you who write are my friend.*

*a.* Observe that the relative does not change to conform to the *person* of the antecedent, but that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

223.

## VOCABULARY

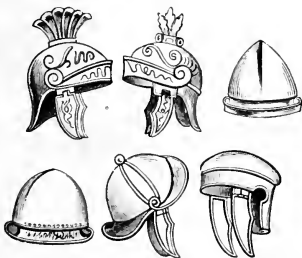
culpa, -ae, f. *blame, fault.*epistula, -ae, f. *letter.*galea, -ae, f. *helmet.*numquam, adv. *never.*sine, prep. with abl. *without.*vīta, -ae, f. *life.*culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus, *blame.*

224.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad castra cōsulis veniam. 2. Quis exsulis iram vicit? 3. Frūstrā dē culpā tuā scribitur. 4. Captivi recipiuntur et abdūcuntur. 5. Puella sē culpat. 6. Liberōs nostrōs amāmus nōs omnēs. 7. Nōs sumus miserī, laetī estis vōs. 8. Tua vīta tibi, mea mihi est cāra. 9. Sine vōbīs et vōbiscum sumus miserī. 10. Omnia vestra cōsilia nōbīs sunt grāta. 11. Vōs quī estis laetī ad nōs epistulās scribitis.

II. 1. We who praise you blame them. 2. I shall walk in the garden with you. 3. Never shall I be miserable with you. 4. I who write this letter to you am at Carthage. 5. We praise ourselves; you blame yourselves. 6. What helmets do you see? Roman helmets.



HELMETS

## LESSON XXXVI

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF *Audiō*: READING LESSON

**225.** *a.* Review the active voice of *audiō*, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (501).

*b.* Observe that to form the passive you have only to add to the stem the passive personal endings (205) in place of the active. Compare 216, *b.*

**226.**

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Audit, audītur. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētur. 4. Audīmus, audīmur. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmur. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Auditis, audīminī. 8. Audiētis, audiēminī. 9. Audis, audiris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

*a.* Like *audiō* inflect in the same tenses *pūniō*, *punish*; *reperiō*, *find*.

II. 1. I punish, am punished. 2. I was punishing, was punished. 3. I shall punish, shall be punished. 4. They punish, are punished. 5. They will punish, will be punished. 6. He finds, is found. 7. He found, was found. 8. He will find, will be found. 9. You will find, will be found. 10. You find, are found.

*a.* Review Vocabularies 218, 223.

**227.**

## CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Ōlim ingēns terror urbī Rōmae ā Volscīs, quī erant populi Rōmānī hostēs audācēs, praebēbātur. Nam Volscī ā Coriolānō, exsule Rōmānō, concitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agrīs ab hostibus dēlentur. Cīvēs ā cōnsule armantur, urbs cibō complētur. Frūstrā. Tum terrōre

ingentī Rōmānī mātrem Coriolāni ad eum misērunt dē pāce, quia illa ā filiō māximē amābātur. Veturia, māter, in castra ad filium vēnit. Eam vidēns (*seeing*), “Ō mea patria,” clāmāvit Coriolānus, “vicistī iram meam!” et statim hostis abdūxit. Sic Rōma servābātur.

## 228.

## VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī, n. *building*.

Coriolānus, -ī, m. *Coriolanus*.

sic, adv. *thus*.

statim, adv. *at once*.

Veturia, -ae, f. *Veturia*.

Volscī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Volscians*.

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus, *arm*.

clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus, *cry out, exclaim*.

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *fill*.

concitō, concitāre, concitāvī, concitātus, *stir up, rouse*.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy, wipe out*.



“Patriae, fili, bellum infers?”

## LESSON XXXVII

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES: ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

229. The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (492). They are also used without a noun as possessive pronouns.

meus, -a, -um (voc. sing. masc. mī), <i>my, mine.</i>	(own), its (own), their (own); his, hers, its, theirs.
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our, ours.</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your, yours.</i>
suus, sua, suum, <i>his (own), her</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your, yours.</i>

NOTE. — When *your, yours* refers to one person, *tuus* is used; when to more than one, *vester*.

## 230.

*Model Sentences*

1. Mārcum ēius cūrā laudāmus, *we praise Marcus for his care.*
2. Puer amīcō librum suum dat, *the boy gives his book to a friend.*

*a.* Observe that in 1 *ēius* does not refer to the subject of the sentence, but to the object; while in 2 *suum* does refer to the subject *puer*, as *suīs* to *Germānī* in 231, 3. *Suus* is *reflexive*, that is, refers back to the subject; the genitives of *is* are not reflexive. This distinction is important, because forms of *suus* may very often be translated like the genitives of *is*, — *his, her, its, their*.

*b.* *Suus* is emphatic also; hence it is often omitted in Latin where the meaning is clear without it and where its use would give too much emphasis. See, for example, 144, 1 and 2; also 234, II. 5.

## 231.

*Model Sentences*

1. Hīc homō cibō caret, *this man lacks food.*
2. Illō mē liberat periculō, *he frees me from that danger.*
3. Germānī Rōmānōs ā finibus suīs arcēbant, *the Germans kept the Romans off from their<sup>1</sup> lands.*

<sup>1</sup> That is, the Germans'.

a. Observe the use of the ablative to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what? of what?* and is called the *ablative of separation*. The ablative of *place whence*, with or without a preposition (158, 159) is of the same nature.

**232. Rule.** — *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, without a preposition, or with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

233.

VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick.*

Germānus, -ī, m. *a German.*

avārus, -a, -um, *greedy.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. *money.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender.*

vacuus, -a, -um, *empty, destitute of.*

arceō, arcēre, arcuī, —, *keep off.*

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, *be in want of, lack.*

dēmigrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātus, *remove, go away.*

privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus, *deprive.*

spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātus, *rob, plunder.*

NOTE. — A preposition is used with the ablative after arceō and dēmigrō.

234.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Germāni galeīs, hastis scūtisque armābantur. 2. Aedificiōrum dēfēnsōrēs culpābantur. 3. Quis nōn dolet culpīs suis? 4. Statim clāmābant fēminae. 5. Sic urbs complēbātur terrōre. 6. Statim hostēs concitābantur. 7. Avārī militēs ārās spoliāvērunt dōnis. 8. Urbem dēfēnsōribus vacuum repperērunt. 9. Vōs, pirātae, arcēbit deus ā suā ārā. 10. Ille vir aeger aquā privābātur.

II. 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. My boy, that horse lacks grain and water. 3. We shall remove from the city into the country. 4. The goddess kept off the enemy from her own temple. 5. Those women were robbed of (their) children. 6. You will free us from care.

## LESSON XXXVIII

## PASSIVE VOICE—ALL CONJUGATIONS

## INDICATIVE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT

**235.** *a.* Recall the principal parts of **amō** and examine the formation of the passive indicative perfect (497). Observe that it is formed by adding the present tense of **sum** to the perfect participle **amātus**.

NOTE.—The participle is declined like **bonus** in the nominative singular and plural to agree with the subject of the verb in gender and number.

*b.* Now examine the pluperfect and future perfect. How are these tenses formed?

*c.* The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

*d.* Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and examine the formation of the three tenses in the same way (498–501). What do you discover? Learn these three tenses.

**236.**

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātum est.  
 2. Virī amātī sunt, fēminae amātae sunt, bella amāta sunt.  
 3. Militēs monitī erant, puer monitus erit, animal monitum est.  
 4. Agricola rēctus est, urbs rēcta est, oppidum rēctum est.  
 5. Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō. 6. Auditī sumus, auditī erāmus, auditī erimus. 7. Rēctus es, rēctus erās, rēctus eris. 8. Tempa spoliāta sunt. 9. Volscī Rōmā abductī sunt.

II. 1. The greedy soldier was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. You had not been loved. 6. Thus we (fem.) shall have been heard. 7. Germans had been defenders of their country.



## 237.

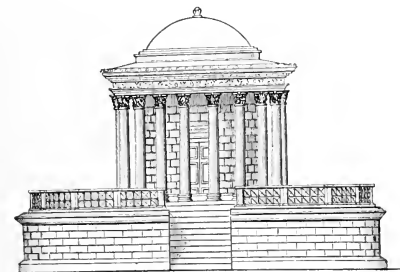
## VOCABULARY

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient, old.*arx, arcis (arci-), *f. citadel.*cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty, plur. troops.*crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*ingēns, -ntis, *great, huge.*mora, -ae, *f. delay.*sine, *prep. with abl. without.*verbum, -ī, *n. word.*

## 238.

## EXERCISES

1. Multa in Italiā oppida ā Rōmānis aedificāta sunt.
2. Omnēs puellae rosis ōrnātae erant.
3. Tua verba ā mē audita erunt.
4. Eō tempore urbs cibō militibusque fuit vacua.
5. Bellum quod ā Caesare gestum est crūdēle fuit.
6. Cōpiae quae ab eō in Galliam missae sunt frūmentō caruērunt.
7. Aurum quod ā Caesare ex Galliā portātum erat in templō habitum est antiqūō.
8. Ad tē sine morā scribam.
9. In arce quae ab hominibus antiqūis aedificāta erat ignis fuit ingēns.
10. Omnia templa aurō spoliāta erant.



TEMPLE

## LESSON XXXIX

## 239.

## REVIEW: READING LESSON

1. Give four locative forms, not names of towns, with their meanings. 2. Give the table of locative endings, singular and plural, of the first three declensions. 3. How do you say in Latin: (1) *in the town, to the town, from the town?* (2) *in Rome, to Rome, from Rome?* Give the four rules that apply. 4. What is the Latin for *the former, the latter?* 5. Write side by side the tables of active and passive personal endings for the first three tenses. 6. Give the passive future second person singular of **amō** and **moneō**. 7. Point out five examples of the ablative of agent in 227. 8. In what respects must the relative agree with its antecedent? 9. In 215, I. point out a relative in the accusative with its antecedent in the ablative. 10. Express in Latin *I who, you who, he who*. 11. What do the foregoing examples show about the Latin relative as to the *person* of the antecedent? 12. When do you express *your* by **tuus**, and when by **vester**? 13. Point out a sentence in 234, I. where **suus** is both reflexive and emphatic. 14. What two cases are used with **spoliō** and **privō**? (See 234, I. 7.) 15. In *we blame the man for his fault* should you translate *his* by **suus** or **ēius**?

## 240.

## SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

See 179, note.

Scipiō et Hannibal erant clārī imperātōrēs. Ille erat Rōmānus quī victōriās māgnās reportāvit; hic Poenus quī Rōmānōs multis pūgnis vicit. Hannibal puer<sup>1</sup> ad ārās ā patre adductus<sup>2</sup> odium iūrāvit in<sup>3</sup> Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida in Hispāniā multa expūgnāvit, tum Alpīs montīs superāvit<sup>4</sup> Rōmānōsque saepe vicit in Italiā. Scipiō ad<sup>5</sup> Ticinum flūmen vitam patris virtūte servāvit posteāque ad Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortem praebuit.

<sup>1</sup> *when a boy.*

<sup>2</sup> *led.*

<sup>3</sup> *against.*

<sup>4</sup> *passed over.*

<sup>5</sup> *near.*

Bellum in Āfricam est trānsportātum ĩbique Scipiō Hannibalem ad Zamam superāvit. Māgnificum triumphum Rōmae habuit et ā populō Rōmānō appellātus est Āfricānus.

## 241.

## VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. *a youth.*

flūmen, flūminis, n. *river.*

ibi, adv. *there.*

māgnificus, -a, -um, *splendid.*

mōns, -tis (monti-), m. *mountain.*

odium, odī, n. *hatred.*

postea, adv. *afterwards.*

pūgna, -ae, f. *fight, battle.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *lead to.*

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, *call.*

expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātus, *take by storm.*

iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātus, *swear, take an oath.*



SCIPIO



HANNIBAL

## LESSON XL

## FOURTH DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *u*

242.

*Paradigms*gradus, *n.* step    cornū, *n.* horn

	STEMS: gradu-	cornu-	TERMINATIONS		
			SINGULAR	MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	gradus	cornū	-us	-ū	
<i>Gen.</i>	gradūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs	
<i>Dat.</i>	graduī (-ū)	cornū	-uī (-ū)	-ū	
<i>Acc.</i>	gradum	cornū	-um	-ū	
<i>Abl.</i>	gradu	cornū	-ū	-ū	
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	gradūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua	
<i>Gen.</i>	graduū	cornuum	-uum	-uum	
<i>Dat.</i>	gradibus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus (-ubus)	
<i>Acc.</i>	gradūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua	
<i>Abl.</i>	gradibus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus (-ubus)	

*a.* Dissyllables in *-cus*, *artus*, *joint*, *portus*, *harbor*, and a few other nouns have the dative and ablative plural in *-ubus*.

**243. Rule of Gender.** — *Nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine; those in -u are neuter.*

NOTE. — For general rules of gender, see 47, 2.

*a.* *Domus*, *house*, *Īdūs*, *the Ides*, *manus*, *hand*, and a few others are feminine.

*b.* For the declension of *domus*, see 482. *Domī* is used only as a locative (195, *b*).

*c.* Decline *exercitus māgnus*, *large army*; *mea manus*, *my hand*; *cornū longum*, *long horn*.

## 244.

## VOCABULARY

*adventus*, -ūs, m. *coming*.

*altus*, -a, -um, *high, tall, deep*.

*cantus*, -ūs, m. *song, singing*.

*cīvitās*, *cīvitātis*, f. *the state*.

*cornū*, -ūs, n. *horn, wing* (of an army).

*domus*, -ūs, f. *house, home*.

*exercitus*, -ūs, m. *army*.

*frōns*, *frondis*, f. *leaf, foliage*.

*gradus*, -ūs, m. *step, degree*.

*lacus*, -ūs, m. *lake*.

*manus*, -ūs, f. *hand*.

*ōrnāmentum*, -ī, n. *ornament*.

*palūs*, *palūdis*, f. *marsh*.

*quercus*, -ūs, f. *oak tree*.

*congregō*, *congregāre*, *congregāvī*, *congregātus*, *gather, assemble*.  
*faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*, *do, make*.

## 245.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Inter scholam et domum multōs facimus gradūs. 2. Adventus avium nōs dēlectat. 3. Eārum cantūs cum gaudiō audīmus. 4. Hieme cantūs nōn iam<sup>1</sup> audiuntur. 5. Avēs in lacubus palūdisque sē congregant. 6. Pueri avium domōs altis in quercubus reperiunt. 7. Quercūs frōns antiquis temporibus erat victōris ōrnāmentum. 8. Salūs cīvitātis in manibus cōsulum erat. 9. Cōsulēs erant exercituum imperātōrēs.

II. 1. Many animals fight with their<sup>2</sup> horns. 2. Many lakes are seen among the mountains. 3. The songs of birds were heard among the oaks. 4. We had been delighted by the coming of the birds. 5. Their<sup>3</sup> songs were gladly heard by us, by you, by all. 6. Our house lacks children. 7. The state will not lack brave citizens.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note, p. 87.

<sup>2</sup> Is this word to be translated into Latin? See 230, *b*.

<sup>3</sup> Is this word to be omitted in translation or not?

## LESSON XLI

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

## ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

246. Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

247. *Models*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto-), <i>high, deep</i>	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
brevis (brevi-), <i>short</i>	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx (audāci-), <i>bold</i>	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um

a. Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem vowel and adding *-ior* for the masculine and feminine and *-ius* for the neuter; the superlative by adding *-issimus, -issima, -issimum*.

248. *Declension of a Comparative*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

a. Compare *cārus* (*cāro-*), *dear*; *levis* (*levi-*), *light*; *prūdēns* (*prūdenti-*), *wise*; and decline the comparative of each like *altior*.

249. *Model Sentences*

1. Pīnus altior est quam quercus, } *the pine is taller than the oak.*  
 2. Pīnus altior est quercū, }

a. Observe that you can say in Latin, without difference of meaning, *altior quam quercus* and *altior quercū*.

**250. Rule.** — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.*

## 251.

## VOCABULARY

<i>albus, -a, -um, white.</i>	<i>leō, leōnis, m. lion.</i>
<i>brevis, -e, short, brief.</i>	<i>nix, nivis, f. snow.</i>
<i>canis, canis, m. and f. dog.</i>	<i>pīnus, -ī (abl. pīnū), f. pine tree.</i>
<i>elephantus, -ī, m. elephant.</i>	<i>prūdēns, prūdētis, wise, sagacious.</i>
<i>fidēlis, -e, faithful, trusty.</i>	<i>quam, conj. than.</i>
<i>iter, itineris, n. way, march (482).</i>	<i>vīta, -ae, f. life.</i>

## 252.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Quod iter brevius est quam illud? 2. Quod iter brevius est illō? 3. Cōpiae ad (*near*) palūdem māgnam sē congregāvērunt. 4. Inter exercitūs iacet lacus. 5. Patria nōbis est cārīor vitā. 6. Mare est altius flūminibus altissimis. 7. Fortiōrem exercitum quam tuum nōn vidī. 8. Mihi grātior est amīcī adventus cantū avium. 9. Cūius canis nostrō est fidēlior? 10. Montēs altissimī aestāte nive sunt albi. 11. Civēs sapientēs sunt civitātis ōrnāmentum pulcherrimum.

II. 1. My hand is broader than yours. 2. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 3. Elephants are more sagacious than lions. 4. I have seen a white oak taller than your house. 5. Lions are the boldest animals. 6. Oaks are broader than pines. 7. That man took<sup>1</sup> steps longer than mine.<sup>2</sup> 8. Why was I deprived of my money? 9. The foliage of the oak is most dear to me.

<sup>1</sup> faciō.<sup>2</sup> meōs.

## LESSON XLII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE

253.

*Models*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser (misero-), <i>wretched</i>	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
acer (ācri-), <i>keen</i>	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

a. Observe that the comparative of adjectives in *-er* is formed regularly (247, a), but the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus, -a, -um* to the positive.

254. The following six adjectives in *-lis* form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding *-limus, -a, -um*. Commit these to memory with their meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

255.

*Model Sentences*

1. Via est asperior, *the road is rather (or too) rough.*
2. Via est asperrima, *the road is very rough.*

a. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making comparison between two objects; then the comparative means *rather* or *too* and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.



256. *Model Sentences*

1. Ille vir plūs pecūniae habet quam tū, *that man has more (of) money than you.*
2. Multī militum volnerātī sunt, *many of the soldiers were wounded.*
3. Nihil novī audīvī, *I have heard nothing (of) new.*

*a.* Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *partitive genitive*.

*b.* Sometimes ē (ex) with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive; regularly so with cardinal numerals: *quīnque ex militibus, five of the soldiers.*

**257. Rule.**—*The partitive genitive is used to denote a whole of which a part is taken.*

## 258. VOCABULARY

āēr, āeris (acc., āera), m. <i>air.</i>	lēnis, -e, <i>gentle, soft.</i>
angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow.</i>	lingua, -ae, f. <i>tongue, language.</i>
frīgidus, -a, -um, <i>cold.</i>	lītus, lītoris, n. <i>shore.</i>
Latīnus, -a, -um, <i>Latin.</i>	pars, partis (parti-), f. <i>part.</i>

## 259. EXERCISES

I. 1. Multum itineris est angustum sed facillimum. 2. Primā lūce partem hostium vīdimus in monte. 3. Omnium urbis viārum illa fuit brevissima. 4. Hominēs Āfricae hominibus Eurōpae sunt dissimillimī (117). 5. Āēr hōc in litore est lēnior; nōn saepe est frīgidissimus. 6. Linguam Latinam repperī difficiliōrem. 7. Hannibal in (*against*) Rōmānōs ingēns odium iūrāvit. 8. Ēius finis vitae nōn fuit fēlix.

II. 1. Your faithful dog is very like mine. 2. Snow lies white and very deep on these shores in winter. 3. My sword is rather long. 4. You have plenty of courage, but not much money. 5. Have you a friend more sagacious than you (are)?

## LESSON XLIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

## ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

260. Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following with their meanings and comparison: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
senex, senis, <i>old</i> (482)	senior (māior nātū)	māximus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

261. Declension of plūs, more; plural, more, many, several.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

262. Certain adjectives form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and certain others have two forms in the superlative. See 489. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

263.

Model Sentences

1. Lūna est multō minor quam terra, *the moon is much smaller than the earth.*
2. Pater pede altior est filiō, *the father is a foot taller than his son.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **multō** and **pede** answer the question (*by*) *how much?* They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared.

264. Rule. — *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

265.

VOCABULARY

centum, num. adj. indecl. *a hundred.*  
 Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero.*  
 cīvīs, -is (cīvi-), m. *citizen.*  
 īferus, -a, -um, *low, below* (489).  
 interdum, adv. *sometimes.*  
 mendācium, -ī, n. *lying, falsehood.*  
 nātū (abl.), m. *by birth, in age.*  
 opera, -ae, f. *work.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m. *orator.*  
 pigritia, -ae, f. *laziness.*  
 plūs, plūris, *more.*  
 Pompēius, -ī, m. *Pompey.*  
 sapiēns, sapientis, *wise.*  
 sex, num. adj. indecl. *six.*  
 superus, -a, -um, *high, above*  
 (489).

266.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aliquid (*something*) novī saepe audiō. 2. Caesar sex annīs minor nātū erat quam Pompēius. 3. Āēr urbis nostrae est asperrimus. 4. Hieme centum gradibus frigidior est quam aestāte. 5. Rūrī sunt viae pedibus multis angustiōrēs quam in urbe. 6. Optimōs cīvīs amāmus, timēmus pessimōs. 7. Tua operae pars est māior meā. 8. Summum montem imamque palūdem videō.

II. 1. Pompey was six years older than Caesar. 2. Cicero was the most famous of Roman orators. 3. The greatest orators are sometimes the worst citizens. 4. But Cicero saved Rome by the wisest plans. 5. What is worse than laziness? 6. Lying is much worse than laziness.

## LESSON XLIV

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

267.

*Models*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (from <b>cārus</b> ), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (from <b>miser</b> ), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr (from <b>ācer</b> ), <i>eagerly</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (from <b>facilis</b> ), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
bene (from <b>bonus</b> ), <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male (from <b>malus</b> ), <i>badly</i>	pēius	pessimē
multum (from <b>multus</b> ), <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum

a. Review the comparison of the adjectives from which the above adverbs are derived and learn the comparison of the adverbs and their meanings.

b. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final -us to -ē.

c. Compare the adjectives **brevis**, *short*; **fēlix**, *lucky*; **liber**, *free*; **similis**, *like*; then compare the adverbs formed from them: **breviter**, *briefly*; **fēliciter**, *successfully*; **liberē**, *freely*; **similiter**, *similarly*. Commit to memory the meaning of these adverbs.

268.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Parentēs liberōs māximē amant. 2. Eīs cōnsilia dant optima. 3. Prō eis labōrant diligentissimē. 4. Mox grāmen arborēsque virēbunt. 5. Tum in illam silvam amplam quam hinc vidēmus errābimus. 6. Cūr linguae Latinae plūs operae nōn dās? 7. Eam multō facilius discēs quam frāter māior nātū tuus. 8. Ex hōc summō monte facile videō sex urbēs centumque viās. 9. In imīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina

parva. 10. Sapientissimē dixit pater meus: "Mendācium est pēius pigritiā." 11. Sed sine dubio est pigritia pessimum vitium.

II. 1. A very famous orator was six years older than Caesar. 2. Sometimes Caesar's enemies fought more bravely than his soldiers. 3. But his soldiers fought very bravely. 4. Often he suddenly changed his camp. 5. He carried on many wars successfully. 6. He ruled Rome wisely and well. 7. He was killed there by his enemies.

## 269.

## VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, <i>large, honorable.</i>	hinc, adv. <i>hence, from here.</i>
arbor, -oris, f. <i>tree.</i>	parēns, parentis, m. and f. <i>parent.</i>
diligenter, adv. <i>diligently.</i>	prō, prep. with abl. <i>for, on behalf of.</i>
diū (diūtius, diūtissimē), adv. <i>long.</i>	sapienter, adv. <i>wisely.</i>
dubium, dubī, n. <i>doubt.</i>	subitō, adv. <i>suddenly.</i>
grāmen, -inis, n. <i>grass.</i>	vitium, vitī, n. <i>fault.</i>

discō, discere, didicī, discitūrus, *learn.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus, *wander, err.*

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, *change.*

necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus, *kill.*

vireō, virēre, viruī, —, *be green.*

## 270.

## CONVERSATION

1. Cūr in hōc litore manēs? Quā hīc (*here*) āera lēnissimum repperī; hīc mare est pulcherrimum.

2. Diūne manēbis hōc in locō angustō? Nōn diū; mox in urbem ambulābō, ibique diūtissimē manēbō.

3. Viane in urbem est asperrima? Pars viae est asperior, pars facillima.

4. Quandō (*when*) in hanc terram vēnistī? Proximō (*last*) annō dē Germaniā dēmigrāvī cum parentibus.

5. Quantō (*how much*) altior es frātre? Capite altior.



VIEW OF NAPLES AND VESUVIUS

## LESSON XLV

## READING LESSON: REVIEW

## 271. A LETTER FROM POMPEII

Sī tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hanc epistolam ad tē laetus scribō. Medicī cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Ītaliā hiemāvī. Dum apud vōs nivēs omnia implent, nōs hic nivem rārō vidēmus; āēr est lēnissimus; rīdet, ut (*as*) est apud poētās, caelum. Interdum in litore ambulō vel in hortis amplis errō, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās insulās in mari sitās. Linguae Latīnae cotidiē multum dō operae. Eam linguam facilius Graecā discō. Sed iam finem faciam epistolae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē, mī amice.

272.

CONVERSATION

1. Num Ītalia hieme implētur nive? Montēs altissimi nive implentur.

2. Nōnne semper ridet caelum? Ferē semper caelum ridet.

3. Ubi est terra pulchrior Ītaliā? Pulchrior terra nōn est quam Ītalia.

4. Num Ītaliae sunt flūmina longissima? Tiberis et Padus sunt longiōrēs.

5. Suntne ēius urbēs pulcherrimae? Pulcherrimae Eurōpae sunt urbēs.

273.

VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc. *at, with.*

cōram, adv. *face to face.*

cotīdiē, adv. *daily.*

ferē, adv. *almost.*

hīc, adv. *here.*

medicus, -ī, m. *doctor, physician.*

nōnne, interrog. adv. *not?* Suggests the answer *yes.*

num, interrog. adv. Suggests the answer *no.*

quoque, adv. *also, too.*

rārō, adv. *seldom.*

sī, conj. *if.*

situs, -a, -um, *situated.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole (312).*

vel, conj. *or.*

hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus, *spend the winter.*

impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, *fill, cover.*

rideō, ridēre, rīsī, rīsus, *smile, laugh.*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be well; valē, farewell.*

274.

REVIEW

1. Give the endings of the comparative in the nominative. 2. Give the six adjectives that form the superlative in *-limus*. 3. How do adjectives in *-er* form the superlative? Compare *ācer* and *asper*; also *iuvenis* and *senex*. 4. Give the genitive plural of *melior* and *plūs*; give the masculine and feminine accusative plural. 5. How do you make the comparative and superlative of most adverbs derived from adjectives? 6. Compare *pulchrē*, *beautifully*, and *ācriter*, *eagerly*. 7. Express in Latin *six of the oak trees; I am a head taller than you.*

## LESSON XLVI

FIFTH DECLENSION: The Stem ends in *ē*

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

275.

*Paradigms*

	diēs, m. <i>day</i>		rēs, f. <i>thing</i>			
	STEMS: diē-		rē-		TERMINATIONS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

*a.* Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

**276. Rule of Gender.** — *Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except diēs, which is commonly masculine in the singular and always in the plural.*

277.

*Model Sentences*

1. Decem annōs Trōia oppugnābātur, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*
2. Turris alta est centum pedēs, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

*a.* The accusative *annōs* denotes duration or extent of *time*; *pedēs*, extent of *space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long?* *how far?* in time or space, and may be called *accusatives of extent*.

**278. Rule.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*



## 279.

## VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, f. *line of battle.*

castra, -ōrum, n. plur. *camp.*

decem, indecl. *ten.*

diēs, -ēī, m. *day.*

fidēs, -ēī, f. *trust, confidence.*

Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*

impetus, -ūs, m. *attack.*

mille, *thousand (304).*

mille passuum, *thousand (of) paces, mile (305, e).*

passus, -ūs, m. *pace, step.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. *plain.*

posterus, -a, -um, *next (489).*

quīnque, indecl. *five.*

rēs, -ēī, f. *thing, event, fact.*

spēs, -ēī, f. *hope.*

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus, *go off, depart.*

exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus, *await, expect.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *draw up, marshall.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *put, place, pitch (camp).*

## 280.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte posuit. 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs māgnā in plānitiē visī sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen quod centum pedēs erat lātum. 5. Caesar aciem īnstrūxit impetumque hostium exspectābat. 6. Eius equitēs māiōrem diēi partem in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt. 8. Nam parvam victōriae spem habuērunt. 9. Posterō diē quīnque mīlia<sup>1</sup> passuum ex illō locō discessērunt. 10. Tum frūmentō plūris diēs caruērunt.

II. 1. Caesar heard about this fact from several messengers. 2. His soldiers, too, saw the camp of the enemy not many miles away from (ab) their own<sup>2</sup> camp. 3. Caesar had the greatest confidence in his soldiers.<sup>3</sup> 4. But the river was much too deep. 5. This fact deprived the soldiers of all hope. 6. His soldiers were deprived of all hope by this event.

<sup>1</sup> See 305, e.    <sup>2</sup> See 229.    <sup>3</sup> in his soldiers: expressed by the dative.

## LESSON XLVII

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *ut* AND *nē*281. *Paradigms*

ACT. SUBJV. PRES.		PASS. SUBJV. PRES.	
1. amem	amēmus	1. amer	amēmur
2. amēs	amētis	2. amēris, -re	amēminī
3. amet	ament	3. amētur	amentur

282. *Subjunctive Present*

mone reg capi audi	}	ACTIVE				
		-am, -ās,	-at,	-āmus, -ātis,	-ant	
		PASSIVE				
		-ar,	-āris (-re),	-ātur,	-āmur, -āminī,	-antur

a. Learn the present subjunctive of *sum* (502).

283. *Model Sentences*

1. *Cīvēs sē armant ut pūgnent, the citizens arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. *Puerī labōrant nē culpentur, the boys work that they may not be blamed, so that they may not be blamed, in order not to be blamed, lest they be blamed.*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clauses, *ut* introducing affirmative and *nē* negative clauses.

b. Observe the various ways of translating *ut* (*that*, etc.) and *nē* (*that . . . not*, etc.) and the subjunctive. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but the Latin infinitive must not be used to express purpose.

284. Rule.—*The subjunctive is used with ut and nē to express purpose.*

285.

## VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy.*dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do.*mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send.*moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītus, *punish.*recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *receive.*reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find.*scrībō, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, *see.*

286.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Mittitur ut {  
 ōrnet, moneat, regat, capiat,  
 ōrnētur, moneātur, regātur, capiātur,  
 audiat, audiātur.

2. Eōs mittimus ut {  
 ōrnent, moneant, regant, capiant,  
 ōrmentur, moneantur, regantur, capiantur,  
 audiant, audiantur.

3. Tē moneō ut {  
 amēs, moneās, regās, capiās, audiās,  
 amēris, moneāris, regāris, capiāris, audiāris.

4. Eum monēmus nē miles sit. 5. Eōs monēmus nē militēs sint. 6. Vōs moneō ut prūdentēs sītis. 7. Nōs monet ut sīmus ācrēs diem noctemque.

II. 1. He is sent in order that he may fight, destroy, write, do, find. 2. He will send them that they may destroy, write, do, find. 3. You (sing.) are sent to destroy, write, do, find. 4. They are sent that the city may not be destroyed, ruled, taken, punished. 5. He advises us not to be called, moved, led, taken, found. 6. We advise them not to move, see, write, do, find. 7. I advise him to be active.

## LESSON XLVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — *Continued*PURPOSE CLAUSES — *Continued*: RESULT CLAUSES

287.

*Paradigm*

	SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT			
amāre	}	ACTIVE		
monēre		-m, -s.	-t	-mus, -tis, -nt
regere				
capere		PASSIVE		
audire		-r, -ris (-re), -tur	-mur, -minī, -ntur	
esse				

*a.* Observe that the subjunctive imperfect can always be formed by adding the personal endings (205) to the active infinitive present. For the quantity of *e* before *-mus*, etc., see 497-502.

288.

*Model Sentences*

1. *Civēs sē armābant ut pūgnārent, citizens armed themselves that they might fight, to fight, etc. (283).*
2. *Civēs pūgnābant nē oppidum dēlērētur, citizens fought that the town might not be destroyed.*

*a.* Compare the above sentences with those of 283. The subjunctive present follows the indicative present, the subjunctive imperfect follows the indicative imperfect or perfect. So also in 289.

289.

*Model Sentences*

1. *Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus, the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.*
2. *Puer tam malus fuit ut ā magistrō nōn laudārētur, the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his master.*

*a.* Observe that the above dependent clauses express *result*, *ut* introducing affirmative and *ut nōn* negative clauses.

290. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with ut and ut nōn to express result.*

## 291.

## VOCABULARY

cōsul, cōsulis, m. *consul*.

epistula, -ae, f. *letter*.

ita, adv. *so, in such a way*.

paucī, paucae, pauca (plur.), *few*.

semper, adv. *always*.

tam, adv. *so, so very*.

accidō, accidere, accidī, —, *fall upon, happen*.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *act, do*.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn, know*.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, —, *live*.

## 292.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Accidit (pres.) ut — vocem, dūcātur, recipiās, mittantur. 2. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn — vocārēs, dēlērētur, mitterem, reciperet. 3. Accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 4. Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 5. Urbs dēlēta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 6. Urbs tam fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēs nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostris militibus vidērentur. 8. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt ut ā nostris militibus nōn vidērentur. 9. Illi parentēs ita vīxērunt ut liberis essent cārissimī. 10. Caesar tantam (*so great*) fidem militibus<sup>1</sup> habuit ut impetum posterō diē faceret.

II. 1. It happened that — I sent, he was sent, they were led, they wrote. 2. It happens that he does not — punish, call, receive, find. 3. They were so few that they fled. 4. They were so brave that they did not flee. 5. I was sent to carry a letter to Rome. 6. Who of us is so wise as to know all things (*omnia*)? 7. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to draw up a line of battle. 8. It happened that the enemy did not draw up a line of battle for six hours.

<sup>1</sup> Compare 280, II. 3, and note.

## LESSON XLIX

## INDIRECT QUESTION: SEQUENCE OF TENSES

293.

*Paradigm*

amāv	}	ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT		
monu		-erim, -eris, -erit	-erimus, -eritis, -erint	
rēx		ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT		
cēp		-issem, -issēs, -isset	-issēmus, -issētis, -issent	
audīv	}			
fu				

a. Make similar tables to illustrate the passive subjunctive perfect and pluperfect in all conjugations (497-502).

294.

*Model Sentences*

## DIRECT QUESTION

## INDIRECT QUESTION

1. *Ubi sunt? where are they?*      2. *Audit ubi sint, he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (*ubi*) and contains the substance of the direct question 1. Such a dependent clause is called an *indirect question*.

295. *Rule.*— *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

296.

*Model of Sequence*

## PRINCIPAL TENSES

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1. <i>Audit, he hears</i>               | } | <i>ubi sint, where they are,</i>       |
| 2. <i>Audiet, he will hear</i>          |   | <i>ubi fuerint, where they were or</i> |
| 3. <i>Audiverit, he will have heard</i> |   | <i>have been.</i>                      |

## HISTORICAL TENSES

- |                                    |   |   |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. <i>Audiēbat, he was hearing</i> | } | <i>ubi essent, where they were,</i>       |
| 2. <i>Audivit, he heard</i>        |   | <i>ubi fuissent, where they had been.</i> |
| 3. <i>Audiverat, he had heard</i>  |   |   |

a. Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow the present, future, and future perfect (*principal tenses*), and what tenses follow the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect (*historical tenses*).

**297. Rule.**—*A principal tense is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect; an historical tense by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect.*

a. Occasionally the perfect (classed as an historical tense) meaning *have, has . . .*, is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect.

## 298.

## VOCABULARY

cūr, adv. *why?*

dic (imperative), *say, tell.*

num, adv. *whether* (in indirect questions). See 273.

quō, adv. *whither?*

quot, adv. *how many?*

ubi, adv. *where?*

unde, adv. *whence?*

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, *ask.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*

## 299.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Scit quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid agerent, quid ēgissent. 3. Dic mihi cūr rideant, cūr riserint. 4. Audiverant unde militēs venirent, unde militēs vēnissent. 5. Rogāvērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudātus esset. 6. Rogat cūr laudentur, cūr laudāti sint. 7. Num in manibus ambulās? 8. Quid illi puerī fēcērunt? 9. Dic nōbīs quid illi puerī fēcērunt. 10. Quō volant eae columbae? 11. Bene scīmus quō volent; domum volant. 12. Rogāvī num saepe Rōmae fuisset.

II. 1. Tell me where you were, what you did. 2. Some came to see, others to be seen. 3. They are so lazy that they do not work. 4. He asked me why I had come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general asked whether they had all come from home. 7. How many soldiers are coming? 8. Do you know how many soldiers are coming?

## LESSON I

## READING LESSON: REVIEW

## 300. CAESAR WINS A VICTORY

Posterō diē Caesar ex castris exercitum ēdūxit et iter<sup>1</sup> ad flūmen fēcit.<sup>1</sup> Quae rēs hostibus nōta est, quōrum peditātus ā nostris summō in colle vidēbātur.

Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditātum iuvārent, et militum suōrum animōs ad pūgnam ita concitāvit. "Militēs, omnis rei pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortuna iuvat. Fortibus erit victōria." Hostēs tam ācritē in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hī paululum (*a little*) cēderent. Brevi autem tempore hostēs ita superāti sunt ut ex omnibus pūgnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus<sup>2</sup> et Rōmam missus est.

## 301. VOCABULARY

ācritē, adv. *spiritedly*.

animus, -ī, m. *mind, spirit*.

autem,<sup>3</sup> conj. *but*.

collis, -is (colli-), m. *hill*.

equitātus, -ūs, m. *cavalry*.

peditātus, -ūs, m. *infantry*.

pūgna, -ae, f. *battle, field (of battle)*.

rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f. *republic, commonwealth, state*.

trāns, prep. with acc. *across*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *give way, retire*.

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, *set, station, place*.

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out, draw out, draw*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help*.

## 302. EXERCISES

1. Caesar drew up his line of battle on a hill. 2. There the soldiers remained a part of the day. 3. In order to rouse

<sup>1</sup> iter fēcit, *marched*.

<sup>3</sup> Never first in a sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Supply est.



the spirits of the soldiers, he said: "Be (*este*) bold, soldiers, and the victory will be yours." 4. "The cavalry will aid the infantry; the enemy will not withstand (*sustineō*) your attack." 5. "They are brave men, but you are much braver." 6. Then the Romans fought very spiritedly. 7. Soon the enemy fled. 8. We do not know whither they fled.

## 303.

## REVIEW

1. Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the fifth declension. 2. What case is used in Latin in such expressions as *during three days* he walked *ten miles*? 3. Find two similar examples in 280, I. 4. Complete the English sentence, "The farmer bought a plough," so as to illustrate *purpose*. 5. In turning your sentence into Latin, with what word would the purpose clause begin? 6. What mood must you use? 7. In English we often express purpose by the infinitive. Can you do so in Latin? 8. How does a negative purpose clause begin in Latin? 9. In the sentence **venit ut audiat**, translate **ut audiat** in as many ways as you can. 10. If **venit** were changed to **vēnit**, what would **audiat** be changed to? 11. What tenses of the indicative are classed as *principal*? What tenses as *historical*? 12. Give an example in English of a direct question and change it into an indirect question. 13. Give the rule for the mood of an indirect question in Latin. 14. Show from the model sentences in 289 and 294 how the subjunctive in a result clause and in an indirect question is translated.



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON LI

## NUMERALS

## DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

304.

*Paradigms*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus

**305.** Learn the cardinals as far as eighty (491) and the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*.

a. Compare the declension of *ūnus* with that of *ille* (200).

b. Observe that *trēs* is declined like the plural of *brevis* (182).

c. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* inclusive are indeclinable: *quattuor hominēs*, *four men*; *quattuor hominum*, *of four men*.

d. The hundreds, except *centum*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

e. *Mille* in the singular is indeclinable and is used as an adjective or as a neuter noun: *mille* (adj.) *hominēs*, *a thousand men*, or *mille* (noun) *hominum*, *a thousand (of) men*. In the plural it is a noun only. As a noun it is followed by the partitive genitive in both numbers: *quattuor mīlia hominum*, *four thousand (of) men*.

f. In *vīgintī ūnus*, *vīgintī duo*, *centum ūnus*, and similar cases, the declinable numeral retains its inflection: *centum trium pūgnārum*, *of a hundred (and) three battles*.

## 306.

## Model Sentences

1. Brūtus fuit puer animō tardō, }  
 2. Brūtus fuit puer animī tardī, } *Brutus was a boy of slow mind.*

a. Observe that in each sentence an adjective is used with an ablative or a genitive for the purpose of description. These sentences, then, illustrate the *descriptive ablative* and the *descriptive genitive*.

**307. Rule.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

## 308.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Virī summā virtūte. 2. Urbs duōbus portubus.  
 3. Pilum sex pedum. 4. Vīgintī duae domūs. 5. Duodētrīgintā epistulae. 6. Tria flūmina septuāgintā pedēs lāta.  
 7. Cīvēs ūnius rei pūblicaē. 8. Cum duābus manibus. 9. Ā tribus agricolis. 10. Decem milia passuum.

11. Omnis Gallia tris partis habuit. 12. Frāter meus hodiē duodēvīgintī annōs nātus<sup>1</sup> est. 13. In urbe nostrā sunt quinque ōrātōrēs, novem poētae, quinquāgintā milia civium.  
 14. Pilum Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 15. Trium frātrum Mārcus fuit māximus nātū. 16. Mea filia tribus annis est minor nātū quam filius tuus. 17. Dic mihi quot militēs sint in illis castris. 18. Caesar quinquāgintā sex annōs vixit; fuit animō prūdentissimō.

II. 1. These are children of one mother. 2. In that camp were ten thousand soldiers. 3. Your daughter is eleven years old. 4. The oak is a tree of very beautiful foliage. 5. The sailors see a thousand horsemen on the shore. 6. Have you a son who is twenty-one years old? 7. We have come to aid you.

<sup>1</sup> nātus, *having been born*, hence *old*.

## LESSON LII

NUMERALS — *Continued*

**309.** Learn the cardinals from eighty and the first twenty-one ordinals ; read the others.

**310.**

## VOCABULARY

annō Domini, *in the year of our Lord = A.D.*

ante Christum nātum, *before the birth of Christ = B.C.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*

Februārius, -ī, m. *February.*

gēns, gentis (genti-), f. *family.*

ingenium, -ī, n. *genius.*

legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion.*

Mārtius, -ī, m. *March.*

mēnsis, -is (mēnsi-), m. *month.*

nōbilis, -e, *of high birth, noble.*

Octōber, -bris, m. *October.*

September, -bris, m. *September.*

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left.*

soror, -ōris, f. *sister.*

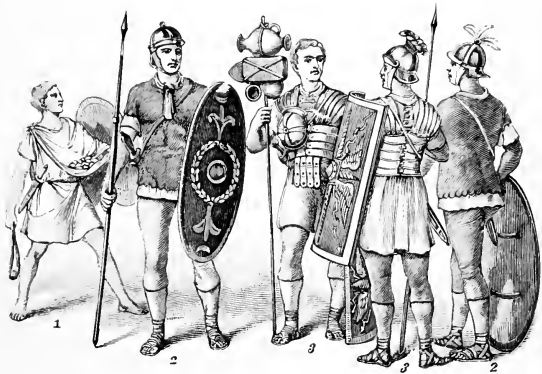
dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcēssī, dēcēssūrus, *depart, die.*

**311.**

## EXERCISES

- I. 1. Primus cōsul, secundus impetus, tertia legiō.  
 2. Quintā diēi hōrā, quarta noctis hōra, nōni passūs. 3. Tertium decimum flūmen, ūndēvicēsimum puer, vicēsima puella.  
 4. Duodecimae legiōni, in colle sextō, ad urbem octāvam.  
 5. Rōmāni annī fuit September mēnsis septimus, Octōber octāvus. 6. Quō nōmine nōs appellāmus mēnsem nōnum?  
 7. Legiō Rōmāna quinque milia peditum, trecentōs equitēs habuit. 8. Caesar in dextrō cornū decimam, in sinistrō sextam legiōnem conlocāvit. 9. Scīsne quot annōs Rōmāni Britanniam insulam tenuerint? 10. Rōmāni Britanniam insulam annōs trecentōs quinquāgintā tenēbant. 11. Augustus annō Domini quartō decimō dēcēssit. 12. Fuit gentis nōbilis et ingenī māximī. 13. Caesar quadrāgēsīmō quartō annō ante Christum nātum dēcēssit.

II. 1. On the fifteenth day they removed without delay from the country into the city. 2. Brutus is older than his sister by five years. 3. The king has ruled so well that he is loved by all. 4. The king ruled so well that he was loved by all. 5. An hour is the twenty-fourth part of a day. 6. In February there are twenty-eight days. 7. How many days has the month (of) March? 8. It happened that we were not at home (for) two days.



1. SLINGER      2, 2. LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIERS      3, 3. LEGIONARY SOLDIERS

## LESSON LIII

## TEN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES: READING LESSON

**312.** The following adjectives end in *-ius* in the genitive singular and in *-ī* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-ius*). See the declension of *ūnus* (304). The plural is regular. Commit them to memory with their meanings.

<i>alius, alia, aliud, other, another</i> (486).	<i>nūllus, -a, -um, no, none, no one.</i>
<i>alter, altera, alterum, the other</i> ( <i>of two</i> ).	<i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only.</i>
<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither</i> ( <i>of two</i> ).	<i>tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all.</i>
	<i>ūllus, -a, -um, any.</i>
	<i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.</i>

*uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)?*

*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.*

**313.** Commit to memory the following idioms :

<i>alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (of two only).</i>
<i>alius . . . alius, one . . . another.</i>
<i>aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.</i>
<i>alius . . . aliud (acc.), one one thing . . . another another.</i>

**314. EXERCISES**

I. 1. In alterā flūminis ripā (*bank*) urbs, in alterā erat mōns. 2. Aliī alia (acc.) dixērunt. 3. Duōrum hominum alter imperātor, alter poēta fuit. 4. Decimae legiōnis sōlius virtūte tōtus exercitus servātus est. 5. Nōmen Caesaris tōtī urbī cārum fuit. 6. Altera legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est. 7. Uter puer est filius tuus?

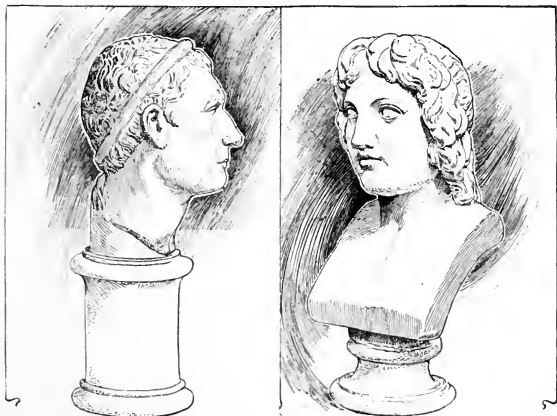
II. 1. Caesar praises the bravery of the whole legion. 2. Which of the (two) boys has (115) the greater courage?

3. One does one thing, another another. Do you blame both (sing.)? 4. Caesar will march without any delay with the tenth legion alone. 5. Which of the (two) sisters is the more beautiful?

## 315.

## CAESAR AND VERGIL

Rōma duōs hominēs summō ingeniō habuit, alterum imperātōrem, alterum poētā. Alterius gēns nōbilis, alterius rūstica fuit. Ille victor fuit Britanniae et tōtius Galliae; hīc tōti orbī terrārum gaudium dedit. Nūlli imperātōri plūs laudis quam Caesari, nūlli poētae plūs quam Vergiliō datum est. Nātus est (*was born*) Caesar centēsīmō annō ante Christum nātum; Vergilius annō ūndēvicēsīmō ante Christum nātum dēcessit. Neutrius fuit vita longissima, sed utriusque erit laus sempiterna. Utrī fuit melior fortūna? Dē illis hominibus alius aliud dicit; nōs utrumque laudāmus.



CAESAR

VERGIL

## LESSON LIV

## THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

316. *Infinitive Paradigms*

	ACT. PRES.	PASS. PRES.	ACT. PERF.	PASS. PERF.
	<i>to love,</i> ' etc.	<i>to be</i> <i>loved, etc.</i>	<i>to have</i> <i>loved, etc.</i>	<i>to have been</i> <i>loved, etc.</i>
I.	amāre	amārī	amāvisse	amātus esse
II.	monēre	monērī	monuisse	monitus esse
III.	regere	regī	rēxisse	rēctus esse
III.	capere	capī	cēpisse	captus esse
IV.	audīre	audīrī	audīvisse	audītus esse
<i>Irreg.</i>	esse	—	fuisse	—

a. Write out similarly in two columns the active and passive infinitives future (497-502).

b. Commit to memory all these infinitives with their meanings.

317. *Model Sentences*

1. Laudārī est grātum, *to be praised is pleasant.*
2. Vincere potest, *he can (is able to) conquer.*
3. Puer primus esse cupit, *the boy wishes to be first.*
4. Urbs capta esse dicitur, *the city is said to have been taken.*
5. Nōs esse bonōs cupiunt, *they wish us to be good.*

a. Observe that in 1 the infinitive is the subject; in 2, 3, and 4 it completes the meaning of the main verb and is called the *complementary infinitive*; in 5 it takes the accusative as its subject.

b. Observe that in 3 the predicate adjective after esse agrees with the subject of the main verb; so also in 4 the participle **capta**.

318. Rule 1. — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*



**Rule 2.** — *A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

## 319.

## VOCABULARY

dīves, dīvītis, *rich.*

potest, *is able, can.*

pēsum, -ī, n. *task.*

possunt, *are able, can.*

perīculum, -ī, n. *danger.*

praemium, -ī, n. *reward.*

cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātus, *save, preserve.*

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*

iubeō, iubere, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order.*

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *read.*

putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, *think.*

## 320.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Potest legere, iubere, iuvare. 2. Possunt iuberi, iuvari, rogari. 3. Puer discere, rogare, edūci debet. 4. Dicuntur cessisse, conlocavisse, rexisse. 5. Putatur scripturus esse, punitum iri. 6. Epistula scripta esse putatur.

7. Mē ornari iussit. 8. Dicitur ornatus esse. 9. Quī pater filium fortem esse nōn cupit? 10. Alii alia pēnsa facere debent. 11. Quis tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret? 12. Vergilius et Caesar summō ingeniō fuisse putantur. 13. Omnēs hominēs divitēs esse cupiunt. 14. Pēsum tuum scriptum esse debuit. 15. Uter māior nātū fuisse dictus est? 16. Agricolaē vēnerunt ut iuvarent.

II. 1. We ought to be brave and good. 2. Who is said to have received a greater reward? 3. Do you bid me to be prudent? 4. Your task is greater than mine, but my brother can do both (sing.). 5. The safety of the commonwealth ought to be preserved. 6. They were thought to have worked diligently. 7. The danger ought to have been seen. 8. Augustus is said to have died in the year of our Lord 14.

## LESSON LV

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

## INDIRECT STATEMENT

## 321. DIRECT STATEMENT

Tū scrībis,  
*you write,*  
*you are writing.*

## INDIRECT STATEMENT

Dīcunt tē scrībere,  
*(they say you to write)*  
*they say that you are writing,*  
*they say you are writing.*

*a.* Observe the changes made in Latin in turning direct into indirect statement: the nominative *tū* becomes the accusative, and the indicative *scrībis* becomes the infinitive.

*b.* Observe how the Latin and English idioms differ in indirect statement, the metaphrase exactly representing the Latin.

**322. Rule.**—*Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative.*

323. *Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement*

Dīcit sē scrībere, *he says he is writing.*  
 Dīxit sē scrībere, *he said he was writing.*

**324. Rule.**—*The present infinitive denotes the same time as that of the verb on which it depends.*

Dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says he has written.*  
 Dīxit sē scrīpsisse, *he said he had written.*

**325. Rule.**—*The perfect infinitive denotes time before that of the verb on which it depends.*

Dīcit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he says he will write.*  
 Dīxit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he said he would write.*

326. Rule. — *The future infinitive denotes time after that of the verb on which it depends.*

## 327.

## VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, f. *tree.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. plur. *riches, wealth.*

frīgus, -oris, n. *cold, frost.*

iam, adv. *already, now, at last.*

nōn iam, *no longer.*

post, prep. with acc. *after.*

rūrsus, adv. *again.*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring.*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *be here, be present.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, break up.*

spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, *hope.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover.*

## 328.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Vēr adest; vēre frīgus solvitur. 2. Vidēmus vēre adesse et vēre frīgus solvī. 3. Terra nive nōn iam tegitur. 4. Omnēs vident terram nive nōn iam tegī. 5. Mox in arboribus cantābunt multae avēs. 6. Scīmus mox in arboribus cantātūrās esse multās avīs. 7. Agricolaē agrōs iam arant. 8. Quis nōn videt agricolās agrōs arāre? 9. Quis nōn videt agrōs ab agricolīs arātōs esse? 10. Quis nōn putat agrōs ab agricolīs mox arātum irī? 11. Agricolaē spērant dīvitiās sibi futūrās esse. 12. Nōs quoque spērāmus deōs iis benignōs futūrōs esse.

II. 1. At last cold winter is here again. 2. Who does not know that cold winter is here at last? 3. All the trees are covered with snow. 4. You can (potes) see that all the trees are covered with snow. 5. Soon no birds will be singing. 6. Who knows that no birds will soon be singing? 7. Many of them have been killed by winter's cold. 8. We think many of them have been killed by winter's cold. 9. The farmers hope the gods will be kind to them.

## LESSON LVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *Īdem, Ipse, Iste*

329.

*Paradigms*

	<i>īdem, same</i>			<i>ipse, -self</i>		
	SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>
	PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	{ <i>īidem</i> <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	{ <i>iisdem</i> <i>eisdem</i>	<i>iisdem</i>	<i>iisdem</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	{ <i>iisdem</i> <i>eisdem</i>	<i>iisdem</i>	<i>iisdem</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

330. *a.* Review the declension of *is* (138), *hic* and *ille* (200).

*b.* Observe that *īdem* is declined like *is* with *dem* added, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural *m* is changed to *n*.

*c.* Learn the declension of *iste, that* (493).

*d.* Decline together *īdem diēs, rēs ipsa, istud animal*.

331.

*Model Sentences*

- Eōdem diē amīcum vīdī, I saw my friend the same day.*
- Istam epistulam lēgī, I have read that letter (of yours).*
- Amīcus ipse ad mē vēnit, my friend himself came to me.*
- Homō sē culpāvit nimium, the man blamed himself too much.*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that *īdem* and *iste* are used as *demonstrative adjectives*. They may also be used without a noun; that is, as demonstrative pronouns. Compare the uses of *is* (140, a and b).

b. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and may often be translated *this of yours* or *that of yours*.

c. *Ipsē* means *-self* (*himself, itself, etc.*); it may sometimes be translated *even* or *very*. It is the intensive pronoun, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective. It must be sharply distinguished from *sē*, *-self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (221, b). Compare 331, 3 and 4.

## 332.

## VOCABULARY

*difficultās, -ātis, f. difficulty.*

*īdem . . . quī, same . . . as.*

*malus, -a, -um, bad (260).*

*numquam, adv. never.*

*ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. speech, plea.*

*studium, studi, n. desire, study.*

*varius, -a, -um, various.*

*vultus, -ūs, m. face, looks.*

*praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus, proclaim, boast.*

## 333.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. In eōdem periculō. 2. Pēnsūm ēiusdem difficultātis.  
3. Ipsius hominis divitis. 4. Divitiae ipsae civium. 5. Divitiae civium ipsōrum. 6. Post eandem ōratiōnem.

7. Nōn iam eandem arborem videō. 8. Hic est cibus istius canis, ille mei. 9. Quis est semper eōdem voltū?  
10. Hic ōrātor sē suāsque ōratiōnēs laudat. 11. Is quī dē sē ipsō praedicat nōn sapiēns esse dicitur. 12. Hodiē eadem putāsne quae herī (*yesterday*)? 13. Dē istis rēbus mē ad tē scribere iubet. 14. Sciunt ipsōs vestrōs amīcōs culpāre vōs.

II. 1. The very trees are covered with snow. 2. Do you know, my father, where those servants of yours are? They are never at home. 3. That song of yours does not delight us; it is the worst of all. 4. You have the same task as I. 5. Various birds are singing in yonder (*ille*) trees. 6. I love and praise those studies of yours.

## LESSON LVII

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

## 334. READING LESSON: REVIEW

*a.* Review the interrogative **quis** (142) and the relative **quī** (210) and learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings.

335. *Indefinite Pronouns*

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>aliquis</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid, aliquod, some one, any one</b> (496).
<b>quīdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam, quiddam, a certain one</b> (496).
<b>quisquam</b>	—	<b>quidquam</b> (no plur.), <i>any one (at all)</i> .
<b>quīvis</b>	<b>quaevis</b>	<b>quodvis, quidvis, any one (you please)</b> .
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quaeque</b>	<b>quidque, quodque, each one, every one</b> .

NOTE. — The meanings of the neuters, *something*, etc., are easily inferred.

*a.* Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.

*b.* Observe that **quīdam** (**quī** + **dam**) is declined like **quī**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** of **quī** becomes **n**: **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.

*c.* **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**; **quīvis** like **quī**.

*d.* In the neuter of all the indefinites **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, **quod**-forms as adjectives.

## 336. AFRICA

NOTE. — Hereafter in the reading lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.

In **Āfricā**, **terrā m̄ximā**, sunt multae gentēs plūrium linguārum, urbēs autem sunt paucae. Scriptor quīdam vetus

scripsit *Āfricam* insulae esse similem. Cuivis, qui *Āfricae* figuram spectabit, hoc esse verum videbitur.<sup>1</sup> Iam re vera<sup>2</sup> est *Āfrica* insula ingens, nam isthmus angustissimus fossa transitur.<sup>3</sup> De Nili fontibus nemo antiquis temporibus quidquam certi<sup>4</sup> cognoverat<sup>5</sup>; nunc eidem fontes cuique noti sunt, nam a quibusdam viris audacibus sunt reperti.<sup>6</sup> Cotidie aliquid novi<sup>7</sup> ex *Africa* audimus. Alius aliud<sup>8</sup> scribit; quae sint vera iudicabit quisque. Crudelia olim bella in *Africa* gesta sunt et hodie fortes gentes de imperio dimicant. Eheu! Agri vastantur, privata aedificia incenduntur, profunditur sanguis.

<sup>1</sup> videbitur, will seem. <sup>2</sup> re vera, in fact. <sup>3</sup> transitur, is crossed. <sup>4</sup> quidquam certi, anything at all (of) certain. <sup>5</sup> cognoverat, had learned. <sup>6</sup> reperti, from reperiō. <sup>7</sup> aliquid novi, something (of) new. <sup>8</sup> See 313.

## 337.

## EXERCISES

1. He does that which every one says. 2. I have read a certain writer. 3. Nobody relates anything at all new. 4. That girl has something in her right hand. 5. A part of each summer we live in the country. 6. To-day a story was read to us by somebody. 7. At the same time certain (men) come to Caesar.

## 338.

## REVIEW

1. Give with their meanings the nine adjectives that have the genitive singular in *-ius* and the dative in *-i*. 2. Give five pronouns that make the genitive and dative singular in the same way. 3. What case is the neuter accusative always like? 4. Give the meanings of *is*, *idem*, *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*. 5. What is *idem* compounded of? 6. What part of *idem* remains unchanged in declension? 7. How is the accusative masculine singular written? 8. Pronounce the neuter nominative singular. 9. What does *ipse* do in a sentence? 10. Give the originals corresponding to 6, 9, 11, 17. 11. Express in Latin in two ways *a thousand men*. 12. Give the rule for the descriptive ablative. 13. Tell what time is denoted in respect to the main verb by the infinitive in 328, I. 2, 9, 11.

## LESSON LVIII

## IMPERATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

## COMMANDS AND APPEALS

## 339.

*Imperative Paradigms*

ACT. IMP. PRES. 2d PERS.		PASS. IMP. PRES. 2d PERS.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amā, <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre, <i>be loved</i>	amāminī
monē, <i>advise</i>	monēte	monēre, <i>be advised</i>	monēminī
rege, <i>rule</i>	regite	regere, <i>be ruled</i>	regiminī
cape, <i>take</i>	capite	capere, <i>be taken</i>	capiminī
audī, <i>hear</i>	audīte	audīre, <i>be heard</i>	audīminī
es, <i>be</i>	este	—	—

a. Read the future imperatives (497–502) and form the present imperative of *rogō*, *dēleō*, *legō*, *recipiō*, *pūniō*. Review the subjunctive present (281, 282).

## 340.

*Subjunctive and Imperative Paradigms*

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
amem, <i>let me love.</i>	nē amem, <i>let me not love.</i>
amā, <i>love.</i>	nōlī amāre, <i>do not love.</i>
amet, <i>let him love.</i>	nē amet, <i>let him not love.</i>
amēmus, <i>let us love.</i>	nē amēmus, <i>let us not love.</i>
amāte, <i>love.</i>	nōlīte amāre, <i>do not love.</i>
ament, <i>let them love.</i>	nē ament, <i>let them not love.</i>

a. Observe in the above paradigm (1) that the subjunctive is used in affirmative commands and appeals in the first and third persons, the simple imperative in the second person; (2) that the subjunctive with *nē* (*not*) is used in negative commands and appeals in the first and third persons; (3) that *nē* is not used with the



imperative in the second person, but instead the imperatives *nōli*, *nōlite* (*be unwilling*) with the infinitive.

b. Write out a paradigm like 340, using *tangō*, *touch*.

### 341. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Librum lege.* 2. *Illum librum legant.* 3. *Es bonus imperātor.* 4. *Este fortēs militēs.* 5. *Nōli castra movēre.* 6. *Nē regāmus.* 7. *Nē audiantur.* 8. *Legite eundem librum.* 9. *Nōlite dēlēre.* 10. *Rogēmus, recipiātur.* 11. *Id sciātur.*

II. 1. *Be merry, girls.* 2. *Do not laugh, boys.* 3. *Bid him come, friend.* 4. *Be warned.* 5. *Do not destroy birds.* 6. *Let not birds be destroyed.* 7. *Rule your minds.*

### 342. VOCABULARY

*memoria*, -ae, f. *memory.*

*mors*, *mortis* (*morti-*), f. *death.*

*memoriā teneō*, *remember.*

*vīnum*, -ī, n. *wine.*

*dēcipiō*, *dēcipere*, *dēcēpī*, *dēceptus*, *deceive.*

*tangō*, *tangere*, *tetigī*, *tāctus*, *touch.*

*timeō*, *timēre*, *timuī*, —, *fear.*

### 343. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Nē miles mortis periculum timeat.* 2. *Nūntium ad Caesarem mittāmus.* 3. *Eum moneāmus nē domō discēdat.* 4. *Nōlite cōnsilia malōrum audire.* 5. *Scribite, puellae, cotidiē ad parentēs quae faciātis.* 6. *Scripsērunt quae facerent.* 7. *Istōs tuōs voltūs, nōn ōrātiōnēs, memoriā teneō.* 8. *Quisque suam domum fortiter dēfendat.* 9. *Nē tē quisquam dēcipiat dē istis rēbus.*

II. 1. *A certain man told me something new.<sup>1</sup>* 2. *Touch not wine, boys.* 3. *Men, let us not touch it.* 4. *Let not the same difficulty scare us.* 5. *I will read that book of yours to any one you please.* 6. *We hear that even<sup>2</sup> the women in Africa are<sup>3</sup> brave.* 7. *Do you remember your task?*

<sup>1</sup> See 336, note 7.

<sup>2</sup> See 331, c.

<sup>3</sup> See 322.

## LESSON LIX

## COMPOUNDS OF SUM: READING LESSON

## DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS: DATIVE OF SERVICE

344. *a.* Learn the inflection of **possum** (503) and **prōsum** (504).  
*b.* **Possum**, *be able, can*, is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, *be*.  
*c.* **Prōsum**, *benefit*, is compounded of **prođ** (old form of **prō**, *for*) and **sum**. In inflection the **d** of **prōđ** is retained before **e**.

345. *Compounds of sum*

**absum**, *abesse*, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, *be away, be absent*.

**adsum**, *adesse*, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus**, *be present, aid*.

**dēsum**, *deesse*, **dēfuī**, **dēfutūrus**, *be lacking, fail*.

**insum**, *inesse*, **īnfuī**, —, *be in, be among*.

**intersum**, *interesse*, **interfuī**, **interfutūrus**, *be among, be present*.

**obsum**, *obesse*, **obfuī**, —, *be against, hinder, injure*.

**possum**, *posse*, **potuī**, —, *be able, can*.

**praesum**, *praesse*, **praefuī**, —, *be at the head, command*.

**prōsum**, *prōdesse*, **prōfuī**, **prōfutūrus**, *be of advantage to, benefit*.

**supersum**, *superesse*, **superfuī**, —, *be over, survive*.

346. *Model Sentences*

1. **Vērus amīcus amīcō prōdest**, *a true friend benefits a friend*.
2. **Quis equitibus praefuit?** *who commanded the horsemen?*

*a.* Observe that **prōsum** and **praesum** are intransitive and govern the dative, while the corresponding English verbs, *benefit* and *command*, are transitive.

347. **Rule.** — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

a. Some of these compounds are transitive and take both an accusative and a dative. *Insum* is often followed by *in* with the ablative, and *intersum* by *inter* with the accusative; see 350, lines 1 and 5.

## 348.

*Model Sentences*

1. *Militēs ibi erant praesidiō, soldiers were there as (for) a defence.*
2. *Auxiliō eis mittuntur cōpiae, troops are sent as (for) a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives *praesidiō* in 1 and *auxiliō* in 2 are used to denote the *end* or *purpose*, that for which a thing *serves*; hence called the *dative of service*. This dative may be accompanied by another, as *nōbīs*, in 2, the ordinary indirect object. See 78 and 79.

**349. Rule.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves.*

## 350.

## FRIENDSHIP

In *vērā amicitia* māgnū inest praesidium. *Amicus vērū adest amicō neque deerit in difficultātibus. Amicō prōdesse dulce est, amicō deesse turpe est. Amicus fidus nōn aberit ab amicō in malā fortūnā. Mōrēs malī amicitiae obsunt. Inter hominēs malōs vērā amicitia nōn interest. Cicerō cōsul rei pūblīcae praefuit et amicis prōfuit. Multae Cicerōnis epistulae eiusque amicōrum supersunt. Prōdeste, puerī puellaeque, amicis. Amicis (dat.) in periculō este auxiliō et praesidiō. Infelix est is quī amicis superfuit omnibus.*

## 351.

## EXERCISES

1. Caesar had (*in Caesar was*) a very good memory.
2. He never lacked courage (courage was never lacking to him).
3. He commanded brave men, and was present at many battles.
4. He benefited and injured his country.
5. He was a terror (dat.) to his foes.
6. He did not survive his last (*proximus*) wars many years.

## LESSON LX

## PARTICIPLES: READING LESSON

**352.** *a.* Learn the participles of the model verbs (497-501).

*b.* Participles in *-ns* are declined like *amāns* (485); those in *-us*, like *bonus* (483).

*c.* Participles agree with nouns and pronouns like adjectives.

**353.***Model Sentences*

1. *Tē in urbe manentem vidī, I saw you while you were staying (you staying) in the city.*
2. *Urbs diū oppūgnāta nōn capta est, the city, though it was besieged (having been besieged) for a long time, was not taken.*
3. *Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit, Caesar, because he was alarmed (having been alarmed) by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. *Dux victus sē recipiet, if the general is defeated (the general defeated), he will retreat.*
5. *Dōna missa recēpit, he received the gifts which had been sent (gifts sent).*
6. *Caesar principem captum Rōmam mīsit, Caesar took a chieftain and sent him to Rome (sent a taken chieftain).*

*a.* Observe that in each of the first five sentences the Latin participle is equivalent to a clause in English. In 6 the participle is best rendered by a verb coordinate with the main verb. The tenses of the participle denote time relatively to the time of the main verb, like the tenses of the infinitive (324-326).

**354.**

## VOCABULARY

*contrā*, prep. with acc. *against*.

*historia*, -ae, f. *history*.

*vēnēnum*, -ī, n. *poison*.

*vicīnus*, -a, -um, *neighboring*.

commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *move, rouse.*

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*

inquit (defective, used after one or more quoted words), *said.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *kill, put to death.*

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify.*

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

### 355. FABRICIUS AND THE PHYSICIAN

Fabricius cōsul factus contrā Pyrrhum, rēgem quendam, missus est. Accidit ut cōsul ipse et Pyrrhus castra habērent vicīna. Nē rēx impetum faceret, castra mūnivit Fabricius. Dē<sup>1</sup> nocte Pyrrhī medicus ad Fabricium vēnit. "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi praemium dederis, dominum meum vēnēnō interficiam." "Tū, pessime,"<sup>2</sup> inquit Fabricius irā commōtus, "ad tuum dominum statim vinctus mittēris." Tum medicum vinctum ad Pyrrhum rēgem redūcī iussit. Nōnne illum pessimum hominem morte pūnivit Pyrrhus? Historia nōn nārrat num medicus ā Pyrrhō interfectus sit.

### 356. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aliquis fābulam quendam nārrābat. 2. Quōque annō discō aliquid novī. 3. Numquam quemquam vidi pēiōrem illō homine. 4. Haec mihi rīdēns dixit. 5. Pūgnae interfuit. 6. Medicum Pyrrhī in Fabricī castris manentem vidimus. 7. Verba pessima ēius dicentis<sup>3</sup> audiēbāmus.

II. 1. Do not, Roman, put the doctor to death. 2. Order him to be bound<sup>4</sup> and led back to the king. 3. Let him punish him with death. 4. Let him be led back that he may be punished. 5. Fabricius, though<sup>5</sup> moved with anger, did this. 6. If<sup>6</sup> the physician is set free, he will be glad. 7. They say the physician was glad because<sup>7</sup> he was set free.

<sup>1</sup> *in.*      <sup>2</sup> *miscreant.*      <sup>3</sup> *of him speaking = as he spoke.*      <sup>4</sup> 353, 6.

<sup>5</sup> 353, 2.      <sup>6</sup> 353, 4.      <sup>7</sup> 353, 3.

## LESSON LXI

PARTICIPLES — *Continued*

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

357.

*Model Sentences*

1. Cōsul, castrīs mūnītis, Rōmam vēnit,	{ the camp having been fortified, when the camp had been fortified, when he had fortified the camp, having fortified the camp, after fortifying the camp, }	{ the consul came to Rome. }
2. Hōc factō vincēmus,	{ this having been done, since this has been done, if this is done, by doing this, }	{ we shall conquer. }

a. Observe in 1 that the noun *castrīs* and the participle *mūnītis* agreeing with it are in the ablative, and denote the time of the action expressed by *vēnit*; in 2 that *hōc* and *factō* are in the ablative and denote the *cause* (since), or *condition* (if), or some *other circumstance* of the action expressed by *vincēmus*. An ablative so used is called the *ablative absolute*.

b. Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, without a participle are sometimes used in the same way: *Caesare duce, vincēmus, under the leadership of Caesar, if Caesar is our leader, we shall conquer.*

c. The Latin perfect participle is passive, not active. Accordingly such a sentence as "Caesar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome" has to be cast into the form "Caesar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome," *Caesar, Gallīs victīs, Rōmam rediit.*

**358. Rule.** — *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.*

a. The ablative absolute should seldom be translated literally. Various ways of translating it are shown in the model sentences.

The best way in any particular case must be determined by considering what idea the ablative absolute seems to convey with reference to the main clause.

359.

VOCABULARY

Amūlius, -ī, m. <i>Amulius</i> .	pecus, -oris, n. <i>flock, cattle</i> .
auxilium, auxiliī, n. <i>help, aid</i> .	rīpa, -ae, f. <i>bank</i> .
geminus, -a, -um, <i>twin-born, twin-</i> .	super, prep. with acc. <i>above, over</i> .
latrō, -ōnis, m. <i>robber</i> .	Tiberis, -is (acc. -im), m. <i>the Tiber</i> .
condō, condere, condidī, conditus, <i>establish, build, found</i> .	
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusus, <i>pour out, spread abroad</i> .	

360.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostibus victis. 2. Cicerōne cōsule. 3. Oppidō quōdam expūgnātō. 4. Hōc visō. 5. His rēbus repertis.

6. Rōmulus, urbe conditā, rēx vocātus est. 7. Amūliō rēge Tiberis super ripās effūsus est. 8. Gemini frātrēs ipsi ā pecoribus latrōnēs arcēbant. 9. Hōc oppidum, paucis<sup>1</sup> dēfendentibus, Caesar expūgnāre nōn potuit. 10. Tum imperātor, "Militēs," inquit, "redūcite captivōs." 11. Hī captivi eīdem fortissimē pūgnantēs capti sunt. 12. Quis praefuit equitibus qui imperātōri auxiliō missi sunt? 13. Mūnite urbem, civēs, nē ab hostibus capiātur. 14. Urbe mūnitā, civēs nōn iam terrēbantur.

II. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much moved. 2. The physician was led back<sup>2</sup> and put to death. 3. Romulus, having freed<sup>3</sup> his brother, killed Amulius. 4. Having taken<sup>3</sup> the city, the soldiers set free the prisoners. 5. Let us rouse the citizens. 6. Boys, aid your friends. 7. Those girls were a help<sup>4</sup> to their teacher.

<sup>1</sup> *Though, etc.*    <sup>2</sup> Compare 353, 6.    <sup>3</sup> See 357, c.    <sup>4</sup> See 348.

## LESSON LXII

PARTICIPLES — *Continued*

## THE GERUNDIVE

361. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies.

362. *Model Sentences*

1. Eī hominī aurum servandum dedit, *he gave the gold to that man to keep (the gold to be kept).*
2. Caesar erat cupidus urbis dēlendae, *Caesar was desirous of destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed).*
3. Ad pācem petendam vēnērunt, *they came to seek peace, for the purpose of seeking peace (for peace to be sought).*

a. Observe in each of the above sentences that the gerundive agrees with a noun. Notice also the way in which the noun and gerundive are translated.

b. Observe that in 1 *servandum* and in 3 *ad pācem petendam* express *purpose*, and are equivalent to *ut servāret* and *ut pācem peterent* (288, 1).

## 363. VOCABULARY

coniūnx, coniugis, f. <i>wife.</i>	summus, -a, -um, <i>highest, greatest</i>
cupidus, -a, -um, <i>desirous, fond.</i>	(489).
pāstor, -ōris, m. <i>shepherd.</i>	vīs, vīs, f. <i>force, strength, power,</i>
sīgnum, -ī, n. <i>sign, signal.</i>	<i>might</i> (482).

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, enlarge.*

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *come together, assemble.*

ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātus, *bring up, train.*

induō, induere, induī, indūtus, *put on.*

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, *make ready, prepare.*

petō, petere, petīvī (petiī), petītus, *seek, ask for, ask.*

salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātus, *greet, salute.*



## 364.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Pontis faciendi. 2. Epistulis scribendis. 3. Ad epistulās scribendās. 4. Epistulā scribendā. 5. Viribus augendis. 6. In petendā pāce.

7. Pāstor geminōs coniugī ēducandōs dedit. 8. Lēgātī dē pāce faciendā vēnērunt. 9. Caesar pontem faciendum cūrat.<sup>1</sup> 10. Multī convēnērunt studiō videndae urbis. 11. Multī rēgēs bellōrum gerendōrum sunt cupidi. 12. Legiō ad bellum gerendum parātissima<sup>2</sup> erat. 13. Ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuit. 14. Nōs moritūri<sup>3</sup> tē salūtāmus. 15. Signō datō militēs impetum in hostis summā vi fēcērunt.

II. 1. Of seeing the town. 2. For (ad) drawing up a line of battle. 3. By founding a city. 4. By carrying on war. 5. In (in) laying waste the fields.

6. Everything was made ready for (ad) training the boys. 7. Having killed<sup>4</sup> Amulius, the brothers founded a city. 8. By keeping off the robbers they are a help<sup>5</sup> to the shepherds. 9. We are ready<sup>6</sup> to help (iuvō)<sup>7</sup> the shepherds.

<sup>1</sup> has a bridge built (takes care a bridge to be built). <sup>2</sup> very well prepared.  
<sup>3</sup> about to die. <sup>4</sup> See 357, c. <sup>5</sup> See 348. <sup>6</sup> ready = prepared.  
<sup>7</sup> Compare I. 12.



ROMAN SANDALS

## LESSON LXIII

## THE GERUND

365. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

366. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (497-501).

367. *Model Sentences*

1. Dux erat cupidus urbem dēlendī, *the general was desirous of destroying the city.*
2. Ad pūgnandum vēnērunt, *they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
3. Mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

a. Observe in each sentence that the gerund is used like any other noun, and that in 1 it has an object (urbem) like a verb.

b. Observe in 2 that the gerund with ad denotes purpose, and compare it with ad pācem petendam (362, 3).

c. Compare urbem dēlendī (1) with urbis dēlendae (362, 2), and note that the two phrases have the same meaning.

## 368.

## VOCABULARY

amor, -ōris, m. *love.*

ars, artis (arti-), f. *art.*

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason; abl. for the sake (after a genitive).*

deus, -ī, m. *god (482).*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*

industria, -ae, f. *industry.*

nōmen, -inis, n. *name.*

propius, adv. *nearer.*

spatium, spatī, n. *room, space, time, opportunity.*

ūtilis, -e, *useful.*

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus, *come near, approach.*

coniciō, conicere, conicēcī, coniectus, *throw, hurl.*

contemnō, contemnere, contempsi, contemptus, *despise.*

nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus, *sail, cruise.*

ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, *speak, beg, plead.*

369.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Ars vivendi. 2. Amor pugnandi. 3. Industria in agendō. 4. Inter<sup>1</sup> pugnandum. 5. Dicendō. 6. Difficultās nāvigandi. 7. Causa mittendi. 8. Mittendi causā.

9. Ōrātor finem ōrandi fēcit. 10. Librī sunt ūtilēs legendō. 11. Ars puerōs ēducandi est difficilis. 12. Adsumus discendi causā. 13. Militēs erant cupidī oppidum expugnandi. 14. Nāvēs ad nāvigandum parātae erant. 15. Spatium pila in hostis coniciendi<sup>2</sup> nōn datum est. 16. Illi librī ad legendum nōn sunt idōneī. 17. Hominēs ad deōs propius accēdunt nūllā rē quam salūtem hominibus dandō. 18. Cicerō librum dē contemnendā morte scripsit. 19. Nox finem oppugnandi fēcit.

II. 1. By fortifying. 2. While writing.<sup>3</sup> 3. In (in) saying. 4. For the sake of assembling. 5. For the purpose of killing. 6. For the sake of seeking peace.<sup>4</sup> 7. The difficulty of approaching.

8. The same physician was desirous of killing<sup>4</sup> the king. 9. Time was not given for (of) pleading. 10. The master teaches us (acc.) the art of living well. 11. Brothers, let us rouse the citizens and set free the prisoners. 12. Having roused the citizens,<sup>5</sup> we shall set free the prisoners.

<sup>1</sup> *during, while.*

<sup>2</sup> *for hurling.*

<sup>3</sup> Compare I. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Express in

two ways.

<sup>5</sup> See 357, c.



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON LXIV

## THE SUPINE: ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

## READING LESSON: REVIEW

**370.** The supine is a verbal noun used only in the accusative and ablative singular, and is wanting in most verbs.

**371.** Learn the supines of the model verbs (497-501). These are given in the paradigms merely to illustrate the forms.

**372.** *Model Sentences*

1. *Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to seek peace.*
2. *Id facile est factū, that is easy to do, to be done (in the doing).*
3. *Gallōs virtūte superant, they surpass the Gauls in courage.*

a. Observe in 1 that the supine **petītum** expresses purpose, like **ut pācem petant** and **ad pācem petendam**.

b. Observe in 2 and 3 that the ablatives **factū** and **virtūte** answer the question *in what respect?* Such ablatives are called *ablatives of specification*.

**373. Rule.** — *The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

**374. Rule.** — *The ablative is used to denote in what respect a thing is true.*

**375.** EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Galli lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt rogātum auxilium.*
2. *Dixērunt sē auxilium petitum vēnisse.* 3. *Vēni tē laudātum.*
4. *Eōs tū ad mē salūtātum miserās.* 5. *Quid optimum est factū?*
6. *Quīdam sunt hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine.* 7. *Hannibal patrī virtūte similis erat.* 8. *Num puer virum vī superat?*
9. *Oppidō expūgnātō, Caesar copiās in castra redūxit.*

II. 1. The poor soldiers are tired in mind and body. 2. Are you like your brother in daring? 3. That is easier to say than to do. 4. Deputies came to ask for aid. 5. Many girls are fond of reading books. 6. Who formed (*capitō*) a design of killing Cicero the consul?

376.

ROMAN CONSULS

Rōmānī, rēgibus expulsis,<sup>1</sup> duōs cōsulēs quotannis habēbant. Cōsulātus erat apud Rōmānōs magistrātus amplissimus. Dictātor māgnī periculi temporibus mūnera omnium magistrātuum praestābat. Cōsulēs togam praetextam gerēbant,<sup>2</sup> et in sellā curūlī sedēbant. Nisi in urbe Rōmā vitae necisque potestās in manibus cōsulum erat. Duodecim lictōrēs ibant (*went*) ante cōsulem cum fascibus, insignibus<sup>3</sup> illis hūius imperī, atque poenae instrūmentis.<sup>3</sup> Mūnus erat cōsulum senātui<sup>4</sup> praesidēre et rem<sup>5</sup> pūblicam administrāre. Cōsulibus quoque erat mūnus exercituum dūcendōrum in hostis populī Rōmānī.

<sup>1</sup> From *expellō*.    <sup>2</sup> *wore*.    <sup>3</sup> An appositive with *fascibus*.    <sup>4</sup> See 347.

<sup>5</sup> *rem pūblicam*, the *public business*.

377.

REVIEW

1. What two moods are used in commands and appeals? 2. What active form is the same as the passive imperative present, second singular? 3. Translate into Latin *do not send, let us send, let them not send*. 4. Give the rule for the dative with compounds. 5. Point out in 360, I, an instance of the dative of service. 6. Give five possible translations of *rēge interfectō*. 7. Give the rule for the ablative absolute. 8. In 364, I, 7, what idea is implied in the gerundive *ēducandōs*? 9. Express in Latin *of taking the town*, first using the gerundive, then the gerund. 10. What idea is expressed by the gerundive or gerund with *ad*? 11. What is a verbal noun? 12. Give in English some new examples of a verbal noun with an object.

## LESSON LXV

## REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS

## READING LESSON

NOTE.— For some classes it may be well to divide this lesson into two.

**378.** Review the complete inflection of **amō** (497) and **moneō** (498).

**379.** VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

**dō, dare, dedī, datus, give.**

**impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, fill, cover.**

**iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, bid, order, command.**

**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid.**

**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus, stay, remain.**

**mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus, show, point out.**

**mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, change.**

**ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, speak, beg, plead.**

**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, —, hold, keep.**

**videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, see; pass., be seen, seem.**

**380.** EXERCISES

I. 1. Dant, iuvant, implent, manent. 2. Mōnstrāmus, mūtāmus, iubēmus, vidēmus. 3. Ōrāte, mōnstrāte, tenēte, implēte. 4. Iūvistī, mūtāvistī, mānsistī, tenuistī. 5. Dabat, ōrābat, implēbat, iubēbat. 6. Mōnstrāvērunt, mūtāvērunt, iussērunt, tenuērunt. 7. Mūtābitur, iuvābitur, vidēbitur, tenēbitur. 8. Iūta est, mōnstrāta est, implētum est, vīsum est. 9. Ōrārī, mūtārī, tenērī, implērī. 10. Mōnstrātūrus, ōrātūra, implētūrus, mānsūra. 11. Mūtandī, mōnstrandum, iubendō, videndum. 12. Datum, ōrātum, vīsum. 13. Dedisse, ōrāvisse, implēvisse, vidisse. 14. Ut iuvārem, nē mūtāret, ut tenērentur, nē iubērētur.

II. 1. He gives, she aids, it remains, he sees. 2. I shall aid, we shall give, you will order, they will hold. 3. To have aided, to have changed, to have filled, to have remained. 4. Give, show, stay, keep. 5. Let me help, let him show, let us stay, let them fill. 6. I was (being) aided, you were (being) changed, he was (being) commanded, they were (being) held. 7. To have been shown, to be changed, to have been bidden, to seem. 8. Of showing, by praying, for keeping, while filling.

## 381.

## ROMULUS AND REMUS

Rōmulus et Remus erant geminī frātrēs, filii Mārtis deī et Rheae Silviae, Vestae sacerdotis. Hāc rē cōgnitā, Amūlius, rēx Albānōrum, mātrem ipsam in vincula coniēcit. Parvulōs alveō imposuit et abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super ripās effūsus erat; sed flūmine relābente (*subsiding*), eōs aqua in siccō reliquit. Lupa ad vagitum occurrit, infantis linguā lambit, mātremque sē gessit. Hanc rem Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, animadvertit, et eōs portāvit in casam, et coniugī dedit ēducandōs.



THE TWINS DISCOVERED BY FAUSTULUS

## LESSON LXVI

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS — *Continued*

## READING LESSON

NOTE. — For some classes it may be well to divide this lesson into two.

**382.** Review the complete inflection of *regō* (499), *capīō* (500), and *audiō* (501).

**383.** VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

*emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy.*

*iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl, cast.*

*mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, fortify.*

*pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put, place, set.*

*recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, take back, receive.*

*sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.*

*tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, touch.*

*tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, cover, conceal.*

*veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, come.*

*vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat.*

**384.** EXERCISES

I. 1. Emit, mūnit, tangit, vincit. 2. Iēcērunt, posuērunt, tetigērunt, vēnērunt. 3. Pōnēbātis, recipiēbātis, tegēbātis, vincēbātis. 4. Ēmerit, mūniverit, sciverit, tetigerit. 5. Iace, recipe, tege, venī. 6. Posuerant, tēxerant, vīcerant, mūniverant. 7. Ēmisse, iactum esse, posuisse, mūnītum esse. 8. Pōnimur, tangimur, tegimini, vincuntur. 9. Ēmptum est, iacta sunt, recepta est, tēctī estis. 10. Mūniēns, pōnēns, scientēs, venientēs. 11. Ement, iacientur, recipient, vincuntur. 12. Ut mūniant, ut recipiantur, nē pōnant. nē tegantur. 13. Pōnendī, tegendō, emendō, vincendō. 14. Ēmptūrus esse, recipī, tangī, ventūram esse.



II. 1. They are throwing, they touch, they come, they are buying. 2. He was covering, he knew, he was placing, he received. 3. I shall come, you will conquer, he will put, we shall fortify. 4. That he may know, let us throw, that you may not touch, let them not place. 5. It has been covered, she has been received, we have been defeated, they have been touched. 6. To have fortified, to have been bought, to have hurled, to have been touched. 7. Come, throw, buy, conquer. 8. Of throwing, for receiving, to place, by covering. 9. It will be bought, I shall be received, they will be covered, he will be touched.

### 385. ROMULUS AND REMUS—*Continued*

Pueri adulti<sup>1</sup> (*when grown up*) inter p̄stōrēs primō lūdicris certāminibus vīris<sup>2</sup> auxērunt,<sup>3</sup> deinde v̄nandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā rapinā pecorum arcēre coep̄runt.<sup>4</sup> Remus ā latrōnibus captus est; Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tunc Faustus necessitāte compulsus<sup>5</sup> indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset.<sup>6</sup> Hic statim, p̄stōribus armātis,<sup>7</sup> Albam properāvit. Frātre liberāvit, Amūlium interfēcit. Postēā Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locis ubi expositi<sup>8</sup> ēdūcātique erant condidērunt. Hanc urbem Rōmulus Rōmam vocāvit.

<sup>1</sup> From *adolēscō*.    <sup>2</sup> Acc. plur. from *vīs*.    <sup>3</sup> From *augeō*.    <sup>4</sup> From *coepi*.

<sup>5</sup> From *compellō*.    <sup>6</sup> See 295.    <sup>7</sup> See 358.    <sup>8</sup> From *expōnō*.



ROMAN COINS

## LESSON LXVII

## DEPONENT VERBS

## ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS

**386.** Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the infinitive present, as follows :

First conj.	-ārī	Third conj.	-ī
Second conj.	-ērī	Fourth conj.	-īrī

*a.* Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the synopses of the deponents in 509.

*b.* Observe that the following are active forms :

Inf. future	hortātūrus esse	Gerund	hortandī,
Act. supine	hortātum		hortandō, etc.

*c.* Observe that there are participles of both voices :

Pres.	hortāns, <i>urging.</i>	Perf.	hortātus, <i>having urged.</i>
Fut.	hortātūrus, <i>about to urge.</i>	Gerundive	hortandus, <i>to be urged.</i>

*d.* Observe that the perfect participle of deponents is active in meaning ; the gerundive is passive.

**387.** *Model Sentences*

1. Aurō ūtuntur, *they use gold.*
2. Lūce sōlis fruimur, *we enjoy the light of the sun.*

*a.* Observe that aurō and lūce are in the ablative, while the corresponding words in English are direct objects of their verbs.

**388. Rule.** — *The five deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds govern the ablative.*

## 389.

## VOCABULARY

libertās, -ātis, f. *liberty, freedom.*

nēmō, dat. -inī (nūllūs for gen., nūllō

for abl.), m. *no one, nobody.*

nunc, adv. *now.*

sapientia, -ae, f. *wisdom.*

scrīptor, -ōris, m. *writer.*

sōl, sōlis, m. *sun.*

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, advantage.*

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, *create, choose, elect.*

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus, *drive out, expel.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*

imitor, imitārī, imitātus sum, *imitate, copy.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out, march.*

reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus, *make over, repair.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, make use of, employ.*

## 390.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Hortātur, verēbantur, sequētur. 2. Potitī sunt, ūtiminī, ūtēris. 3. Hortāns, verentēs, secūtūrus. 4. Veritus, potiendī, sequendō, verendō. 5. Ad ūtendum, hortātum, verērī, ūsus esse.

6. Verēminī deōs. 7. Caesar hortātus est militēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 8. Scrīptor quīdam vetus scrīpsit: "Nunc puerī omnia sciunt, nēmīnem verentur, imitantur nēmīnem." 9. Illō diē exercitus proficīscēbātur. 10. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequēbātur. 11. Tempore ūtāmur<sup>1</sup> cūm sapientiā. 12. Rēgibus<sup>2</sup> Rōmā<sup>3</sup> expulsis, duo cōsulēs creatī sunt. 13. Omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvis erant usū.<sup>4</sup> 14. Semper bona exempla imitārī possumus.

II. 1. They urge, he fears, they will follow. 2. We use, you reverence, he has used. 3. Having got possession of, imitating, for (ad) setting out.

4. Caesar ordered the same two legions to set out. 5. Let<sup>1</sup> us always imitate the good. 6. Do not follow bad men. 7. We have enjoyed the love of our mother. 8. (Being) about to fight, let<sup>1</sup> us put on our helmets.

<sup>1</sup> See 340.

<sup>2</sup> See 358.

<sup>3</sup> See 197, 3.

<sup>4</sup> See 349.

## LESSON LXVIII

## THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

391. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* (505). Note the irregularities in the present of the infinitive, indicative, and subjunctive. For the imperfect subjunctive, see 287, *a*.

392. *Model Sentences*

1. *Hīc liber mihi placet, this book pleases me.*
2. *Amīcō persuādet ut hōc faciat, he persuades his friend to do this.*

*a*. Observe that *mihi* and *amīcō* are in the dative, while the English equivalents are the direct objects of transitive verbs.

393. Rule. — *Most verbs meaning to believe, favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also to command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, and spare, and the like, govern the dative.*

## 394. VOCABULARY

*enim*,<sup>1</sup> conj. *for*.

*mulier*, -*eris*, *f. woman*.

*neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.

*occāsus*, -*ūs*, *m. setting*.

*arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, suppose.*

*experior, experīrī, expertus sum, try, test.*

*faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor.*

*mālō, mālī, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.*

*noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, harm, injure.*

*nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.*

*parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus, spare.*

*persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, persuade.*

*placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, please, be pleasing to.*

*volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, wish, will.*

<sup>1</sup> Never the first word in a sentence.

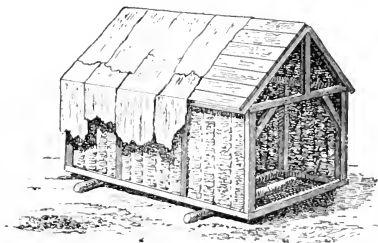
## 395.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Voltis, nolumus, māvis. 2. Ut velimus, ut nōlit, ut mālit. 3. Nōlī, nōlle, māuisse. 4. Vōbīs persuādendi causā. 5. Volt mihi favēre. 6. Nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi prōdesse quam<sup>1</sup> nocēre mālumus. 8. Mālēbat esse quam vidēri bonus. 9. Nōnne vis matrī tuae esse auxiliō? 10. Arbitrāmur eum voluisse equitātūi praesse. 11. Nōlite, puerī puellaeque, avibus nocēre. 12. Sōlis occasū militēs castris hostium potentur. 13. Sua<sup>2</sup> cuique placent. 14. Dicere nōn possumus cūr puer esse scriptor velit. 15. Captivī, cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, eum rogābant ut sibi parceret.

II. 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will prefer. 2. That you may be willing, that he might prefer, lest he should be unwilling. 3. For the sake<sup>3</sup> of pleasing your friends.

4. The soldiers, having got possession of the city, spared neither women nor children. 5. Why are you unwilling to imitate good men? 6. Let us send a messenger to the leader to ask (supine) that he spare the soldiers. 7. He had persuaded (them) both (*sing.*) to try<sup>4</sup> the same fortune of war.

<sup>1</sup> (*rather*) than.<sup>2</sup> *his own* (things).<sup>3</sup> See 368.<sup>4</sup> See 284.

VINEA

## LESSON LXIX

## CUM TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

## READING LESSON

396.

*Model Sentences*

1. Librōs, cum mihi est ōtium, legō, *I read books when I have leisure.*
2. Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit, *Caesar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, *since they could not defend themselves, they sent deputies to Caesar.*
4. Cum fortiter pūgnārent, tamen nōn vicērunt, *although they fought bravely, nevertheless they did not conquer.*

a. Cum meaning *when* (1 and 2) is called *cum temporal*; meaning *as* or *since* (3), *cum causal*; meaning *although* (4), *cum concessive*.

b. Observe the moods and tenses that follow the various meanings of cum.

397. Rule. — *In a cum-clause expressing time, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.*

398. Rule. — *In a cum-clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is in the subjunctive.*

399.

## VOCABULARY

cum, conj. *when, since, as, although.*Fabius, -ī, m. *Fabius.*multitūdō, -inis, f. *multitude.*tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*tamen, adv. *yet, nevertheless.*tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach, come near to.*cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, —, *stand firm, take position.*dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, *descend, dismount.*dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsiliū, dēsultus, *jump down, leap down.*praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, *surpass, excel.*

## 400.

## EXERCISES

1. Militēs, cum<sup>1</sup> oppidum cēpērunt, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 2. Militēs, cum<sup>1</sup> oppidum cēpissent, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 3. Cum<sup>2</sup> tanta multitudō lapidēs et tēla coniceret, in mūrō cōsistendi potestās erat nulli. 4. Belgae, cum<sup>2</sup> virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri poterant. 5. Cum vēneris, hōc cōgnōscēs. 6. Cum<sup>3</sup> nāvēs refectae essent, tamen Caesar nōn nāvigāvit.

## 401.

QUINTUS<sup>1</sup> FABIUS MAXIMUS

Q. Fabius iam senex filiō suō, cōsulī, lēgātus fuit, et cum in ēius castra veniret, filius ad patrem prōgressus est, duodecim lictōribus<sup>4</sup> antecēdentibus. Equō vehēbātur<sup>5</sup> senex, nec adpropinquante cōsule<sup>4</sup> dēscendit. Iam ex lictōribus ūndecim verēcundiā<sup>6</sup> paternae māiestātis tacitī<sup>7</sup> praeterierant.<sup>8</sup> Quod<sup>9</sup> cum cōsul animadvertisset, proximum lictōrem iussit inclāmāre Fabiō patrī ut ex equō dēscenderet. Pater tum dēsiliēns: “Nōn ego, fili,” inquit, “tuum imperium contempsī, sed experiri volui num scirēs<sup>10</sup> tē esse cōsulem.” Ad summam senectūtem vixit Fabius Māximus, dignus tantō cōgnōminē.

## 402.

## EXERCISES

1. When Fabius was old, he came to his son's camp. 2. When the consul approached, Fabius wished to test him. 3. When a consul approaches, a lieutenant dismounts. 4. As the son was consul, the father dismounted. 5. Although Fabius was old, nevertheless he leaped down from his horse. 6. When he had dismounted, the multitude was silent. 7. Since the son ordered his father to dismount, we know that the former<sup>11</sup> was consul.

<sup>1</sup> Temporal.    <sup>2</sup> Causal.    <sup>3</sup> Concessive.    <sup>4</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>5</sup> *was riding on (was carried by)*.    <sup>6</sup> See 165.    <sup>7</sup> *in silence (silent)*.    <sup>8</sup> *had passed by*.  
<sup>9</sup> Object of *animadvertisset*.    <sup>10</sup> See 295.    <sup>11</sup> See 201, *b*.

## LESSON LXX

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**403.** A *conditional sentence* consists of two parts, a *condition* — also called *protasis* — and a *conclusion* — also called *apodosis*. The *condition* (*protasis*) is generally an *if*-clause, and hence dependent; the *conclusion* (*apodosis*) is the principal clause, upon which the condition depends.

**404.** *Model Sentences*

## SIMPLE CONDITIONS

1. *Sī hōc facit, bene est, if he does this, it is well.*
2. *Sī hōc faciēbat, bene erat, if he was doing this, it was well.*
3. *Sī hōc faciet, bene erit, if he does (shall do) this, it will be well.*

## DOUBTFUL CONDITIONS

4. *Sī hōc faciat, bene sit, if he should do this, it would be well (the time is future).*

## CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

5. *Sī hōc faceret, bene esset, if he were doing this, it would be well (the time is present).*
6. *Sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset, if he had done this, it would have been well (the time is past).*

*a.* Observe in 1, 2, and 3 that the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion, implying nothing as to the truth of the supposition. Such sentences may be called *simple conditions*.

*b.* Observe in 4 that the present subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that *doubt* or *possibility* is implied. This doubt is generally expressed in English by the auxiliaries *should . . . would*. Such sentences may be called *doubtful conditions*.

*c.* Observe in 5 and 6 that the subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that the contrary of both condition and conclusion is implied: *if*



*he were doing this (but he is not), it would be well (therefore it is not), etc.* Such sentences may be called *conditions contrary to fact*.

*d.* Observe further in 5 that the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that present time is referred to; in 6 the pluperfect subjunctive, with reference to past time.

**405. Rule.** — *In simple conditions the indicative is used.*

**406. Rule.** — *In doubtful conditions the subjunctive present (or perfect) is used.*

**407. Rule.** — *In conditions contrary to fact the subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect are used, the imperfect denoting present time, and the pluperfect denoting past time.*

**408.**

## VOCABULARY

coena, -ae, f. *dinner.*

nisi, conj. *if not, unless.*

dictātor, -ōris, m. *dictator.*

senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*

praesideō, praesidēre, praesēdī, —, *be in charge of, preside over.*  
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *answer, reply.*

**409.**

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Si rēs pūblica in periculō erat, dictātor creātus est.  
2. Si rēs pūblica in periculō sit, dictātor creētur. 3. Nisi rēs pūblica in periculō nunc esset, dictātor nōn creārētur. 4. Si cōsul essēs, senātui praesidērēs. 5. Venī ad coenam, si tibi placet. 6. Obsidibus datis, pācem cum eis faciam.

II. 1. If you should ask me, I should answer. 2. If Scipio is first, who is second? 3. If Hannibal had conquered Scipio, he would have been the greatest of generals. 4. If the consul should approach, the lieutenant would dismount. 5. If Fabius had not dismounted, would his son have ordered him to dismount?

## LESSON LXXI

## REVIEW: READING LESSON

## 410.

## REVIEW

1. What is a deponent verb? 2. Give the participles of *sequor* with their meanings. 3. Give the meanings of *veritus*, *profectus*, and *potitus*. 4. Give the meanings of *monitus*, *rēctus*, and *auditus*. 5. How can you translate the English perfect active participle — for example, *having conquered the enemy* — if the corresponding Latin verb is not deponent? 6. Inflect the indicative and subjunctive present of *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*. 7. Give a synopsis of each in the indicative and subjunctive. 8. Give the rule for the dative with intransitives. 9. Point out an instance of this dative in 409. 10. With *cum* meaning *when*, what tenses of the indicative are used? What tenses of the subjunctive? 11. Translate *cum esset* in three ways. 12. Translate *cum sit* in two ways. 13. How many forms of conditional sentences are there? 14. Illustrate each by a model sentence. 15. What time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive in conditions contrary to fact? 16. What time is expressed by the English *were* in *if he were here, we should be glad*? What is the tense of *were*? 17. What word is used to translate *that* into Latin in purpose and result clauses? 18. What word translates *that not* in purpose clauses? What words in result clauses? 19. Translate *he comes to stay; he came to stay*. 20. Translate *I advise him not to write*. 21. Point out an indirect question in 401. 22. Translate *I asked him who he was*.

## 411.

## RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS

Erant in quādam legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam primīs ōrdinibus<sup>1</sup> adpropinquābant, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē<sup>2</sup> contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī antepōnerētur, omnibusque annīs<sup>3</sup> dē locō summīs simultātibus

<sup>1</sup> *the first rank*, i.e. the position of chief centurion.

<sup>2</sup> *inter sē*, with

*each other.* <sup>3</sup> *omnibus annīs*, *year after year.*

contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad<sup>1</sup> mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur,<sup>2</sup> “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis<sup>3</sup> exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit.” Haec cum dixisset,<sup>4</sup> prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs et in eam partem hostium quae cōnfertissima vīsa est inrumpit.

## 412.

## EXERCISES

1. For many years<sup>5</sup> Pullo and Vorenius contended for position. 2. Each<sup>6</sup> of them wished to be preferred to the other. 3. Pullo asked Vorenius why he hesitated<sup>7</sup> to prove his courage. 4. When Pullo had advanced beyond the fortifications, he rushed at the enemy.<sup>8</sup> 5. There he had<sup>9</sup> a chance of proving his courage. 6. If Vorenius should hesitate, he would not be preferred to Pullo. 7. I prefer Pullo to Vorenius; which (of the two) do you prefer to the other?

## 413.

## VOCABULARY

extrā, prep. with acc. *outside of, beyond.* mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification.*  
 locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī and loca), *place, position, chance.* Pullō, -ōnis, m. *Pullo, a centurion.*  
 Vorēnus, -ī, m. *Vorenius, a centurion.*

antepōnō, antepōnere, anteposūi, antepositus, *place before, prefer.*

dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus, *hesitate, doubt.*

inrumpō, inrumpere, inrūpī, inruptus, *break in, rush at.*

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus, *prove, approve.*

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, —, *go forward, advance, proceed.*

<sup>1</sup> See 240, note 5. <sup>2</sup> ācerrimē . . . pūgnārētur, *the fighting was fiercest (it was fought most fiercely); ācerrimē from ācriter.* <sup>3</sup> Compare 362, 2.

<sup>4</sup> haec cum dixisset may be translated *having said this.* <sup>5</sup> See 277 and

278. <sup>6</sup> uterque. <sup>7</sup> See 295. <sup>8</sup> in hostis. <sup>9</sup> a place was to him.

## LESSON LXXII

## THE IRREGULAR VERBS EŌ, FERŌ, FĪŌ

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

NOTE. — For some classes this lesson may well be divided into two.

**414.** *a.* Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of *eŏ* (507), *ferŏ* (506), and *fĭŏ* (508).

*b.* Observe where *ĭ* (the root of *eŏ*) is changed to *e* in the indicative and subjunctive present, in the present participle, and in the gerund. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *eŏ*, as in many verbs with perfects in *-ĭvĭ*, often drop *v*: *ĭvit*, *iit*; *ĭverat*, *ierat*; *ĭverit*, *ierit*; *ĭvisse*, *iisse* (*ĭsse*).

*c.* *Fĭŏ* serves as the passive of *faciŏ*. The *i* is long except before *-er* and in *fit*.

**415.** *Model Sentences*

1. Vereor ut veniat, *I fear that he is not coming or will not come.*

2. Vereor nē veniat, *I fear that he is coming or will come.*

*a.* Observe that a verb of fearing is followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive. After such verbs *ut* and *nē* seem to exchange meanings: *ut* = *that not*; *nē* = *that* (or *lest*).

*b.* Observe that the subjunctive present may be translated by the indicative future.

**416.** EXERCISES

I. 1. It, fert, fit. 2. Īmus, ferimus, fimus. 3. Īte, ferte, fite.  
4. Ī, euntĭ, eundĭ. 5. Īre, ferre, fierĭ. 6. Īsse, tulisse, factus esse.  
7. Ībunt, ferent, fient. 8. Verētur nē eant. 9. Verēbātur ut irent.  
10. Verentur nē haec fiant. 11. Timuit ut illa fierent.  
12. Cum haec facta essent, Rŏmam iērunt.  
13. His rēbus factis, militēs prŏcessērunt. 14. Eŏs hortātĭ erant ut irent; ferrent.

II. 1. You are going, are bearing, are becoming. 2. They go, bear, become. 3. He had gone, borne, become. 4. Do you fear that this will happen? 5. Who fears that they will not go? 6. Did they fear that he would go?<sup>1</sup> 7. I was afraid that they would not go.

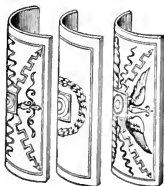
#### 417. RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS—*Continued*

Nē<sup>2</sup> Vorēnus quidem<sup>2</sup> sēsē tum vällō<sup>3</sup> continet,<sup>4</sup> sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem sequitur. Mediocri spatiō relictō, Pullō pilum in hostis immittit atque ūnum ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit; quem percussus<sup>5</sup> et exanimātum scūtis prōtegunt hostēs; in Pullōnem omnēs tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī<sup>6</sup> facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī<sup>7</sup> et hasta in balteō dēfigitur. Hic cāsus āvertit vāginam et<sup>8</sup> gladium ēdūcere cōnantis<sup>9</sup> dextram morātur manum; impedītumque<sup>10</sup> hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit illi inimicus Vorēnus et labōranti<sup>11</sup> subvenit.

<sup>1</sup> See 297.      <sup>2</sup> nē . . . quidem, *not even*.      <sup>3</sup> *within the rampart*.

<sup>4</sup> Observe the repeated use of the present in lively narration, as is common in English.      <sup>5</sup> From *percutiō*.      <sup>6</sup> See 365.      <sup>7</sup> Translate as if genitive.

<sup>8</sup> *et*, etc.: translate in this order—*et morātur dextram manum cōnantis ēdūcere gladium*.      <sup>9</sup> *when he tried (of him trying)*.      <sup>10</sup> Agrees with *eum* (i.e. *Pullōnem*) understood.      <sup>11</sup> *him in distress (him laboring)*.



SHIELDS

## LESSON LXXIII

## IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS

## RELATIVE OF PURPOSE: READING LESSON

418. *Model Sentences*

1. *Pūgnābātur, there was fighting (it was fought).*
2. *Accidit ut lūna plēna esset, it happened that the moon was full.*
3. *Īre tibi licet, you may go (to go is permitted to you).*

*a.* Observe that the verbs *pūgnābātur*, *accidit*, and *licet* have no personal subjects. In 1 there is no subject, the intransitive verb *pūgnō* being used exceptionally in the passive; in 2 the subject is the clause *ut . . . esset*; in 3 the subject is the infinitive *īre*.

*b.* Verbs like *licet*, that never have a personal subject, are used only in the third person singular, and are called *impersonal verbs*. Verbs that generally have a personal subject, when employed in the third person singular, as *pūgnābātur* and *accidit* are in 1 and 2, are said to be *used impersonally*.

419. *Model Sentence*

1. *Lēgātōs quī auxiliūm peterent mīsīt, he sent ambassadors to seek help (who should seek help).*

*a.* Observe that the relative clause *quī auxiliūm peterent* is equivalent to *ut ī auxiliūm peterent*, that is, it expresses purpose.

420. Rule.—*Purpose is often expressed by a relative with the subjunctive.*

## 421. VOCABULARY

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>ambō, -ae, -ō</i> (decl. like <i>duo</i> ), <i>both.</i> | <i>praesidium, -ī, n.</i> <i>support.</i>          |
| <i>cohors, cohortis, f.</i> <i>cohort.</i>                  | <i>subsidiūm, -ī, n.</i> <i>help, aid, relief.</i> |

anteferō, anteferre, antetulī, antelātus, *prefer*.

iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, *judge, decide*.

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), —, *it is permitted, it is allowed*.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, —, *it behooves, it is necessary, ought*.

## 422.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Ācritēr pūgnātur. 2. Accidit ut pūgnētur. 3. Accidit ut ūnus ex multītūdine pilum coniceret. 4. Vorēnum nōn dubitāre oportet. 5. Dictātōrem creātum esse dicitur.<sup>1</sup> 6. Dictātōr creātus esse dicitur.<sup>2</sup> 7. Eī licuit amīcō subvenire. 8. Nōnne Pullō verēbātur nē Vorēnus sequerētur? 9. Iūdicārī nōn potuit<sup>3</sup> uter alterī esset anteferendus. 10. Decem cohortēs ad mare relictæ erant quæ praesidiō nāvibus essent.

II. 1. It happened that there was fighting. 2. Certain men came to say that one had been killed. 3. This ought to be done.<sup>4</sup> 4. I fear that Pullo cannot draw his sword. 5. It behooves the one<sup>5</sup> to help the other.<sup>5</sup> 6. Soldiers, bring help to both.

423. RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS — *Continued*

Ad hunc cōfestim ā Pullōne omnis multītūdō sē convertit. Gladiō cominus pūgnat Vorēnus atque, ūnō interfectō,<sup>6</sup> reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius<sup>7</sup> instat, dēiectus<sup>8</sup> in locum inferiōrem<sup>8</sup> concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectis,<sup>6</sup> summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Itaque fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine sic utrumque versāvit ut alter inimicus<sup>9</sup> alteri<sup>10</sup> auxiliō salutīque esset, neque<sup>11</sup> iūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

<sup>1</sup> *it is said (that), impersonal.* <sup>2</sup> *Personal.* <sup>3</sup> *it was not possible.* <sup>4</sup> *it behooves this to be done.* <sup>5</sup> *alter.* <sup>6</sup> *See 358.* <sup>7</sup> *See 255, a.* <sup>8</sup> *having stumbled into a hollow.* <sup>9</sup> *though an enemy.* <sup>10</sup> *depends on esset.* <sup>11</sup> *neque iūdicārī posset, nor could it be decided = nor could one tell.*

## LESSON LXXIV

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: DATIVE OF AGENT

**424.** The first or active periphrastic conjugation is the future active participle combined with forms of *sum*: *amātūrus est*, *he is going to (is about to) love*; *amātūrus erat*, *he was going to (was about to) love*.

The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is the gerundive combined with forms of *sum*: *amandus est*, *he is to be loved, must be loved, ought to be loved*; *amandus erat*, *he was to be loved, ought to have been loved*.

a. Learn the synopses of the periphrastic conjugations (510, 511).

**425.***Model Sentences*

1. *Sciō quid factūrus sit*, *I know what he is going to do.*
2. *Sciēbam quid factūrus esset*, *I knew what he was going to do.*
3. *Dēlenda est Carthāgō*, *Carthage must be destroyed.*
4. *Caesārī omnia erant agenda*, *all things were to be done by Caesar.*
5. *Mihi scribendum est*, *writing must be done by me = I must write.*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that the first periphrastic conjugation expresses *purpose* or *intention*, or simple *futurity*.

b. Observe in 3, 4, and 5 that the second periphrastic Conjugation expresses *necessity*, *duty*, or *obligation*. Compare 362, 1.

c. Observe in 5 that the verb is used impersonally. Compare 418.

d. Observe in 4 and 5 that the person who has to do a thing (*Caesārī*, *mihi*) is expressed by the dative translated *by*. This dative is called the *dative of agent*. Compare the ablative of agent, 208.

**426. Rule.** — *The gerundive with sum takes the dative to denote the person who has to do a thing.*



## 427.

## VOCABULARY

Catīlīna, -ae, m. <i>Catiline</i> .	cupidē, adv. <i>eagerly</i> .
centuriō, -ōnis, m. <i>centurion</i> .	diligentia, -ae, f. <i>diligence, industry</i> .
comminus, adv. <i>hand to hand</i> .	exsilium, -ī, n. <i>exile</i> .

concidō, concidere, concidī, —, *fall down, fall*.

īnstō, īnstāre, īnstītī, īnstātūrus, *press on*.

moriōr, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus), *die*.

subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventūrus, *come to aid, assist*.

## 428.

## EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēscēnsūrus est, moritūra erat. 2. Inruptūri sunt, profectūrae erant. 3. Ēdūcendī sunt, ēducandī sunt. 4. Tibi petendum est, nōbis respondendum est.

5. Nāvis refectūrus est. 6. Nāvēs Caesarī reficiendae sunt. 7. Duo centuriōnēs virtūtem probātūri erant. 8. Duōrum centuriōnum virtūs probanda erat. 9. Gladiīs comminus pūgnātum est. 10. Diligentīā<sup>1</sup> nōbis ūtendum<sup>2</sup> est. 11. Omnibus moriendum<sup>2</sup> est. 12. Fiēbat ut Pullō inimicō subsidium ferret. 13. Hostis oportēbat sē<sup>3</sup> in mūnitiōnēs recipere. 14. Vorēnus, cum cupidius īnstāret, in locum inferiōrem concidit. 15. Nisi alter alterī subvēnisset, uterque interfectus esset.

II. 1. He was going to ask, she is going to prepare. 2. They were going to advance, she was going to prepare. 3. This must be done, it had to be spared.

4. He feared that it must be done. 5. The state must be defended by the citizens. 6. Cicero asked whether<sup>4</sup> Catiline was going to go<sup>5</sup> into exile. 7. All things were done that had to be done.<sup>6</sup> 8. Do not<sup>7</sup> think that we must do this.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See 388.    <sup>2</sup> Compare 425, 5.    <sup>3</sup> sē recipere = *withdraw*.    <sup>4</sup> num.

<sup>5</sup> Compare 425, 2.    <sup>6</sup> Compare 425, 4.    <sup>7</sup> See 340.    <sup>8</sup> *this must be done by us*.

## LESSON LXXV

## EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

## REVIEW: READING LESSON .

429. Commit to memory the following expressions of purpose, which have occurred in the preceding lessons:

Vēnērunt	}	ut pācem peterent, ad pācem petendam, pācem petendī causā, pācis petendae causā, pācem petitum, quī pācem peterent, ad pūgnandum,	} <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p style="margin: 0;"><i>they came to seek peace.</i></p> <p style="margin: 0;"><i>to fight.</i></p> </div>
----------	---	---	--

## 430.

## REVIEW

1. Inflect *ferō* in the active indicative present and in the passive subjunctive imperfect. 2. Give the meanings of *fiunt*, *fimus*, *factum est*. 3. Give the meanings of *ī*, *īs*, *ītis*, *ībit*. 4. Decline the participle *iēns* in the masculine. 5. What forms of *fiō* have *ī* before *e*? 6. What form of *ferō* has no personal ending? 7. Translate *vereor ut eat* and *vereor nē eat*. 8. Translate *verēbātur ut īret* and *verēbātur nē īret*. 9. In 409, I. 5, what is the subject of *placet*? 10. What is the meaning of *ītur* (pass. of *eō*)? Of *concurritur* (from *concurrō*, *rush*)? 11. Point out in 428, I. an impersonal verb, and an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive. 12. Translate *dīcitur iisse* and *dīcitur eum iisse*.

## 431. THE ROMANS WIN THEIR FIRST NAVAL VICTORY

Gāius Duilius Poenōs nāvālī proeliō primus<sup>1</sup> vīcit. Quī<sup>2</sup> cum vidēret nāvis Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vėlōcitatē superārī, manūs ferreās, quās corvōs vocāvērunt, īstituit. Ea machina

<sup>1</sup> *primus vīcit*, was the first to conquer.

<sup>2</sup> *quī cum*, when he.

Rōmānis māgnō ūsui fuit; nam iniectis illis corvis<sup>1</sup> hostilem nāvem adprehendēbant, deinde, superiectō ponte,<sup>1</sup> in eam insiliēbant, et gladiō velut in pūgnā terrestri dimicābant; unde Rōmānis, qui rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Inter pūgnandum<sup>2</sup> trīgintā hostium nāvēs captae sunt, tredecim mersae.<sup>3</sup> Duilius, victor Rōmam reversus,<sup>4</sup> primus<sup>5</sup> nāvālem triumphum ēgit.<sup>6</sup> Nulla victōria Rōmānis grātor fuit, quod invicti terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum<sup>7</sup> poterant.

## 432.

## VOCABULARY

corvus, -ī, m. *raven.*

ferreus, -a, -um, *of iron, iron.*

hostilis, -e, *of the enemy, hostile.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Carthaginians.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian.*

rōbur, -oris, n. *strength, vigor.*

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. *swiftness.*

victor, -ōris, m. *victor; as adj., victorious.*

adprehendō, adprehendere, adprehendī, adprehēnsus, *seize hold of.*

īstituō, instituere, instituī, institūtus, *set up, establish.*

superiaciō, superiacere, superiēcī, superiectus, *throw over, cast upon.*

## 433.

## EXERCISES

1. Since the Roman ships surpassed the Carthaginian in swiftness, iron hands were set up. 2. These iron hands were called ravens. 3. The Romans used these ravens<sup>8</sup> for<sup>9</sup> seizing hold of the hostile ships. 4. Then a bridge was thrown over, and the men<sup>10</sup> fought hand to hand with swords. 5. The Romans were victorious because they excelled the Carthaginians in strength.

<sup>1</sup> See 358.

<sup>2</sup> See 369, I. 4.

<sup>3</sup> From *mergō*.

<sup>4</sup> From *revertor*.

<sup>5</sup> Compare p. 168, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> From *agō*.

<sup>7</sup> *plūrimum poterant*, *were most powerful.*

<sup>8</sup> See 388.

<sup>9</sup> *ad* with *gerundive*.

<sup>10</sup> *soldiers.*



## SELECTIONS FOR READING

### ANECDOTES

#### 434. THE BAD APPLES

Carolus, agricolae impigrī filius, bonus erat puer sed amicōs amābat malōs. Agricola igitur puerō calathum pōmōrum plēnum dat. Bona<sup>1</sup> continēbat calathus pōma, pauca tamen erant putrida. Grātum puerō erat dōnum et cum diligentīā cūrāt; mala autem pōma maculant bona et mox mala sunt cūncta. Carolus maestus adversam fortūnam plōrat. Tum agricola filium ita monet: "Pōma mala maculant bona, certē malī amicī maculābunt puerum bonum."

#### 435. THE BROKEN DIKE

Cimbrī terram habitant miram, nam ōceanus tēcta agrōsque agricolārum saepe inundat. Incolae fossis tumulisque māgnis<sup>2</sup> undārum violentiam coērcēt; aliquandō tamen aqua claustra<sup>3</sup> dēturbat et vāstat terram. Forte erat tumulus nōn validus; iam appāret parva rīma; mox via māgna patēbit et terram superābunt undae. At periculum videt puer parvus; statim dextrā rīmam implet coērcetque aquam.

Diū et cōstanter servābat puer praesidium. Iam rigēbant membra, at dextra parva aquam semper coērcēbat. Postridiē agricolae locō adpropinquant. Puer frigidus et moribundus dextrā tamen aquam coērcet. Saxis celeriter tumulum cōnfir- mant et limō rīmam implent. Tum umeris<sup>4</sup> puerum sublevant

<sup>1</sup> With pōma.

<sup>2</sup> With fossis and tumulis.

<sup>3</sup> Object of dēturbat.

<sup>4</sup> on their shoulders.

recreantque cibō. Tantam cōstantiam saepe commemorant  
Cimbri, narrantque liberis pueri factum.

## 436.

## SIR WALTER RALEIGH

Elisabētha, rēgina Britannōrum, vestis splendidās et preti-  
osās semper gerēbat. Forte māgnā<sup>1</sup> cum catervā comitum per  
5 vicōs urbis ambulābat. Subitō ante pedēs multum videt  
lutum. Rēgina stat incerta quod viam lūbricam timet. At  
ex turbā exsilit iuvenis; umeris<sup>2</sup> novum pallium dētrahit et  
locum tegit vestimentō; tum iterum ad sociōs recurrit. Laeta  
rēgina super pallium ambulat nec pedem maculat. Statim  
10 grāta<sup>3</sup> iuvenem in numerum amicōrum adscribit.

## 437.

## THE FAITHFUL HOUND

Cambricus ōlim, ācer vēnātor, fidēlem habēbat canem,  
nōmine Gelertum. Dum<sup>4</sup> dominus in silvis abest,<sup>4</sup> canem saepe  
relinquēbat parvī fili custōdem. Aliquandō mōre suō Gelertus  
dominum reducem cum laetō clāmōre salūtābat. At subitō  
15 dominus pectus eius et dentis sanguine cruentōs notat; per-  
territus cūnās parvī fili petit. Eheu! puerum nōn videt sed  
undique cruōrem, foedī certāminis indicium. Statim caecō  
furōre canem, malī auctōrem, iaculō trānsfixit. Gelertus cum  
gemitū expirāvit. Simul dominus in recessū aedium infantem  
20 vidit salvum atque incolumem. Sed haud procul ab eō locō  
iacēbat<sup>5</sup> ingēns lupo. Fidēlis enim custōs vitam infantis ita  
servāverat.

## 438.

## THE SIEGE OF CALAIS

Ab Edvardō, rēge Britannōrum, urbs Gallica ōlim oppūgnā-  
bātur. Diū incolae cōpiārum rēgis impetum māgnā cum

<sup>1</sup> See p. 37, foot-note.    <sup>2</sup> *from his shoulders.*    <sup>3</sup> Agrees with rēgina understood, *the queen gratefully.*    <sup>4</sup> The present after dum is generally to be translated by the imperfect.    <sup>5</sup> *Was lying dead.*

virtūte sustinuerant. Tandem, ubi nihil cibi supererat<sup>1</sup> miserique civēs mūrīs et pellis edēbant, cum rēge dē dēditione agēbant. At ā rēge propter tantam hostium pertināciam irātō saevae condiōnēs pācis impositae sunt morsque duodecim principum est postulāta. Sine morā duodecim viri sē 5 prō patriā dēvovent. Inde comitēs maesti fūnibus colla amicōrum vinciunt eōsque ad rēgem dūcunt.

Rēx inter nōbilis in praetōriō sedēbat. Iamque captivī ā maestā civium turbā ad locum ductī sunt omnēsque multis cum precibus ad pedēs victōris cadunt. At rēx dūrus precēs 10 eōrum spernit āvertitque voltum. Forte rēgina rem cōgnōscit; statim ad praetōrium properat suāsque lacrimās cum precibus civium iungit. “Dā<sup>2</sup> mihi, rēx māgne,” inquit, “vitās hōrum fortium virōrum; nōne hī rēctē suam patriam dēfendērunt?” Rēx primō precēs nōn audivit, tandem lacrimae uxōris iram 15 vincunt poenamque captivīs remisit.

## STORIES OF HERCULES

## 439.

## THE INFANT PRODIGY

Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Iūnō, rēgina deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat<sup>3</sup> et Herculem adhūc infantem necāre voluit. Mīsit igitur duo serpentis saevissimōs, quī 20 mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. (Nōn tamen in cūnis sed in scūtō māgnō cubābant.) Serpentēs iam adpropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

Iphiclēs, frāter Herculis, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit; at 25 Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvis manibus serpentis statimprehendit et colla eōrum

<sup>1</sup> From *supersum*.    <sup>2</sup> *give*: imperative of *dō*.    <sup>3</sup> From *ōdī*, pluperfect with meaning of imperfect.

māgnā vi<sup>1</sup> compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfecti sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audiverat et maritum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed ubi  
5 ad locum vēnit rem miram vidit; Herculēs enim ridēbat<sup>2</sup> et serpentis mortuōs mōnstrābat.

#### 440. HERCULES CONSULTS THE ORACLE

Herculēs cōstituit igitur<sup>3</sup> ad ōrāculum Delphicum ire; hōc enim ōrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimis dōnis ōrnātum; hōc in templō sedēbat  
10 fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pŷthia, et cōsiliū dabat iis quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit.

Pŷthia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntia ire et Eurystheī  
15 rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audivit, ad urbem illam contendit,<sup>4</sup> et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādīdit. Duodecim annōs<sup>5</sup> in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit; hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus  
20 plūrima ā poētis scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

#### 441. SLAYING THE HYDRA

Post haec iūssus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre<sup>6</sup>; haec autem mōnstrum erat, cui<sup>7</sup> novem erant capita. Herculēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus<sup>8</sup> est ad palūdem

<sup>1</sup> See 482.    <sup>2</sup> Not *laughed*, but *was laughing*.    <sup>3</sup> That is, because he wanted to make expiation for a crime that he had committed.    <sup>4</sup> Compare for meaning *properābat*, l. 4.    <sup>5</sup> *for twelve years*; see 277 and 278.    <sup>6</sup> Compare, for meaning, *interfectī*, l. 1.    <sup>7</sup> See 114 and 115.    <sup>8</sup> *set out*; from *proficiscor*; see 386.



Lernaeam, quam Hydra incolēbat.<sup>1</sup> Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat māgni periculi, collum eius laevā<sup>2</sup>prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscidere coepit; quotiēs tamen hōc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur.<sup>3</sup> Diū frūstrā labōrābat; tandem hōc cōnātū<sup>4</sup> dēstitit<sup>5</sup>; cōstituit 5 deinde arborēs succidere et ignem accendere. Hōc celeriter fēcit et, postquam<sup>6</sup> ligna ignem comprehendērunt,<sup>6</sup> face ārdente colla adussit,<sup>7</sup> unde capita exoriēbantur. Nōn tamen sine māgnō labōre haec fēcit; vēnit enim auxiliō<sup>8</sup> Hydrae cancer ingēns, quī, dum<sup>9</sup> Herculēs capita abscidit,<sup>9</sup> crūra eius 10 mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum tāli modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine eius imbuīt itaque mortiferās reddidit.

#### 442. CLEANSING THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi<sup>10</sup> labōrem hunc graviōrem imposuit. Augēās quidam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria milia<sup>11</sup> boum<sup>12</sup> habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingen- 15 tis māgnitūdinis inclūdēbantur; stabulum autem inluviē āc squālōre obsitum<sup>13</sup> est; neque enim ad hōc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hōc iūssus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnius diēi pūrgāre. Ille, etsi rēs erat multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Primum māgnō labōre fossam duodēvigintī pedum 20 fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrū stabuli perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrū perrūpit,<sup>14</sup> aquam in stabulum immisit; et tāli modō contrā opiniōnem omnium opus cōnfēcit.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the alternation of perfects and imperfects in this anecdote and explain the difference; see 132, *b*. <sup>2</sup> Supply *manū*; so with *dextrā*, l. 3. <sup>3</sup> See 386; the imperfect here denotes repeated action. <sup>4</sup> See 232. <sup>5</sup> From *dēsistō*. <sup>6</sup> The perfect after *postquam* is generally best translated as a pluperfect. <sup>7</sup> From *adūrō*. <sup>8</sup> See 348 and 349. <sup>9</sup> *while he was cutting off*; see p. 172, l. 12, and note. <sup>10</sup> Depends on *imposuit*; see 346 and 347. <sup>11</sup> See 305, *e*. <sup>12</sup> See 257 and 482. <sup>13</sup> From *obsērō*. <sup>14</sup> See note 6 and *interfēcit*, l. 11.

## 443. THE GOLDEN APPLES OF THE HESPERIDES

Eurystheus labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs<sup>1</sup> suprā nārrāvimus. Mandāvit enim eī, ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferret.<sup>2</sup> Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam<sup>3</sup> formā<sup>4</sup> praestantissimā, quae  
 5 in terrā longinquā habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa erant. Multī hominēs aurī cupiditāte inductī haec pōma auferre iam anteā cōnāti<sup>5</sup> erant; rēs tamen difficillima<sup>6</sup> erat; namque hortus, in quō pōma erant, mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praetereā dracō  
 10 quīdam, cui<sup>7</sup> centum erant capita, portam hortī diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur, quod Eurystheus Herculi imperāverat, erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs omninō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus ille situs esset.

## 444. ATLAS, WHO UPHELD THE HEAVENS

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōstituit tamen Eurystheō<sup>8</sup> pārēre; et simul āc iūssa ēius accēpit, proficiscī mātūrāvit.<sup>9</sup> Ā multis mercātōribus quaesivit<sup>10</sup> quō in locō Hesperidēs habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperire potuit. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa  
 20 pericula subiit.<sup>11</sup> Tandem, cum in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōsūmpsisset, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī māgnitūdine<sup>12</sup> corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umeris<sup>13</sup> suis sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs  
 25 tantum labōrem māgnopere mirātus<sup>14</sup> post paulō in colloquium

<sup>1</sup> (*those*) *which*.<sup>2</sup> From *auferō*; imperfect subjunctive; see 506.<sup>3</sup> See 335. <sup>4</sup> Limits *nymphae*; see 306 and 307. <sup>5</sup> From *cōnor*. <sup>6</sup> See254. <sup>7</sup> See 114 and 115. <sup>8</sup> See 392 and 393. <sup>9</sup> Compare, for meaning,*contendit*, p. 174, l. 16. <sup>10</sup> From *quaerō*. <sup>11</sup> See 414, *b*. <sup>12</sup> Limits *vir*;compare note 4. <sup>13</sup> See 123 and 124. <sup>14</sup> See 386, *c*.

cum Atlante vēnit et, cum causam itineris docuisset, auxilium ab eō petiit.

#### 445. HERCULES TAKES ATLAS'S PLACE

Atlās autem potuit Herculi<sup>1</sup> māximē prōdesse; ille enim, cum<sup>2</sup> ipse esset pater Hesperidum, bene scīvit quō in locō esset<sup>3</sup> hortus. Postquam igitur audivit quam ob causam 5 Herculēs vēnisset,<sup>3</sup> "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ibō,<sup>4</sup> et filiābus<sup>5</sup> meis persuādēbō, ut pōma suā sponte trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audiret, māgnopere gāvisus<sup>6</sup> est; nōluit enim vim adhibēre, sī rēs aliter fieri posset; cōstituit igitur oblātum<sup>7</sup> auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, 10 dum ipse abesset, Herculēs caelum umeris sustinēret. Hōc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat summī labōris, tōtum pondus caeli continuōs complūris diēs sōlus sustinēbat.

#### 446. RETURN OF ATLAS

Atlās intereā abierat<sup>8</sup> et ad hortum Hesperidum, qui pauca 15 milia passuum<sup>9</sup> aberat, sē quam<sup>10</sup> celerrimē contulerat.<sup>11</sup> Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit et filiās suās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hōc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne (dē quā ante dictum est) hōc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa 20 verba iis<sup>12</sup> persuāsit ut sibi pārērent et pōma ad Herculem rettulit.<sup>13</sup> Herculēs intereā, cum plūris diēs exspectāvisset, neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā

<sup>1</sup> See 346 and 347.      <sup>2</sup> *since*; see 398.      <sup>3</sup> Observe how often the subjunctive in an indirect question (294) should be rendered like an indicative.      <sup>4</sup> See 507.      <sup>5</sup> See 393 and p. 22, foot-note 2.      <sup>6</sup> From *gaudeō*.  
<sup>7</sup> From *offerō*. See 353, 5.      <sup>8</sup> From *abeō*; compare *subiit*, p. 176, l. 20.  
<sup>9</sup> See 279.      <sup>10</sup> *quam celerrimē, as quickly as possible*.      <sup>11</sup> From *cōnferō*.  
<sup>12</sup> See 392 and 393.      <sup>13</sup> From *referō*.

graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vidit redeuntem<sup>1</sup> et mox māgnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō rettulit ad Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit.

## 447.

## NESSUS, THE CENTAUR

5 Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere longum<sup>2</sup> est. Tandem iam aetāte prōvectus<sup>3</sup> Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in<sup>4</sup> mātirimōnium dūxit; post tamen trīs annōs accidit ut puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occiderit.<sup>5</sup> Cum autem mōs esset ut, sī quis hominem  
10 occidisset cāsū, in exsilium iret, Herculēs cum uxōre suā ē finibus ēius civitātis exire mātūrāvit. Dum<sup>6</sup> tamen iter faciunt,<sup>6</sup> ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, quod nūllō ponte iūctum erat, et dum quaerunt quōnam modō flūmen trāiciant, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium  
15 viātōribus obtulit.<sup>7</sup> Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō<sup>8</sup> trāiēcit. At Nessus paulum in aquam prōgressus ad ripam subitō reversus est et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod<sup>9</sup> cum animadvertisset Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus  
20 Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

## 448.

## THE POISONED ROBE

Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus moriēns humi<sup>10</sup> iacēbat; at, nē occāsionem suī<sup>11</sup> ulciscendī dimitteret, ita

<sup>1</sup> See 485. <sup>2</sup> longum est, *it would be tedious*. <sup>3</sup> From prōvehō. <sup>4</sup> in mātirimōnium dūxit, *married*. What literally? <sup>5</sup> Compare, for meaning, necāre, p. 174, l. 22, and interfectī, p. 174, l. 1. <sup>6</sup> Compare dum . . . abscidit, p. 175, l. 10, and note. <sup>7</sup> From offerō; compare oblātum, p. 177, l. 10. <sup>8</sup> From nō; *by swimming*; see 367, 3. <sup>9</sup> Refers to the whole preceding sentence. quod cum, *when this*; the relative after a period must commonly be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, as here, by *this*. <sup>10</sup> See 195, b. <sup>11</sup> suī ulciscendī, *for avenging himself*.

locūtus est: "Tū, Dēianira, verba morientis audi, — sī vis<sup>1</sup> amōrem marītī tuī cōservāre, aliquid sanguinis hūius, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūme ac repōne; tum, sī unquam suspiciō in mentem tuam vēnerit,<sup>2</sup> vestem marītī hōc sanguine inficiēs." Haec locūtus Nessus animam eflāvit; Dēianira 5 autem nihil<sup>3</sup> malī suspicāta,<sup>4</sup> imperāta fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmontorium adpulit<sup>5</sup> et in terram 10 ēgressus āram cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comitem suum domum misit qui<sup>6</sup> vestem albam referret<sup>6</sup>; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs, dum sacrificia faciēbant, vestem albam gerere. At Dēianira verita nē Herculēs amōrem ergā Iolēn habēret vestem, priusquam 15 Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessi infēcit.

## 449.

## THE DEATH OF HERCULES

Herculēs nihil malī<sup>3</sup> suspicātus<sup>4</sup> vestem quam Lichās attulit<sup>7</sup> statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit<sup>8</sup> et quae causa esset<sup>9</sup> ēius rei māgnopere mirābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; 20 illa tamen in corpore haesit<sup>10</sup> neque ūllō modō divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs quasi furōre impulsus<sup>11</sup> in montem Oetam sē contulit<sup>12</sup> et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hōc cum fēcisset, eōs quī circumstābant ōrāvīt ut rogum quam<sup>13</sup> celerrimē accenderent. Omnēs diū 25 recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quidam ad misericordiam

<sup>1</sup> See 505.      <sup>2</sup> *shall have come*; but it is better to translate *comes*.      <sup>3</sup> *nihil malī*, *nothing of evil = no evil*; see 256 and 257.      <sup>4</sup> See 386, *d*. The perfect participle of a deponent verb is sometimes present in sense.

<sup>5</sup> From *adpellō*.      <sup>6</sup> See 419 and 420.      <sup>7</sup> From *adferō*.

<sup>8</sup> From *sentīō*.      <sup>9</sup> See p. 177, l. 5, and note.      <sup>10</sup> From *haereō*.      <sup>11</sup> From *impellō*.      <sup>12</sup> From *cōferō*.      <sup>13</sup> *quam celerrimē*: see p. 177, l. 16, and note 10.

inductus ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbē vėlātus ā Iove in Olympum abreptus<sup>1</sup> est.

### STORIES OF ULYSSES

#### 450. POLYPHEMUS, THE ONE-EYED GIANT

Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmīs contendē-  
 5 rant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem adpulērunt<sup>2</sup>; tum, quod nātū-  
 ram ēius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē  
 sociis<sup>3</sup> in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum  
 ā litore prōgressi ad<sup>4</sup> antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī  
 sēnsērunt<sup>4</sup>; ēius enim introitum arte<sup>5</sup> et manibus mūnitum esse  
 10 animadvertērunt. Mox, etsi intellēgēbant sē<sup>6</sup> nōn sine perī-  
 culō id factūrōs, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod<sup>7</sup> cum fēcissent,  
 māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam.  
 Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum ter-  
 ribilem audīvērunt et oculīs ad portam versis mōnstrum hor-  
 15 ribile vīdērunt, humānā quidem speciē<sup>8</sup> et figurā,<sup>8</sup> sed ingenti  
 māgnitūdine<sup>8</sup> corporis. Cum autem animadvertissent gigan-  
 tem ūnum tantum oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum,  
 intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam  
 iam accēperant.<sup>9</sup>

#### 451. THE GIANT'S SUPPER

20 Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam, quī insulam Siciliam  
 et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus,

<sup>1</sup> From abripiō. <sup>2</sup> See p. 179, l. 10, and note. <sup>3</sup> See 256, b. <sup>4</sup> From sentiō. <sup>5</sup> arte et manibus, by skill and hands = by skilful hands. <sup>6</sup> Subject accusative of factūrōs (esse), themselves to be going to do = that they would do; see 318, 1. <sup>7</sup> Translate as if it were cum quod. See p. 178, l. 18, and note. <sup>8</sup> Descriptive ablatives limiting mōnstrum, translated as genitives; see 306 and 307. <sup>9</sup> accēperant = audīverant.

praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur, simul ac mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēm̄us autem, ita enim gigās appēl- 5  
lātus est, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit<sup>1</sup>; tum cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset,<sup>2</sup> ignem in mediō antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat et cum sēnsisset hominēs<sup>3</sup> in interiōre parte antrī cēlārī, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: “Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?” Tum Ulixēs 10  
respondit sē<sup>4</sup> neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī<sup>5</sup> causā vēnisse, sed ē Trōiā redeuntis<sup>6</sup> vi tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ōrāvit etiām ut sibi sine iniūriā abire liceret. Tum Polyphēm̄us quaesivit<sup>7</sup> ubi esset nāvis quā<sup>8</sup> vectī<sup>9</sup> essent; Ulixēs autem, cum<sup>10</sup> bene intellexeret sibi<sup>11</sup> māximē 15  
praecavendum<sup>11</sup> esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpīs cōniec- tam<sup>12</sup> et omninō perfrāctam esse. Polyphēm̄us autem nullō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū conripuit et membrīs eōrum divolsis<sup>13</sup> carnem<sup>14</sup> dēvorāre coepit.

## 452.

## NO WAY OF ESCAPE

Dum<sup>15</sup> haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occu- 20  
pāvit ut nē<sup>16</sup> vōcem quidem<sup>16</sup> ēdere possent sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem praesentem expectārent. At Polyphēm̄us, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est,

<sup>1</sup> From *agō*. <sup>2</sup> Observe that the subjunctive after *cum* meaning *when* is translated as an indicative. <sup>3</sup> Subject accusative of *cēlārī*; see 318. <sup>4</sup> *that they*, subject accusative of *esse* and *vēnisse*. <sup>5</sup> See 429. <sup>6</sup> Repeat *sē* from the preceding clause: *that they, while returning*; see 507. <sup>7</sup> From *quaerō*. <sup>8</sup> Strictly *by which* (see 124), but translate *in which*. <sup>9</sup> From *vehō*. <sup>10</sup> See 39S. <sup>11</sup> *by himself it must be especially guarded against* = *he must take especial precaution*; see 425, 5, and 426. <sup>12</sup> *had been cast*; supply *esse*. <sup>13</sup> From *divellō*. <sup>14</sup> From *carō*. <sup>15</sup> See p. 172, l. 12, and note. <sup>16</sup> *not even*; always inclosing the emphatic word.

humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vidisset Ulixēs, tantam<sup>1</sup> occāsiōnem rei<sup>2</sup> bene gerendae<sup>2</sup> nōn omittendam arbitrātus, in<sup>3</sup> eō erat ut pectus mōnstri gladiō trānsfigeret. Cum tamen nihil temerē agendum<sup>4</sup> existimāret, cōstituit  
 5 explōrāre, antequam hōc faceret, quā ratiōne ex antrō ēvādere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset, quō<sup>5</sup> introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil<sup>6</sup> sibi prōfutūrum intellēxit, sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset.<sup>7</sup> Tanta enim erat ēius saxī māgnitūdō, ut nē<sup>8</sup> ā decem quīdem<sup>8</sup> hominibus āmovērī posset. Quae<sup>9</sup> cum  
 10 ita essent,<sup>9</sup> Ulixēs hōc<sup>10</sup> dēstitit cōnātū et ad sociōs rediit; quī, cum intellēxissent quō in locō<sup>11</sup> rēs essent, nullā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen, nē<sup>12</sup> animōs dēmitterent, vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvīt sē<sup>13</sup> iam antea ē multis et māgnis periculis  
 15 ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrimine dii auxilium adlātūrī<sup>14</sup> essent.

## 453.

## A PLAN FOR VENGEANCE

Ortā<sup>15</sup> lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem<sup>16</sup> quod hesternō diē fēcīt; correptis<sup>17</sup> enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvīt. Tum, cum saxum

<sup>1</sup> tantam . . . arbitrātus, *thinking that so good a chance . . . ought not to be let slip*; occāsiōnem is subject accusative of omittendam (esse); see 424 and 425, b. <sup>2</sup> Compare 362, 2. <sup>3</sup> in eō erat ut, *was in that (state) that = was on the point of*. <sup>4</sup> ought to be done: supply esse, as with omittendam, above. Very often in forms of the infinitive made up of a participle and esse the latter is omitted. <sup>5</sup> by which. <sup>6</sup> nihil sibi prōfutūrum, *it would be no advantage to them*; what literally? Again esse is omitted. <sup>7</sup> should kill, not had killed. <sup>8</sup> not even; see p. 181, l. 21, and note. <sup>9</sup> since these things were so = such being the case. <sup>10</sup> With cōnātū. <sup>11</sup> state, not place. <sup>12</sup> not to lose heart; the clause depends upon hortātus est. <sup>13</sup> that they; go on, making a metaphorically to the end, and the meaning will be clear. <sup>14</sup> From adferō. <sup>15</sup> ortā lūce = primā lūce; ortā from orior; what literally? <sup>16</sup> idem quod: see 332. <sup>17</sup> With viris.



āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum vidērent Graeci, māgnam<sup>1</sup> in spem vērunt sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs.<sup>2</sup> Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsi sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt,<sup>3</sup> saxum in locum restituit. Reliqui omni spē salutis dēpositā lāmentis lacrimisque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō qui, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, vir māgni fuit cōsili, etsi bene intellegēbat rem in discrimine esse, nōndum omninō dēspērābat. Tandem postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hōc cēpit cōsiliū. E lignis quae in antrō reposita<sup>4</sup> sunt, pālum māgnū dēlēgit; hunc summā<sup>5</sup> cum diligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociis quid fieri vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmi exspectābat.

#### 454. POLYPHEMUS THRICE DRAINS A WINE-BOWL

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō<sup>6</sup> antea cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vinī prōmpsit,<sup>7</sup> quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōsuēvit,<sup>8</sup> sēcūm<sup>9</sup> attulerat,<sup>10</sup> et, postquam māgnam crātēram vinō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum<sup>11</sup> prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, qui numquam antea vinum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.<sup>12</sup> Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram repleri iubēret. Tum cum quaesivisset quō nōmine<sup>13</sup> Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem<sup>14</sup> appellāri. Quod cum audivisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiā prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His<sup>15</sup> dictis, cibō vinōque gravātus recubuit<sup>16</sup> et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociis<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> māgnam . . . vērunt, *had great hopes*. <sup>2</sup> From *evādō*; supply *esse*; see p. 182, note 4. <sup>3</sup> From *exeō*. Observe in this paragraph three examples of the perfect after *postquam*; see p. 175, note 6. <sup>4</sup> From *repōnō*. <sup>5</sup> *as*; compare *idem quod*, p. 182, note 16. <sup>6</sup> From *prōmō*. <sup>7</sup> From *cōsuēscō*; translate as present. <sup>8</sup> From *adferō*. <sup>9</sup> See 367, 2. <sup>10</sup> From *hauriō*. <sup>11</sup> *Noman*. <sup>12</sup> *these (things) having been said = this said*. <sup>13</sup> From *recumbō*.

convocātis, “Habēmus,” inquit, “quam<sup>1</sup> petiimus facultātem: nē<sup>2</sup> igitur tantam occāsiōnem rei<sup>3</sup> bene gerendae omittāmus.”

## 455.

## NOMAN

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā,<sup>4</sup> postquam extrēmum<sup>5</sup> pālum igni  
 5 calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trāns-  
 fōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in diversās spēluncae partis sē abdi-  
 dērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre,<sup>6</sup> quod<sup>7</sup> necesse fuit, ē  
 somnō excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit<sup>8</sup> et dum per  
 spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur. Cum<sup>9</sup> tamen  
 10 iam omnīnō caecus esset, nūllō modō hōc efficere potuit.  
 Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēlun-  
 cam convēnērunt et ad introitum adstantēs, quid<sup>10</sup> Polyphēmus  
 ageret quaesivērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem  
 sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter volnerātum esse et  
 15 māgnō dolōre adfici.<sup>11</sup> Cum tamen ceterī quaesivissent quis eī  
 vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus  
 auditis, ūnus ē Cyclōpibus, “At si nēmō,” inquit, “tē volnerā-  
 vit, haud dubium est quin cōnsiliō<sup>12</sup> deōrum, quibus resi-  
 20istere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō adficiāris.”  
 His dictis, abiērunt Cyclōpēs eum in insāniam incidisse  
 arbitrātī.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> quam petiimus facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus. <sup>2</sup> nē . . . omittāmus, *let us not let slip*, hortatory subjunctive; see 339, *a*, and 340, *a*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare p. 182, l. 2, and note 2. <sup>4</sup> Translate the ablative absolute here and generally by a clause; see 358, *a*. <sup>5</sup> extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pālī; see also 489.

<sup>6</sup> Limits excitātus. <sup>7</sup> which was necessary = necessarily; the reference is to what follows. <sup>8</sup> From tollō. <sup>9</sup> since.

<sup>10</sup> Literally, *what Polyphemus was doing*; translate *what ailed Polyphemus*; the clause depends on the next word. <sup>11</sup> Passive infinitive present from adficiō.

<sup>12</sup> Depends on adficiāris, *by the design . . . you are afflicted*.

<sup>13</sup> Equivalent to arbitrantēs; compare suspicāta, p. 179, l. 6, and note 4. Find in this anecdote five ablatives absolute and two indirect questions.

## 456.

## THE ESCAPE

At Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit, furōre atque  
 āmentiā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum  
 portam invēnisset, saxum quō obstrūcta<sup>1</sup> erat amōvit, ut pecus  
 ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sedit et ut<sup>2</sup> quaeque  
 ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eius manibus tractābat, nē viri  
 inter ovis exire possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs,  
 hōc<sup>3</sup> iniit cōsiliū; bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis  
 in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Primum trīs quās vidit  
 pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter<sup>4</sup> sē viminibus  
 cōnexīs,<sup>5</sup> ūnum sociōrum ventribus eārum ita subiēcit ut  
 omninō latēret: deinde ovis<sup>6</sup> hominem sēcum ferentis ad por-  
 tam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore<sup>7</sup> suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus  
 enim, postquam manūs tergīs eārum imposuit, ovis praeterire  
 passus<sup>8</sup> est. Ulixēs, ubi rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse vidit, omnis  
 suōs sociōs ex ōrdine eōdem modō ēmisit; quō factō, ipse  
 ultimus ēvāsīt.

## 457.

## OUT OF DANGER

Hīs rēbus ita cōfectis, Ulixēs cum sociīs māximē veritus<sup>9</sup>  
 nē Polyphēmus fraudem sentīret, quam<sup>10</sup> celerrimē ad litus  
 contendit. Quō<sup>11</sup> cum vēnissent, ab iis qui nāvi<sup>12</sup> praesidiō  
 relictī erant, māgnā<sup>13</sup> cum laetitiā accepti sunt. Hī enim, cum<sup>14</sup>  
 animīs anxiīs iam trīs diēs reditum eōrum in<sup>15</sup> hōrās exspectā-  
 vissent, eōs<sup>16</sup> in pericūlum grave incidisse,<sup>16</sup> id<sup>17</sup> quod erat,

<sup>1</sup> The subject is *porta* understood. <sup>2</sup> Translate *ut* as or *when* when used with the indicative. <sup>3</sup> With *cōsiliū*. Compare for order *hōc dēstitit cōnātū*, p. 182, l. 10. <sup>4</sup> *inter sē*, together. <sup>5</sup> From *cōnectō*. <sup>6</sup> Object of *ēgit*, from *agō*. <sup>7</sup> *fore* = *futūrum esse*. <sup>8</sup> From *patior*. <sup>9</sup> See p. 184, l. 21, and note. <sup>10</sup> See p. 179, l. 25, and note. <sup>11</sup> *thither*; begin with *cum*; compare p. 178, note 9. <sup>12</sup> See 348, *a*. <sup>13</sup> Compare p. 37, foot-note. <sup>14</sup> *since*. <sup>15</sup> *in hōrās*, hourly. <sup>16</sup> *that they had fallen*; depends on *suspiciātī* following. <sup>17</sup> *id quod erat*, *that which was* = *as was true*.

suspiciātī, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus sī in eō locō manēret, quam celerrimē proficisci cōstituit. Iussit igitur omnis nāvem cōscendere et ancoris sublātis<sup>1</sup> paulum ā litore in altum prō-  
 5 vectus est. Tum māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: “Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī<sup>2</sup> spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī.” Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus irā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā litore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns manū conreptum  
 10 in eam partem coniēcit, unde vōcem venire sēnsit. Graeci autem, etsī minimum<sup>3</sup> āfuit quīn submergerentur,<sup>3</sup> nullō acceptō damnō cursum tenuērunt.

## FABLES

### 458. CIRCUMSTANCES ALTER CASES

Haedus stāns in tēctō domūs<sup>4</sup> lupō<sup>5</sup> praetereuntī maledixit. Cui lupus, “Nōn tū,” inquit,<sup>6</sup> “sed tēctum mihi maledixit.”  
 15 Saepe locus et tempus timidōs hominēs audācis reddit.<sup>7</sup>

### 459. THE SENSIBLE GOAT

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōspicātus,<sup>8</sup> “Cūr nōn,” inquit, “relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum offerunt?” Cui respondit capra: “Mihi<sup>9</sup> nōn est in animō<sup>9</sup> dulcia<sup>10</sup> tūtis<sup>11</sup>  
 20 praepōnere.”

<sup>1</sup> From tollō.    <sup>2</sup> Genitive of *hospitium*.    <sup>3</sup> *very little was it off but that they should be drowned = they came very near being drowned.*    <sup>4</sup> See 482.

<sup>5</sup> *lupō praetereuntī maledixit, to a wolf passing by said ill = reviled a wolf who was passing by; see 485.*    <sup>6</sup> See 354.    <sup>7</sup> *make; the singular is used in Latin because locus et tempus are thought of as one thing.*

<sup>8</sup> Equivalent to *vidēns*; see p. 184, l. 21, and note.    <sup>9</sup> *to me it is not in mind = I have no intention.*    <sup>10</sup> *dulcia tūtis praepōnere, to put sweet things before safe things = to prefer what is pleasant to what is safe.*    <sup>11</sup> See 347.

## 460. THE DOG IN THE MANGER

Canis iacēbat<sup>1</sup> in praesaepi bovēsque lātrandō<sup>2</sup> ā pābulō arcēbat.<sup>1</sup> Cui ūnus boum,<sup>3</sup> “Quanta ista,”<sup>4</sup> inquit, “invidia est, quod<sup>5</sup> nōn pateris<sup>6</sup> ut eō cibō<sup>7</sup> vescāmur quem tū ipse capere nec velīs<sup>8</sup> nec possis!”

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

5

## 461. THE GOLDEN EGG

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae eī cotidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam<sup>9</sup> aurī massam intus cēlāre et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in eā repperit,<sup>10</sup> nisi quod in aliīs gallinīs reperiri solet. Itaque dum<sup>11</sup> māiōribus dīvitiīs<sup>12</sup> inhiat, etiam minōrēs<sup>13</sup> perdidit.

10

## 462. UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex,<sup>14</sup> cum mortem sibi<sup>15</sup> adpropinquāre sentiret, filiōs convocāvit, quōs interdum discordāre nōverat,<sup>16</sup> et fascem virgulārum adferri iubet. Quibus<sup>17</sup> adlātīs, filiōs hortātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulās virgās; iisque celeriter frāctīs,<sup>18</sup> 15 docuit filiōs, quam firma rēs esset<sup>19</sup> concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

<sup>1</sup> Why the imperfect rather than the perfect? See 132, *b*. <sup>2</sup> Gerund; see 365 and 367, 3. <sup>3</sup> See 482. <sup>4</sup> See 331, *b*. <sup>5</sup> *in that (because)*.

<sup>6</sup> From *patior*. <sup>7</sup> See 388. <sup>8</sup> See 505. <sup>9</sup> *illam = illam gallinam*, subject accusative of *cēlāre*, *it to conceal = that it concealed*.

<sup>10</sup> From *reperiō*. <sup>11</sup> *dum . . . inhiat*, *while she was desiring*. <sup>12</sup> See 393.

<sup>13</sup> Supply the Latin noun in the right form from the preceding clause. <sup>14</sup> See 482. <sup>15</sup> May be left untranslated. <sup>16</sup> From *nōscō*.

<sup>17</sup> *quibus adlātīs*, *when these had been brought*. <sup>18</sup> From *frangō*. <sup>19</sup> *is*, not *was*; the imperfect is required because of the perfect *docuit*; see 297 and p. 177, l. 5, and note.

## 463. KING LOG AND KING SNAKE

Rānae aliquandō rēgem sibi ā Iove petiisse dīcuntur. Quārum<sup>1</sup> ille precibus exōrātus trabem ingentem in lacum dēiēcit. Rānae sonitū perterritae primum refūgēre,<sup>2</sup> deinde vērō trabem in aquā nātantem cōspicātae<sup>3</sup> māgnō cum con-  
5 temptū in eā cōsēdērunt<sup>4</sup> aliumque<sup>5</sup> sibi novis clāmōribus rēgem expetivērunt. Tum Iuppiter, eārum<sup>6</sup> stultitiam ut pūniret, hydrum illis mīsīt, ā<sup>7</sup> quō cum plūrimae captae<sup>8</sup> perirent, sērō eās<sup>9</sup> stolidārum precum paenituit.

## 464. THE WOLF AND THE LAMB

Lupus et āgnus sitientēs ad eundem rīvum vēnerant. Superior<sup>10</sup> lupus, longē inferior<sup>10</sup> āgnus stābat. Tunc improbus latrō iūrgī causam quaerēs: “Cūr,” inquit, “bibentī<sup>11</sup> mihi turbulentam reddidistī aquam?” Āgnus timēns: “Quōmodo possum?” inquit, “ā tē enim aqua ad mē dēcurrit.” Ille vērītate reī repulsus<sup>12</sup>: “Hūius<sup>13</sup> annī initiō mihi<sup>14</sup> maledix-  
15 istī.” “Tum,” inquit āgnus, “equidem nātus<sup>15</sup> nōndum eram.” “Herclē etiam,” respondet lupus, “pater tuus contumēliōsē quondam dixit dē aviā meā.” Atque ita āgnum dilaniat.

## 465. THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iūxerant leō, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā<sup>16</sup> autem quam cēperant in quattuor partis dīvisā, leō, “Prima”

<sup>1</sup> quārum (rānārum) precibus, *by the prayers of these = by their prayers.*

<sup>2</sup> For the more common *refūgērunt.* <sup>3</sup> See p. 184, l. 21, and note.

<sup>4</sup> From *cōsīdō.* <sup>5</sup> With *rēgem*; remember that an adjective is often separated from its noun by one or more words. <sup>6</sup> Order—*ut eārum stultitiam.*

<sup>7</sup> *ā quō cum, and when by him.* <sup>8</sup> *captae perirent*: see 353, 6. <sup>9</sup> *eās . . . paenituit, it repented them = they repented.* <sup>10</sup> See 489.

<sup>11</sup> Present participle, from *bibō.* <sup>12</sup> From *repellō.* <sup>13</sup> *hūius annī initiō = initiō hūius annī.* <sup>14</sup> *mihi maledixistī*: see p. 186, l. 13, and note 4.

<sup>15</sup> From *nāscor.* <sup>16</sup> *praedā*: with *dīvisā*, from *dīvidō*; see 358.

ait, "Mea est; debetur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et<sup>1</sup> secundam, quam meretur robur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi egregius labor meus. Quartam<sup>2</sup> qui sibi adrogare voluerit, is<sup>3</sup> sciat se<sup>4</sup> habiturum me inimicum sibi." Quid facerent<sup>5</sup> imbēcillēs bēstiae? aut quae<sup>6</sup> sibi leōnem infestum habere 5  
vellet?

## 466.

## BELLING THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō habuerunt cōsiliū, quō modō ā fēle cavērent. Multis<sup>7</sup> aliis prōpositis, omnibus<sup>8</sup> placuit, ut eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sic enim ipsōs<sup>9</sup> sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quaererētur<sup>10</sup> quī 10  
fēli tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō<sup>11</sup> plūrimōs<sup>12</sup> esse audācis, sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

## 467.

## THE DEER AND THE VINE

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrum ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vitem sē condidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs 15  
sequentēs longius<sup>13</sup> prōgrediuntur. Cerva autem nōn<sup>14</sup> iam timēns vēnātōrēs incipiēbat folia vitis carpere. Folia agitantur, quod vident vēnātōrēs et statim revertuntur. Mox sentiunt ibi bēstiam aliquam sub foliis latere et sagittis cervam volnerant. Brevi tempore misera bēstia volneribus<sup>15</sup> moritur, 20

<sup>1</sup> also. <sup>2</sup> Order — is quī voluerit adrogāre quartam sibi sciat. <sup>3</sup> is sciat, let him know; see 339, a. <sup>4</sup> se habiturum: supply esse; himself to be about to have = that he will have. <sup>5</sup> could do. <sup>6</sup> Supply bēstia. <sup>7</sup> multis aliis prōpositis, after many other proposals had been made. What literally? <sup>8</sup> omnibus placuit, all resolved. What literally? <sup>9</sup> The subject accusative of posse. The accusative and infinitive are used as if putāvērunt preceded. <sup>10</sup> the question was raised; see 418. What literally? <sup>11</sup> Gerund; see 365. <sup>12</sup> plūrimōs esse: do not translate many to be, but that many are. <sup>13</sup> too far; see 255, a. <sup>14</sup> nōn iam: see 327. <sup>15</sup> of wounds; see 165.

sed moriēns dicit: "Iūstās dō poenās, nam huic vitī, quae mē tegēbat, nocēre<sup>1</sup> nōn dēbui."

### STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

#### 468. THE BRAVE DEED OF HORATIUS COCLES (B.C. 508?)

Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum,<sup>2</sup> ad<sup>3</sup> restituendōs Tarquiniōs cum infēstō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Primō impetū Iāniculum cēpit.  
 5 Nōn umquam aliās<sup>4</sup> ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsīt; ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia<sup>5</sup> urbis pars mūrīs,<sup>6</sup> alia Tiberī obiectō<sup>7</sup> tūta vidēbātur. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit,<sup>8</sup> nisi ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Cocles, illo cōgnōmine appellātus, quod in aliō proeliō  
 10 oculum āmiserat.<sup>9</sup> Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā,<sup>10</sup> aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō interrumperētur.<sup>11</sup> Ipsa audācia obstupēfēcīt hostis; ponte rescissō<sup>12</sup> armātus in Tiberim dēsiliuit et multis<sup>13</sup> superincidentibus tēlis incolumis ad suōs trānāvīt. Grāta tantā virtūte civitās fuit; eī tantum  
 15 agrī pūblicē datum est, quantum unō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque eī in Comitio posita.<sup>14</sup>

#### 469. THE FORTITUDE OF MUCIUS

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam<sup>15</sup> trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal  
 20

<sup>1</sup> nocēre nōn dēbui, *I ought not to have injured.*    <sup>2</sup> Look on a classical map of Italy for the country of Etruria (modern Tuscany) north of Rome.

<sup>3</sup> See 429.    <sup>4</sup> Adverb.    <sup>5</sup> alia . . . alia: see 313.    <sup>6</sup> With tūta; *by reason of its walls.*    <sup>7</sup> *by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between.*

<sup>8</sup> For *dedisset*, *would have allowed a passage (iter).*    <sup>9</sup> From *āmittō*.

<sup>10</sup> That is, by Cocles.    <sup>11</sup> That is, by the Romans.    <sup>12</sup> From *rescindō*.

<sup>13</sup> *though many*, etc.    <sup>14</sup> Supply *est*.    <sup>15</sup> *veniam trānsfugiendī, favor of deserting = permission to desert.*



cōstitit. Stipendium tunc forte militibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī<sup>1</sup> ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occidit. Adprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus<sup>2</sup> dextram accēnsō<sup>3</sup> ad sacrificium foculō<sup>4</sup> iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns quod in caede peccāset.<sup>5</sup> Attonitus mirāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs<sup>6</sup> suī similis<sup>7</sup> adversus eum coniūrāsse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptis obsidibus dēposuit.

#### 470. CLOELIA, THE HOSTAGE, ESCAPES

Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēpit. Cum<sup>8</sup> ēius castra haud procul ab ripā Tiberis locāta essent, Cloelia dēceptis custōdibus noctū castris ēgressa,<sup>9</sup> equō, quem fors dederat, adreptō<sup>10</sup> Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod<sup>11</sup> ubi rēgī nūntiātum est, primō ille incēnsus irā Rōmam lēgātōs misit ad Cloeliam obsidem reposedam. Rōmānī eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admirātus<sup>13</sup> eam laudāvit āc parte obsidum dōnātūrum<sup>14</sup> sē dixit, permīsitque ut ipsa quōs vellet legeret. Prōductis obsidibus Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriāe obnoxiam sciēbat et cum iis in patriam rediit.<sup>15</sup> Rōmānī novam<sup>16</sup> in fēminā virtūtem<sup>16</sup> novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērē.<sup>17</sup> In summā<sup>18</sup> Viā Sacrā<sup>19</sup> fuit posita virgō insidēns equō.

<sup>1</sup> parī . . . ōrnātū: with scriba; see 307.    <sup>2</sup> From pertrahō.    <sup>3</sup> From accendō: order — foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium.    <sup>4</sup> See 347.    <sup>5</sup> Full form peccāvisset.    <sup>6</sup> Subject accusative of coniūrāsse.    <sup>7</sup> suī: the dative might have been expected after similis.    <sup>8</sup> since.    <sup>9</sup> From ēgredior, active in meaning; see 386, b.    <sup>10</sup> equō . . . adreptō, *seizing a horse*; adreptō from adripiō.    <sup>11</sup> quod ubi: translate as *if ubi quod, and when . . . this*.    <sup>12</sup> ad . . . reposedam: might have been ut . . . reposceret; see 429.    <sup>13</sup> See note 9 on ēgressa.    <sup>14</sup> dōnātūrum sē = sē dōnātūrum esse, *that he would give*.    <sup>15</sup> From redeō.    <sup>16</sup> See p. 188, l. 5, and note 5.    <sup>17</sup> For the more common dōnāvērunt, *rewarded . . . with*; it takes the accusative, virtūtem, and the ablative, genere.    <sup>18</sup> From superus (489), *highest part of*.    <sup>19</sup> Viā Sacrā: a street running through the Forum up to the Capitol.

## 471. CAIUS MARCIUS CORIOLANUS (B.C. 493-488?)

C. Mārcius gentis patriciae captis<sup>1</sup> Coriolis, urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre<sup>2</sup> orbātus sub mātris tūtēlā adolēvit.<sup>3</sup> Cum prīma<sup>4</sup> stīpendia facere coepisset adulēscēns,<sup>5</sup> ē multis proeliis, quibus interfuit, numquam  
 5 rediit nisi corōnā aliōve<sup>6</sup> militārī praemiō dōnātus. In omnī vitae ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātri placēret; cumque illa audiret filium<sup>7</sup> laudārī aut corōnā dōnārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa putābat. Cōnsul factus gravi<sup>8</sup> annōnā advectum<sup>9</sup> ē Siciliā frūmentum māgnō pretiō  
 10 dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditionēs coleret. Quā dē causā damnātus ad Volscōs infēstōs tunc Rōmānis cōnfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscis factus, castris ad quartum ab urbe lapidem positis, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

15 Missi sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum orātōrēs dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsū rettulērunt.<sup>10</sup> Iterum deinde iidem missi nē<sup>11</sup> in castra quidem<sup>11</sup> recepti sunt. Sacerdōtēs quoque suis infulis vēlātī ad eum ivērunt supplicēs, nec magis<sup>12</sup> animum eius flēxērunt.<sup>13</sup> Stupēbat senātus, trepidābat populus, viri pariter  
 20 ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentābantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolāni māter, et Volumnia uxor, duōs parvōs filiōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adspēxit Coriolānus: “Ō patria,” inquit, “vīcisti iram meam admōtis<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> captis Coriolis, because of the capture of Corioli.      <sup>2</sup> See 231 and 232.

<sup>3</sup> From adolēscō.      <sup>4</sup> prīma . . . coepisset, had begun to earn first wages (as a soldier) = had begun his first military service.      <sup>5</sup> in his youth.

<sup>6</sup> aliōve = vel aliō.      <sup>7</sup> Subject accusative of laudārī and dōnārī.      <sup>8</sup> gravī annōnā, in a time of extreme scarcity.      <sup>9</sup> Agrees with frūmentum, which is the subject accusative of dandum (esse). Translate had (cūrāvit) corn, brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price.      <sup>10</sup> From referō.

<sup>11</sup> See p. 181, l. 21, and note.      <sup>12</sup> nec magis, but no more.

<sup>13</sup> From flectō.      <sup>14</sup> admōtis . . . precibus, by employing the prayers.

mātris meae precibus, cui<sup>1</sup> tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō.” Complexus<sup>2</sup> inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit. Coriolānus postea ā Volscis ut prōditor occisus<sup>3</sup> dicitur.

#### 472. TITUS QUINCTIUS CINCINNATUS (B.C. 458)

I. Aequi<sup>4</sup> cōsulem Minūcium atque exercitum eius cir- 5  
cumsessōs tenēbant. Id ubi Rōmae nūntiātum est, tantus<sup>5</sup>  
pavor, tanta trepidātiō fuit, quanta<sup>5</sup> si urbem ipsam, nōn cas-  
tra hostēs obsidērent: cum autem in alterō cōsule parum  
esse praesidi<sup>6</sup> vidērētur, dictātōrem<sup>7</sup> dīci placuit, qui<sup>8</sup> rem<sup>9</sup>  
adflīctam restitueret. T. Quīctius Cincinnātus omnium cōn- 10  
sēnsū dictātōr est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī,  
trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor iūgerum<sup>10</sup> colēbat agrum. Ad<sup>11</sup>  
quem missi lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte<sup>12</sup>  
datā invicem reddītāque Cincinnātus togam properē ē tugu-  
riō prōferre uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs mandāta togā- 15  
tus audiret.

II. Postquam, abstersō<sup>13</sup> pulvere āc sūdōre, togā indūtus  
prōcessit Cincinnātus, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōn-  
salūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit,<sup>14</sup> expōnunt. Cin-  
cinnātus igitur Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus lictōribus 20  
domum dēductus est. Posterō diē profectus, Minūciō obsi-

<sup>1</sup> for whose sake.    <sup>2</sup> From *complector*.    <sup>3</sup> Supply *esse*.    <sup>4</sup> Look on

a classical map for the country of the *Aequi*, a short distance east of Rome.

<sup>5</sup> *tantus . . . quanta, so great . . . how great = as great as.*    <sup>6</sup> Depends

on *parum*; see 256 and 257.    <sup>7</sup> *dictātōrem dīci placuit, it pleased a dictator*

*to be appointed = it was resolved that a dictator be appointed.*    <sup>8</sup> *quī . . .*

*restitueret*: see 419 and 420.    <sup>9</sup> *rem adflīctam, the suffering state.*    <sup>10</sup> De-

pends on *agrum*. For the form *iūgerum*, see Vocabulary.    <sup>11</sup> *ad . . .*

*lēgātī, the messengers who were sent to him.*    <sup>12</sup> *salūte . . . reddītā, when*

*they had exchanged greetings.* What literally?    <sup>13</sup> From *abstergeō*.    <sup>14</sup> See

p. 177, l. 5, and note.

diōne liberātō, victōs<sup>1</sup> hostis sub iugum<sup>2</sup> mīsit. Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ducti<sup>3</sup> ante currum ducēs hostium, militāria signa praelāta<sup>4</sup>; secūtus est exercitus praedā onustus; epulae instrūctae sunt ante omnium domōs. Cincin-  
 5 nātus sextō decimō die<sup>5</sup> dictātūrā,<sup>6</sup> quam in<sup>7</sup> sex mēnsis accēperat, sē abdicāvit et ad bovēs rediit triumphālis agricola.

#### 473. TITUS MANLIUS TORQUATUS (B.C. 361)

I. T. Mānlius ob ingenī et linguae tarditātem ā patre rū<sup>8</sup> relēgātus erat. Quī cum audīvisset patrī<sup>9</sup> diem dictam esse ā Pompōniō, tribūnō plēbis, cēpit cōnsilium, rudis quidem et  
 10 agrestis animī, sed pietāte<sup>10</sup> laudābile. Cultrō succinctus<sup>11</sup> māne in urbem atque ā portā cōnfestim ad Pompōnium pergit. Intrōductus cultrum stringit et super lectum Pompōnī stāns sē<sup>12</sup> eum trānsfixūrum minātur, nisi ab inceptā accūsātiōne dēsistat. Pavidus tribūnus, quippe<sup>13</sup> quī cerneret ferrum  
 15 ante oculōs micāre, accūsātiōnem dimisit. Ea rēs adulēscētī honōri<sup>14</sup> fuit, quod acerbitās paterna animum ēius ā pietāte nōn āvertisset ideōque eōdem annō tribūnus militum factus est.

II. Cum postea Gallī ad tertium lapidem trāns Aniēnem<sup>15</sup> fluvium castra posuissent,<sup>16</sup> exercitus Rōmānus ab urbe profectus est et in citeriōre ripā fluvī cōnstitit. Pōns in mediō erat; tunc Gallus eximiā corporis māgnitūdine,<sup>17</sup> in vacuum

<sup>1</sup> For translation, compare 353, 6. <sup>2</sup> The *yoke*, symbolical of servitude, consisted of two spears set upright and a third laid across them. <sup>3</sup> Supply *sunt*. <sup>4</sup> From *praeferō*; supply *sunt*. <sup>5</sup> *after sixteen days*; take with *abdicāvit*; see 187 and 188. <sup>6</sup> Depends on *abdicāvit*; see 232. <sup>7</sup> *for*. <sup>8</sup> See 196, 2, and 197, 2. <sup>9</sup> *patrī . . . esse, that a day had been appointed for his father's trial (for his father), that is, for banishing his son.* <sup>10</sup> *in point of filial affection*; see 374. <sup>11</sup> *girding himself*. <sup>12</sup> Subject accusative of *trānsfixūrum* (*esse*), and refers to *Mānlius*, subject of *minātur*. <sup>13</sup> *quippe quī, since he*. <sup>14</sup> See 348, 2, and *a*. <sup>15</sup> The Anio empties into the Tiber three miles above Rome. <sup>16</sup> From *pōnō*. <sup>17</sup> *Limits Gallus*. See 306 and 307.

pontem prōcessit et quam<sup>1</sup> māximā vōce potuit,<sup>1</sup> “Quem<sup>2</sup> nunc,” inquit, “Rōma fortissimum habet, is prōcēdat<sup>2</sup> ad pūgnam, ut ēventus certāminis nostrī ostendat, utra gēns bellō sit<sup>3</sup> melior.” Diū inter primōrēs iuvenum Rōmānōrum silentium fuit. Tum Titus Mānlius ex statiōne ad imperā- 5  
tōrem pergīt: “Iniūssū tuō,” inquit, “imperātor, extrā ōrdi-  
nem numquam pūgnāverim,<sup>4</sup> nōn sī certam victōriam videam. Sī tū permittis, volō isti bēluæ ostendere mē ex eā familiā  
ortum<sup>5</sup> esse, quæ Gallōrum agmen ex rūpe Tarpēiā dēiēcit.” Cui imperātor: “Mācte<sup>6</sup> virtute,” inquit, “Tite Mānlī, estō: 10  
perge et nōmen Rōmānum invictum praestā.”

III. Armant deinde iuvenem aequālēs; scūtum capit, Hispānō cingitur<sup>7</sup> gladiō ad propiōrem pūgnam habili. Exspec-  
tābat eum Gallus stolidē laetus et linguam ab inrisū exserēns. Ubi cōstitēre inter duās aciēs, Gallus ēnsem cum ingenti 15  
sonitū in arma Mānlī dēiēcit. Mānlius vērō insinuāvit sēsē  
inter corpus et arma Gallī atque ūnō et alterō ictū ventrem  
trānsfōdit; iacenti<sup>8</sup> torquem dētrāxit, quem cruōre respersum<sup>9</sup>  
collō circumdedit suō. Dēfixerat pavor cum admirātiōne Gal-  
lōs. Rōmānī alacrēs obviam militi suō prōgrediuntur et grā- 20  
tulantēs laudantēsque ad imperātōrem perdūcunt. Mānlius  
inde Torquātī nōmen accēpit.

IV. Idem Mānlius, postea cōsul factus, bellō Latinō, ut  
disciplinam militārem restitueret, ēdixit nē<sup>10</sup> quis extrā ōrdi-  
nem pūgnāret. Forte filius eius accessit prope statiōnem 25  
hostium; is qui Latinō equitātū praeerat, ubi cōsulis filium

<sup>1</sup> quam . . . potuit, *in the loudest voice possible*. What literally?

<sup>2</sup> quem . . . prōcēdat: translate as if it stood: is fortissimus prōcēdat quem Rōma habet; on prōcēdat, see 340, a (1). <sup>3</sup> See sit, p. 193, l. 19, and note.

<sup>4</sup> Translate as if it were pūgnem; see 404, 4, and 406. <sup>5</sup> From orior.

<sup>6</sup> mācte . . . estō, *be honored on account of thy valor = good for your pluck!* <sup>7</sup> girds himself. Compare succinctus, p. 194, l. 10, and note 11.

<sup>8</sup> from him as he was lying prostrate; present participle, dative singular, from iaciō. <sup>9</sup> From respersō. <sup>10</sup> nē quis, *that no one*: after sī, nisi, nē, and num, forms of quis mean any, any one, anything.

agnōvit,<sup>1</sup> "Visne," inquit, "congregedī mēcum, ut singulāris certāminis ēventū cernatur, quantum eques Latinus Rōmānō praestet?" Mōvit<sup>2</sup> ferōcem animum iuvenis seu ira seu dē-trectandī<sup>3</sup> certāminis pudor. Oblitus<sup>4</sup> itaque imperī paternī  
 5 in certāmen ruit et Latinum ex equō excussum<sup>5</sup> trānsfixit, spoliisque lēctis,<sup>6</sup> in castra ad patrem vēnit. Extemplō filium āversātus cōsul militēs classicō advocat; quī<sup>7</sup> postquam frequentēs<sup>8</sup> convēnere: "Quandōquidem," inquit, "tū, fili, contrā imperium cōsulis pūgnāstī, oportet<sup>9</sup> disciplinam poenā  
 10 tuā restituās. Triste exemplum sed in<sup>10</sup> posterum salūbre iuventūti eris. I,<sup>11</sup> lictor, dēligā ad pālum." Metū omnēs obstupuere; sed postquam, cervice caesā, fūsus est cruor, in questūs et lāmenta ērūpēre. Mānliō<sup>12</sup> Rōmam redeuntī seniōrēs tantum<sup>13</sup> obviam exiērunt; iuventus et tunc eum et  
 15 omni deinde vitā exsecrāta est.

#### 474. MARCUS VALERIUS CORVUS (B.C. 349)

Bellō Gallicō cum Rōmānī in statiōnibus quiētī<sup>14</sup> tempus tererent,<sup>15</sup> Gallus quīdam māgnitūdine<sup>16</sup> atque armis insīgnis ante aliōs prōcessit quatiēnsque scūtum hastā, cum silentium fēcisset, ūnum ē Rōmānis per interpretem prōvocāvit,  
 20 qui<sup>17</sup> sēcum ferrō dēcerneret. Erat Mārcus Valerius tribūnus militum, adulēscēns, quī prius sciscitātus cōsulis voluntātem in medium armātus prōcessit. Tunc rēs visū<sup>18</sup> mirābilis accidisse fertur; nam cum iam manum cōnsereret Valerius, repente in galeā eius corvus cōnsēdit in hostem versus. Āles nōn

<sup>1</sup> From agnōscō. <sup>2</sup> The subjects are ira and pudor. <sup>3</sup> Compare 362, 2.  
<sup>4</sup> From oblivīscor. <sup>5</sup> excussum transfīxit: translate by two verbs; compare 353, 6. <sup>6</sup> From legō. <sup>7</sup> quī postquam, and after they. <sup>8</sup> in great numbers. <sup>9</sup> oportet . . . restituās = oportet ut restituās. <sup>10</sup> in posterum, for the future. <sup>11</sup> See 507. <sup>12</sup> Depends on obviam.  
<sup>13</sup> Adverb, only. <sup>14</sup> An adjective used adverbially. <sup>15</sup> Do not confound with terrērent. <sup>16</sup> Ablative of cause with insīgnis; see 164 and 165.  
<sup>17</sup> Compare p. 193, note 8. <sup>18</sup> See 372, 2, and 374.

solum captam<sup>1</sup> semel sedem tenuit, sed quotiēscumque certāmen inītum est, levāns sē ālis ōs oculōsque Gallī rōstrō et unguibus adpetiit. Hostem territum tālis prōdigī visū oculis̄que simul āc mente turbātum Valerius obruncat. Corvus ē cōspectū ēlātus<sup>2</sup> orientem petit. Inde Valerius Corvus 5 dictus est.

#### 475. PYRRHUS MAKES WAR ON THE ROMANS (B.C. 280-275)

I. Tarentīnis<sup>3</sup> quod Rōmānōrum lēgātis iniūriam fēcissent bellum indictum est. Quibus auxiliō<sup>4</sup> vēnit Pyrrhus, Ēpirī<sup>5</sup> rēx, quī genus ab Achille dūcēbat. Contrā Pyrrhum missus est cōsul Laevinus, quī, cum explōrātōrēs rēgis cēpisset, 10 iussit eōs per castra Rōmāna circumdūcī tumque incolumis dīmittī, ut ea quae vīdissent Pyrrhō renūntiārent. Mox commissā pūgnā, cum<sup>6</sup> iam hostēs pedem referrent, rēx elephantōs in Rōmānōrum agmen agī iussit; quō factō mūtāta est proelī fortūna. Rōmānōs vāstōrum<sup>7</sup> corporum mōlēs terri- 15 bilisque<sup>8</sup> superadstantium armātōrum speciēs<sup>8</sup> turbāvit. Equi etiam, cōspectū et odōre bēluārum exterritī, sessōrēs vel excutiēbant vel sēcum in fugam abripiēbant. Nox proeliō finem fēcit.

II. Pyrrhus captivōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit; 20 occisōs sepelīvit. Quōs<sup>9</sup> cum adversō volnere<sup>10</sup> et truci voltū etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, manūs ad caelum sustulisse dicitur cum hāc vōce: "Ego tālibus viris<sup>11</sup> brevī<sup>12</sup> orbem

<sup>1</sup> captam . . . tenuit, kept his perch, when he had once lighted on it. What literally? <sup>2</sup> flying away; from efferō. <sup>3</sup> Find Tarentum on the

coast of southeastern Italy. <sup>4</sup> See 348 and compare adulēscētī honōrī, p. 194, l. 16. <sup>5</sup> Find Epirus in northwestern Greece. <sup>6</sup> cum iam, when at last.

<sup>7</sup> vāstōrum . . . mōlēs, the mass of their vast bodies = their enormous size. <sup>8</sup> See p. 188, l. 5, and note 5. <sup>9</sup> Subject accusative of iacēre; see also p. 178, l. 18, and note. <sup>10</sup> wounds, used collectively; so voltū.

<sup>11</sup> Ablative of means with subēgissem, best translated with. <sup>12</sup> brevī = brevī tempore.

terrārum subēgissem.” Deinde ad urbem Rōmam māgnis itineribus contendit; omnia ferrō ignīque vāstāvit; ad vicēsimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit. Pyrrhō<sup>1</sup> obviam vēnit Laevinus cum novō exercitū; quō<sup>2</sup> visō rēx ait sibi<sup>3</sup> 5 eandem<sup>4</sup> adversus Rōmānōs esse fortūnam, quam<sup>4</sup> Herculi adversus hydram, cui tot<sup>5</sup> capita renāscēbantur, quot<sup>5</sup> praecisa erant. Deinde in Campāniam sē recēpit; missōs<sup>6</sup> ā senātū dē redimendis<sup>7</sup> captivīs lēgātōs honōrificē excēpit; captivōs sine pretiō reddidit, ut Rōmāni, cōgnitā iam ēius 10 virtūte, cōgnōscerent etiam liberālitātem.

III. Erat Pyrrhus miti ac placābili animō; solet enim māgnī animi comes esse clēmētia.<sup>8</sup> Eius hūmānitātem experti sunt Tarentinī. Quī cum sērō intellēxissent sē prō sociō dominum accēpisse, sortem suam liberis vōcibus querēbantur, 15 idque aliquantō liberius<sup>9</sup> ubi vīnō incaluerant. Itaque arcesitī ad rēgem sunt nōnnūlli, quod<sup>10</sup> inter convivium parum honōrificē dē rēge locūtī essent; sed periculum simplex cōfessiō culpae discussit. Nam cum rēx percontātus esset num<sup>11</sup> ea quae ad auris suās pervēnerant dixissent, “Et<sup>12</sup> 20 haec diximus,” inquit, “rēx! et nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dictūrī<sup>13</sup> fuimus.” Pyrrhus, quī mālēbat vīnī<sup>14</sup> quam hominum eam culpam vidērī,<sup>14</sup> subridēns eōs dimisit.

<sup>1</sup> Pyrrhō obviam: compare Manliō . . . obviam, p. 196, l. 13. <sup>2</sup> quō visō rēx, and when the king saw this. <sup>3</sup> With esse; see 115. <sup>4</sup> eandem . . . quam: see 332. <sup>5</sup> tot . . . quot, so many . . . how many = as many . . . as. Compare p. 193, l. 6, and note. <sup>6</sup> missōs . . . lēgātōs, the ambassadors who were sent. <sup>7</sup> Compare 364, I. 8. <sup>8</sup> Subject of solet. <sup>9</sup> See 255, a. <sup>10</sup> because. <sup>11</sup> See 298. <sup>12</sup> et . . . et: see 155. <sup>13</sup> dictūrī fuimus, we should have said. <sup>14</sup> that it should seem the fault of the wine rather than of the men.



CAESAR: GALLIC WAR, II, 29-33 (*Adapted*)

## 476. THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI (B.C. 57)

*The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance*

I. Aduātuci,<sup>1</sup> quī cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō<sup>2</sup> Nervii veniēbant, hāc pūgnā<sup>3</sup> nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertē-  
runt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum  
oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod<sup>4</sup> ex<sup>5</sup>  
omnibus in circuitū partibus<sup>5</sup> altissimās rūpis dēspectūsque  
habēbat, sed ūnā ex<sup>6</sup> parte lēniter adclivis aditus relinque-  
bātur; quem<sup>7</sup> locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant et  
māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabis in mūrō conlo-  
cābant.

*From their walls they taunt the Romans*

II. Āc primō<sup>8</sup> adventū exercitūs nostrī<sup>8</sup> crēbrās ex oppidō  
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris con-  
tendēbant; posteā, vāllō pedum duodecim<sup>9</sup> in circuitū quīn-  
decim mīlium<sup>10</sup> crēbrisque castellis circummūnitī, oppidō<sup>11</sup>  
sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vineis<sup>12</sup> āctis aggere extrūctō,

<sup>1</sup> Look on a map of Gaul in the northeastern part, about the river Mosa (now Meuse), in what is now Belgium. <sup>2</sup> *for an aid = to aid*; see 348 and 349. <sup>3</sup> The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated. <sup>4</sup> *this town*. <sup>5</sup> *ex . . . partibus*, *from all parts in a circuit = on all sides round about*, or simply *all around*. On the separation of *omnibus* from *partibus*, see p. 188, l. 5, note 5. <sup>6</sup> *on*, as in line 4. <sup>7</sup> Do not translate *which place*, but *this place*. <sup>8</sup> *primō . . . nostrī: as soon as our army got there*. What literally? <sup>9</sup> That is, in height. <sup>10</sup> Supply *pedum*. <sup>11</sup> *oppidō = in oppidō*. <sup>12</sup> *vineis āctis* (*āctis* from *agō*): *that the vineae had been got ready*. These *vineae* were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to undermine a wall or fill up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. See p. 155.

turrim<sup>1</sup> procul cōstitui<sup>2</sup> vidērent, primum inridere ex mūrō atque increpitare<sup>3</sup> vōcibus coepērunt, quod tanta māchinatiō ab<sup>4</sup> tantō spatiō instruerētur: quibusnam<sup>5</sup> manibus aut quibus viribus<sup>6</sup> praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae<sup>7</sup> turrim  
5 tantī oneris<sup>8</sup> in mūrō<sup>9</sup> sēsē conlocāre cōfiderent?

*But soon they lose confidence and offer to surrender*

III. Ubi vērō turrim movērī<sup>10</sup> et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērent, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī<sup>11</sup> sunt: Aduātucī nōn existimant Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum  
10 gerere, quī<sup>12</sup> tantae altitūdinis māchinatiōnēs tantā celeritatē prōmovēre possint<sup>12</sup>; itaque sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittunt. Ūnum<sup>13</sup> petunt: sī forte Caesar prō suā<sup>14</sup> clēmentīā ac mānsuetūdine statuerit<sup>15</sup> Aduātucōs esse cōservandōs, nē<sup>16</sup> eōs armīs dēspoliet. Omnēs ferē finitimī sunt  
15 inimicī ac suae virtūtī invident, ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs<sup>17</sup> armīs nōn poterunt. Sibi<sup>18</sup> praestet, sī in eum<sup>19</sup> cāsum dēdūcantur,<sup>20</sup> quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab inimicīs per cruciātum interficī.

<sup>1</sup> See 479, c. <sup>2</sup> Passive infinitive present; *was being raised*. <sup>3</sup> *increpitāre vōcibus, tsunt*. What literally? <sup>4</sup> *ab tantō spatiō, so far away*. <sup>5</sup> *with what hands, pray?* *nam* is added for emphasis, to point their sarcasm. <sup>6</sup> Not from *vir*. <sup>7</sup> To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps." <sup>8</sup> Compare for meaning *ponderis*, p. 199, l. 8. <sup>9</sup> The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed they intended to hoist the tower upon their wall. <sup>10</sup> *to be moved = was moving*. <sup>11</sup> From *loquor*. <sup>12</sup> *since . . . they can*. <sup>13</sup> *one thing, namely nē . . . dēspoliet*, two lines below. <sup>14</sup> *his usual*. <sup>15</sup> Future perfect, *shall have decided*; but better translated *shall decide* or *decides*. <sup>16</sup> *nē . . . dēspoliet, that he (Caesar) would not deprive them of their arms*. <sup>17</sup> *trāditīs armīs, if they should deliver up their arms*; see 357, a. <sup>18</sup> *sibi praestet, it would be better for them*; *praestet* is used impersonally, the real subject being *patī* in the next line. <sup>19</sup> *eum cāsum, such a condition*. <sup>20</sup> *praestet, sī . . . dēdūcantur*: a conditional sentence of the second form; see 404, 4, and 406.

*They must disarm, but are promised protection*

IV. Ad haec Caesar respondit: "Magis cōsuētūdine<sup>1</sup> meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, sī prius quam mūrū ariēs<sup>2</sup> attigerit,<sup>3</sup> vōs dēdideritis: sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi<sup>4</sup> armis trāditis. Id quod in<sup>5</sup> Nervii feci faciam finitimisque imperābō nē quam<sup>6</sup> iniūriam dēditiciis populī Rōmāni inferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere<sup>7</sup> dixērunt. Armōrum tanta multitudō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est, ut prope summam<sup>8</sup> mūrī aggerisque altitudinem<sup>9</sup> acervi eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut postea perspectum<sup>9</sup> est, cēlāta<sup>10</sup> 10 atque in oppidō retenta est. Deinde portis patefactis eō diē pāce<sup>11</sup> sunt ūsī oppidāni.

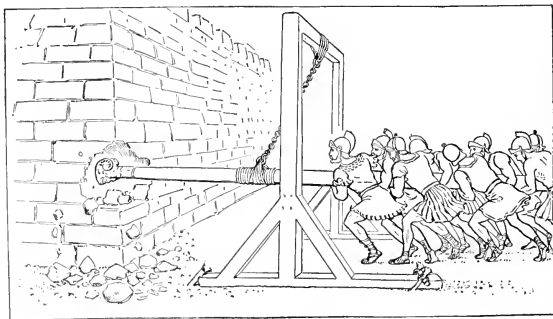
*A brave dash for freedom, but a terrible fate*

V. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit. Oppidāni cōsiliō<sup>12</sup> ante initō, ut intellēctum<sup>13</sup> est, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs<sup>14</sup> praesidia dēductūrōs aut 15 dēnique<sup>15</sup> indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā<sup>16</sup> vigiliā, quā<sup>17</sup> minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbatur,

<sup>1</sup> according to my custom.      <sup>2</sup> A long, strong beam of wood, furnished with an iron head in the form of a ram's head. It was suspended from a framework by a strong chain or ropes, and worked by men, to make a breach in a wall. See illustration, p. 202.      <sup>3</sup> Translate this and the following future perfect by the present; see p. 200, l. 13, and note.      <sup>4</sup> nisi armis trāditis. Compare p. 200, l. 15, and note.      <sup>5</sup> in the case of; a common meaning of in with nouns in the ablative denoting persons.      <sup>6</sup> See p. 195, l. 24, and note.      <sup>7</sup> One would expect sē factūrōs esse, and it may be so translated.      <sup>8</sup> summam . . . altitudinem, top.      <sup>9</sup> See 418, b.      <sup>10</sup> Supply est.      <sup>11</sup> pāce sunt ūsī: not used (enjoyed) peace, but kept quiet.      <sup>12</sup> cōsiliō initō, forming a plan; initō from ineō.      <sup>13</sup> See note 9.      <sup>14</sup> our commanders; subject accusative of dēductūrōs (esse) and servātūrōs (esse).      <sup>15</sup> at any rate.      <sup>16</sup> tertiā vigiliā: the Romans divided the night into four watches of about three hours each.      <sup>17</sup> where.

omnibus cōpiis repentinō ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat,<sup>1</sup> ignibus<sup>2</sup> significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursum<sup>3</sup> est. Ibi pūgnātum<sup>3</sup> est ācritē ab hostibus in<sup>4</sup> extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō  
 5 contrā eōs quī ex vāllō<sup>5</sup> turribusque tēla iacerent, cum<sup>6</sup> in unā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occisis ad<sup>7</sup> hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiecti sunt. Postridiē<sup>8</sup> ēius diēi refrāctis portis, cum<sup>9</sup> iam dēfenderet nēmō,<sup>10</sup> atque intrōmissis mīlitibus nostris, sectiōnem<sup>11</sup> ēius oppidi unīversam  
 10 Caesar vēndidit. Ab iis quī ēmerant capitem<sup>12</sup> numerus ad eum relātus<sup>13</sup> est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

<sup>1</sup> For *imperāverat*, see p. 191, l. 5, note. <sup>2</sup> *by fire signals.* <sup>3</sup> Compare *intellēctum est*, p. 201, l. 14, and note 13. <sup>4</sup> *in . . . salūtis, as their last chance of saving themselves.* What literally? <sup>5</sup> *their (the Romans') redoubt.* <sup>6</sup> *cum . . . virtūte, since in valor alone.* <sup>7</sup> *about, adverb.* <sup>8</sup> *postridiē ēius diēi, on the following day.* What literally? <sup>9</sup> *since.* <sup>10</sup> Emphatic from its position. Compare "silver and gold have I none." <sup>11</sup> The "booty" included all the inhabitants. <sup>12</sup> We say so many "head" of cattle. <sup>13</sup> From *referō*; *was reported to be 53,000.* These 53,000 captives were probably driven in chain gangs to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their livēs in bondage.



BATTERING RAM

# APPENDIX

## TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.



### NOUNS

#### 477. FIRST DECLENSION — A-Stems

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hasta</i>	-a	<i>hastae</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hastae</i>	-ae	<i>hastārum</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hastae</i>	-ae	<i>hastīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hastam</i>	-am	<i>hastās</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hastā</i>	-ā	<i>hastīs</i>	-īs

#### 478. SECOND DECLENSION — O-Stems

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
	MASC.		MASC.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hortus</i>	-us	<i>hortī</i>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	-ī	<i>hortōrum</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	-ō	<i>hortīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hortum</i>	-um	<i>hortōs</i>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	-ō	<i>hortīs</i>	-īs

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
		NEUT.		NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	-ī	dōnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension has a special form in -e: *horte*.

	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filī, -īī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrū	virum	filium
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō

	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filīōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filīōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs

a. The vocative singular of *filius* is *filī*.

## 479.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## a. Mute Stems

	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS	
					M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

	PLURAL				TERMINATIONS	
					M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

## b. Liquid Stems

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	pater	homō	volnus	corpus
<i>Gen.</i>	patris	hominis	volneris	corporis
<i>Dat.</i>	patrī	hominī	volnerī	corporī
<i>Acc.</i>	patrem	hominem	volnus	corpus
<i>Abl.</i>	patre	homine	volnere	corpore

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	patrum	hominum	volnerum	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus

## c. I-Stems

## SINGULAR

					TERMINATIONS	
					M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal	-s	—
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī	-e	-ī

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia	-īs, -ēs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	īgnis	īgnēs	turris	turrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	īgnis	īgnium	turris	turrium
<i>Dat.</i>	īgnī	īgnibus	turrī	turribus
<i>Acc.</i>	īgnem	īgnīs, -ēs	turrim, -em	turrīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	īgnī, -e	īgnibus	turrī, -e	turribus

## 480. FOURTH DECLENSION — U-Stems

## SINGULAR

	TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
	MASC.			NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	gradus	-us	cornū	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	gradūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	graduī (-ū)	-uī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	gradum	-um	cornū	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	gradu	-ū	cornū	-ū

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	gradūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	graduū	-uum	cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	gradibus	-ibus (-ubus)	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)
<i>Acc.</i>	gradūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	gradibus	-ibus (-ubus)	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)

## 481. FIFTH DECLENSION — E-Stems

	TERMINATIONS					
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus



482.

## SPECIAL PARADIGMS

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	senex	vīs
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	domūs, -ī	senis	vīs <sup>1</sup>
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī, -ō	senī	vī <sup>1</sup>
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	senem	vīm
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō, -ū	sene	vī

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	deī, diī, dī	domūs	senēs	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deūm	domuum, -ōrum	senum	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs, -ūs	senēs	vīrīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	iter	bōs	mare	Iuppiter
<i>Gen.</i>	itineris	bovis	maris	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>	itinerī	bovī	marī	Iovī
<i>Acc.</i>	iter	bovem	mare	Iovem
<i>Abl.</i>	itinere	bove	marī	Iove

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	itinerā	bovēs	maria
<i>Gen.</i>	itinerum	bovum, boum	—
<i>Dat.</i>	itineribus	bōbus, būbus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i>	itinerā	bovēs	maria
<i>Abl.</i>	itineribus	bōbus, būbus	maribus

<sup>1</sup> The genitive and dative singular are rare.

## ADJECTIVES

## 483. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
<i>Gen.</i>	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
<i>Abl.</i>	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

## 484. THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

## SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	brevem	breve
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	brevī	brevī

## PLURAL

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs, -ēs	audācia	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 485. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntis, -ēs	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

## 486. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria	
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium	
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus	
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria	
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.	
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	mille	milia	
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	miliūm	
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	milibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	milia	
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	milibus	

## 487. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto-)	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser (misero-)	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

## 488. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## 489. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um } multī, -ae, -a }	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer,</i> <i>exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost,</i> extimus } <i>last</i>
īferus, <i>below</i>	īferior, <i>lower</i>	īnfirmus } <i>lowest</i> īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus } <i>last</i> postumus }
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> ]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i> ]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i> ]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i> ]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i> ]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

## 490.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus)	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	pēius	pessimē
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

491.

## NUMERALS

## CARDINALS

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim *or* sexdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvīgintī
19. ūndēvīgintī
20. vīgintī
21. { vīgintī ūnus *or*  
ūnus et vīgintī
22. { vīgintī duo *or*  
duo et vīgintī
28. duodētrīgintā
29. ūndētrīgintā
30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā
90. nōnāgintā

## ORDINALS

- prīmus, -a, -um
- secundus (*or* alter)
- tertius
- quartus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quartus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvīcēsīmus
- ūndēvīcēsīmus
- vīcēsīmus
- { vīcēsīmus prīmus *or*  
ūnus et vīcēsīmus
- { vīcēsīmus secundus *or*  
alter et vīcēsīmus
- duodētrīcēsīmus
- ūndētrīcēsīmus
- trīcēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quīnquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus
- octōgēsīmus
- nōnāgēsīmus

CARDINALS		ORDINALS
100.	centum	centēsīmus
101.	{centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	{centēsīmus p̄m̄us <i>or</i> centēsīmus et p̄m̄us
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600.	sēscentī <i>or</i> sexcentī	sēscentēsīmus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsīmus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1000.	mīlle	millēsīmus
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsīmus

## PRONOUNS

## 492.

## PERSONAL

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

## 493.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs



## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ iīdem eīdem	eaedem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## 494.

## RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 495.

## INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 496.

## INDEFINITE

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

## REGULAR VERBS

## 497. FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-Verbs

amō, *love*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris, -re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

## IMPERFECT

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, -re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

## FUTURE

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, -re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

## PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus	{ sum	amātī	{ sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis		{ es		{ estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, -re		{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus	{ eram	amātī	{ erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis		{ erās		{ erātis
amāverat	amāverant		{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus	{ erō	amātī	{ erimus
amāveris	amāveritis		{ eris		{ eritis
amāverit	amāverint		{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	amātī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
amāveris	amāveritis				
amāverit	amāverint				

## PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	amātī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
amāvissēs	amāvissētis				
amāvisset	amāvissent				

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

amā, <i>love thou.</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved.</i>
amāte, <i>love ye.</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved.</i>

## FUTURE

amātō, <i>thou shalt love.</i>	amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love.</i>	amātor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>
amātōte, <i>you shall love.</i>	—————
amantō, <i>they shall love.</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRES. amāre, <i>to love.</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved.</i>
PERF. amāvisse, <i>to have loved.</i>	amātus esse, <i>to have been loved.</i>
FUT. amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>	[amātum irī], <i>to be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. amāns, -antis, <i>loving.</i>	PRES. —————
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love.</i>	GER. <sup>1</sup> amandus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved.</i>
PERF. —————	PERF. amātus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved, loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle*.

## GERUND

<i>Nom.</i>	—————
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī, of loving.
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō, for loving.
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum, loving.
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō, by loving.

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	[amātum, to love.]
<i>Abl.</i>	[amātū, to love, in the loving.]

498. SECOND CONJUGATION — **Ē**-Verbs

moneō, advise

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

## IMPERFECT

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monuī      monuimus  
 monuistī    monuistis  
 monuit      monuērunt, -re

monitus { sum      monitī { sumus  
           { es                   { estis  
           { est                   { sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram    monuerāmus  
 monuerās    monuerātis  
 monuerat    monuerant

monitus { eram      monitī { erāmus  
           { erās                 { erātis  
           { erat                 { erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō      monuerimus  
 monueris      monueritis  
 monuerit      monuerint

monitus { erō      monitī { erimus  
           { eris                 { eritis  
           { erit                 { erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

moneam      moneāmus      monear      moneāmur  
 moneās      moneātis      moneāris, -re    moneāminī  
 moneat      moneant      moneātur      moneantur

## IMPERFECT

monērem      monērēmus      monērer      monērēmur  
 monērēs      monērētis      monērēris, -re    monērēminī  
 monēret      monērent      monērētur      monērentur

## PERFECT

monuerim      monuerimus      monitus { sim      monitī { sīmus  
 monueris      monueritis                 { sīs                 { sītis  
 monuerit      monuerint                 { sit                 { siunt

## PLUPERFECT

monuissem      monuissēmus      monitus { essem      monitī { essēmus  
 monuissēs      monuissētis                 { essēs                 { essētis  
 monuisset      monuissent                 { esset                 { essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

monē, *advise thou.*monēre, *be thou advised.*monēte, *advise ye.*monēmini, *be ye advised.*

## FUTURE

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*monētor, *thou shalt be advised.*monētō, *he shall advise.*monētor, *he shall be advised.*monētōte, *you shall advise.*

—————

monento, *they shall advise.*monentor, *they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE

PRES. monēre, *to advise.*monērī, *to be advised.*PERF. monuisse, *to have advised.*monitus esse, *to have been advised.*FUT. monitūrus esse, *to be about to advise.*[monitum īrī], *to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. monēns, -entis, *advising.*

PRES. —————

FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to advise.*GER. monendus, -a, -um, *to be advised.*

PERF. —————

PERF. monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised, advised.*

## GERUND

Nom. —————

Gen. monendī, *of advising.*Dat. monendō, *for advising.*Acc. monendum, *advising.*Abl. monendō, *by advising.*

## SUPINE

Acc. [monitum, *to advise.*]Abl. monitū, *to advise, in the advising.*



## 499. THIRD CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

regō, rule

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

ACTIVE VOICE		INDICATIVE			
		PRESENT			
<i>I rule, etc.</i>		<i>I am ruled, etc.</i>			
regō	regimus	regor	regimur		
regis	regitis	regeris, -re	regimini		
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur		
<i>I was ruling, etc.</i>		<i>I was ruled, etc.</i>			
				IMPERFECT	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur		
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris, -re	regēbāmini		
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur		
<i>I shall rule, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>			
				FUTURE	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur		
regēs	regētis	regēris, -re	regēmini		
reget	regent	regētur	regentur		
<i>I have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I have been ruled, etc.</i>			
				PERFECT	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
rēxistī	rēxistis				
rēxit	rēxērunt, -re				
<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I had been ruled, etc.</i>			
				PLUPERFECT	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
rēxerās	rēxerātis				
rēxerat	rēxerant				

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
rēxeris	rēxeritis				
rēxerit	rēxerint				

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

## IMPERFECT

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

## PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
rēxeris	rēxeritis				
rēxerit	rēxerint				

## PLUPERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
rēxissēs	rēxissētis				
rēxisset	rēxissent				

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

rege, <i>rule thou.</i>	regerere, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
regite, <i>rule ye.</i>	regiminī, <i>be ye ruled.</i>

## FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule.</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled.</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule.</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled.</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule.</i>	_____
reguntō, <i>they shall rule.</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	regere, <i>to rule.</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF.	rēxisse, <i>to have ruled.</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	[rēctum irī], <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	regēns, -entis, <i>ruling.</i>	PRES.	—————
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule.</i>	GER.	regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF.	—————	PERF.	rēctus, -a, -um, <i>having been ruled, ruled.</i>

## GERUND

Nom.	—————
Gen.	regendī, <i>of ruling.</i>
Dat.	regendō, <i>for ruling.</i>
Acc.	regendum, <i>ruling.</i>
Abl.	regendō, <i>by ruling.</i>

## SUPINE

Acc.	[rēctum, <i>to rule.</i> ]
Abl.	[rēctū, <i>to rule, in the ruling.</i> ]

## 500. THIRD CONJUGATION—Verbs in -iō

capiō, *take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

ACTIVE VOICE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE VOICE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I take, etc.</i>				<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
capiō	capimus	capior		capimur	
capis	capitis	caperis, -re		capimini	
capit	capiunt	capitur		capiuntur	

## IMPERFECT

*I was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.*

capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

## PERFECT

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.

captus sum, es, est, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.

## IMPERFECT

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.

## PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sis, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. cape, take thou.

capere, be thou taken.

capite, take ye.

capimini, be ye taken.

FUT. capitō, thou shalt take,  
etc.capitor, thou shalt be taken,  
etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere, <i>to take.</i>	capī, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF.	cēpisse, <i>to have taken.</i>	captus esse, <i>to have been taken.</i>
FUT.	captūrus esse, <i>to be about to take.</i>	[captum irī], <i>to be about to be taken.</i>

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns, -ientis, <i>taking.</i>	PRES.	—————
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to take.</i>	GER.	capiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF.	—————	PERF.	captus, -a, -um, <i>having been taken.</i>

## GERUND

*Gen.* capiendī, *of taking, etc.*

## SUPINE

*Acc.* [captum, *to take.*]

*Abl.* [captū, *to take, in the taking.*]

## 501. FOURTH CONJUGATION — Ī-Verbs

audiō, *hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

*I hear, etc.*

*I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

## IMPERFECT

*I was hearing, etc.*

*I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

*I shall be heard, etc.*

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, -re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

## PERFECT

*I have heard, etc.*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, -re

*I have been heard, etc.*

audītus	{ sum	audītī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

*I had been heard, etc.*

audītus	{ eram	audītī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

*I shall have been heard, etc.*

audītus	{ erō	audītī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

## PERFECT

audīverim	audīverimus	audīrus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	audītī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

## PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	audītī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
audīvisēs	audīvisētis				
audīvisset	audīvissent				

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

audī, <i>hear thou.</i>	audīre, <i>be thou heard.</i>
audīte, <i>hear ye.</i>	audīminī, <i>be ye heard.</i>

## FUTURE

audītō, <i>thou shalt hear.</i>	audītōr, <i>thou shalt be heard.</i>
audītō, <i>he shall hear.</i>	audītōr, <i>he shall be heard.</i>
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear.</i>	—
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear.</i>	audiuntōr, <i>they shall be heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRES. audīre, <i>to hear.</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. audīvisse, <i>to have heard.</i>	audītus esse, <i>to have been heard.</i>
FUT. audītūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	audītum irī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns, -entis, <i>hearing.</i>	PRES. ———
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear.</i>	GER. audiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. ———	PERF. audītus, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard.</i>

## GERUND

<i>Nom.</i>	—————
<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī, of hearing.
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō, for hearing:
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum, hearing.
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō, by hearing.

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	audītum, to hear.
<i>Abl.</i>	audītū, to hear, in the hearing.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

502.

sum, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, <i>I am.</i>	sumus, <i>we are.</i>
es, <i>thou art.</i>	estis, <i>you are.</i>
est, <i>he (she, it) is.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT

eram, <i>I was.</i>	erāmus, <i>we were.</i>
erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	erātis, <i>you were.</i>
erat, <i>he was.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE

erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be.</i>
eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
erit, <i>he will be.</i>	erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT

fuī, <i>I have been, was.</i>	fuimus, <i>we have been, were.</i>
fuistī, <i>thou hast been, wast.</i>	fuistis, <i>you have been, were.</i>
fuit, <i>he has been, was.</i>	fuērunt, } <i>they have been, were.</i>
	fuēre, }



## PLUPERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been.</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been.</i>
<i>fuerās, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been.</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been.</i>
<i>fueris, thou wilt have been.</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been.</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been.</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

## IMPERFECT

SING.	PLUR.
<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

## PERFECT

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissemus</i>
<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissemus</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuisissent</i>

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

<i>es, be thou.</i>
<i>este, be ye.</i>

## FUTURE

<i>estō, thou shalt be.</i>
<i>estō, he shall be.</i>
<i>estōte, ye shall be.</i>
<i>suntō, they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>esse, to be.</i>
PERF.	<i>fuisse, to have been.</i>
FUT.	<i>futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE

*futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.*

503. *possum, be able, can*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum, posse, potuī, —*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possīmus</i>
	<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>possīs</i>	<i>possītis</i>
	<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPF.	<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
FUT.	<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>	—————	—————
PERF.	<i>potuī</i>	<i>potuimus</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>
PLUP.	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>	<i>potuissem</i>	<i>potuissēmus</i>
F. P.	<i>potuerō</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>	—————	—————

## INFINITIVE

PRES. *posse*PERF. *potuisse*504. *prōsum, benefit*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsīmus</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsīs</i>	<i>prōsītis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
IMPF.	<i>prōderam</i>	<i>prōderāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
FUT.	<i>prōderō</i>	<i>prōderimus</i>	—————	—————
PERF.	<i>prōfuī</i>	<i>prōfuimus</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>
PLUP.	<i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuerāmus</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>	<i>prōfuissēmus</i>
F. P.	<i>prōfuerō</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>	—————	—————

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. *prōdes, prōdeste*FUT. *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	prōdesse	PERF.	prōfuisse
	FUT.		prōfutūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE

FUT.	prōfutūrus, -a, -um
------	---------------------

505.

volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	{	volō, velle, voluī, —, <i>be willing, will, wish</i>
		nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, <i>be unwilling, will not</i>
		mālō, mālle, māluī, —, <i>be more willing, prefer</i>

## INDICATIVE

## SINGULAR

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
		PLURAL	
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	maluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## SINGULAR

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit

		PLURAL		
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	
	velint	nōlint	mālint	
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem	
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	
		IMPERATIVE		
PRES.	—————	nōlī	—————	
		nōlīte		
FUT.	—————	nōlītō, etc.	—————	
		INFINITIVE		
PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle	
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	
		PARTICIPLE		
PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—————	

506.                    *ferō, bear, carry, endure*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*

		INDICATIVE			
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>		<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>		<i>ferris, -re</i>	<i>feriminī</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>		<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferēbam</i>			<i>ferēbar</i>	
FUT.	<i>feram</i>			<i>ferar</i>	
PERF.	<i>tulī</i>			<i>lātus sum</i>	
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>			<i>lātus eram</i>	
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>			<i>lātus erō</i>	
		SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRES.	<i>feram</i>			<i>ferar</i>	
FUT.	<i>ferrem</i>			<i>ferrer</i>	
PERF.	<i>tulerim</i>			<i>lātus sim</i>	
PLUP.	<i>tulissem</i>			<i>lātus essem</i>	

		IMPERATIVE			
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	fer	ferte		ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte		fertor	
	fertō	feruntō		fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE		
PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	————

PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	ferēns	PRES. ————
FUT.	lāturus	GER. ferendus
PERF.	————	PERF. lātus

GERUND	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō

507.

eō, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, (ivī) iī, itum (p. p.).

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam		īrem		
FUT.	ībō		————	{ ītō	ītōte
PERF.	īī		ierim	{ īto	euntō
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	īre	iēns, euntis
PERF.	īsse	_____
FUT.	itūrus esse	itūrus
	GERUND	SUPINE
<i>Gen.</i>	eundī	
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum	itum
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō	itū

508.                    *fiō, be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
PRES.	fiō        _____ fīs        _____ fit        fiunt	fiam	fī        fite
IMPF.	fiēbam	fierem	
FUT.	fiam	_____	
PERF.	factus sum	factus sim	
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem	
F. P.	factus erō		

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	fieri	GER. faciendus
PERF.	factus esse	PERF. factus
FUT.	factum iri	

509.                    DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	{	I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>
		II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
		III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
		IV. potior, potīrī, potītus sum, <i>get possession of</i>

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

## GERUND

hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
----------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

## SUPINE

[hortātum, -tū]	[veritum, -tū]	[secūtum, -tū]	[potītum, -tū]
-----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

## 510. FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love.</i>
IMPF.	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love.</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fuī, <i>I have been or was about to love.</i>
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love.</i>
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sim
IMPF.	amātūrus essem
PERF.	amātūrus fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus fuissem

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love.</i>

So in the other conjugations :

monitūrus sum, <i>I am about to advise.</i>
rēctūrus sum, <i>I am about to rule.</i>
captūrus sum, <i>I am about to take.</i>
audītūrus sum, <i>I am about to hear,</i>
etc., etc.

## 511. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved.</i>
IMPF.	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved.</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved.</i>
PERF.	amandus fuī, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved.</i>
PLUP.	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved.</i>
F. P.	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved.</i>



## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amandus sim
IMPF.	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PLUP.	amandus fuisset

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved.</i>
PERF.	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved.</i>

So in the other conjugations :

monendus sum,	<i>I am to be, must be, advised.</i>
regendus sum,	<i>I am to be, must be ruled.</i>
capiendus sum,	<i>I am to be, must be, taken.</i>
audiendus sum,	<i>I am to be, must be, heard,</i>
	<i>etc., etc.</i>



## RULES OF SYNTAX

N.B. — These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number following a rule is its section number.

1. The subject of a verb is in the nominative. 51.
2. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. 61.
3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. 99.
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits. 111.
5. A noun used to limit another, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive. 68.
6. The partitive genitive is used to denote a whole of which a part is taken. 257.
7. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. 92.
8. A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. 318, 2.
9. The indirect object is in the dative. 79.
10. Adjectives meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, take the dative. 117.
11. The dative is used with *est*, *sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. 115.
12. Most verbs meaning *to believe*, *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites, also *to command*, *obey*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *resist*, *serve*, and *spare*, and the like, govern the dative. 393.

13. Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super* often govern the dative. 347.

14. The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing *seves*. 349.

15. The gerundive with *sum* takes the dative to denote the person who has to do a thing. 426.

16. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. 57.

17. Place whither, not including names of towns, is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*. 160.

18. Extent of *time* or *space* is expressed by the accusative. 278.

19. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. 208.

20. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. 124.

21. The ablative with *cum* is used to denote the *manner* of an action; but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. 129.

22. The ablative is used to express cause. 165.

23. The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing. 307.

24. Time *when* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative. 188.

25. Place *where*, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, usually *in*. 81.

26. Place *whence*, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*). 159.

27. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* a thing is true. 374.

28. The comparative is followed by the ablative when *quam* (*than*) is omitted. 250.

29. Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. 264.
30. These five deponents, *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds govern the ablative. 388.
31. The ablative absolute is used to express the *time*, *cause*, *condition*, or some other *circumstance* of the action of the main verb. 358.
32. Words signifying *privation*, *removal*, or *separation* are followed by the ablative, without a preposition, or with the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*. 232.
33. NAMES OF TOWNS and *domus* and *rūs*. (1) Place *where* is expressed by the locative. 197, 1. (2) Place *whither* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. 197, 2. (3) Place *whence* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. 197, 3.
34. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its relation to some word in its own clause. 213.
35. A principal tense is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect; an historical tense, by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect. 297.
36. The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *nē* to express *purpose*. 284.
37. The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *ut nōn* to express *result*. 290.
38. In a *cum*-clause expressing *time*, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative. 397.
39. In a *cum*-clause expressing *cause* or *concession*, the subjunctive is used. 398.
40. The verb of an *indirect question* is in the subjunctive. 295.

41. *Purpose* is often expressed by a relative with the subjunctive. 420.

42. In *simple* conditions the indicative is used. 405.

43. In *doubtful* conditions the subjunctive present (or perfect) is used. 406.

44. In conditions *contrary to fact* the subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect are used, the imperfect denoting present time, and the pluperfect denoting past time. 407.

45. The present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that of the verb on which it depends. 324.

46. The perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that of the verb on which it depends. 325.

47. The future infinitive denotes time *after* that of the verb on which it depends. 326.

48. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. 318.

49. Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative. 322.

50. The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion to express *purpose*. 373.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary, words inclosed in brackets (except in the case of compounds with one or both parts changed in form) are sometimes primitives, sometimes cognates.

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not intended to be used as such. They are inserted to show literal meanings.

Abbreviations are generally self-explanatory. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; subjv. = subjunctive; imv. = imperative.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

**ā** or **ab**, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*.

**ab-dīcō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *reject*; with **sē**, *resign, abdicate*.

**ab-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide, conceal*.

**ab-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, take off*; **abduct**.

**ab-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go from, go off, go away*. (507.) Cf. **dēcēdō**.

**ab-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō], *throw off, throw down, cast away*.

**ab-ripiō**, -ere, -uī, -reptus [-rapiō], *snatch away, carry off*.

**abs-cīdō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ab(s)-caedō], *cut off*.

**abs-tergeō**, -ēre, -tersī, -tersus, *wipe off*.

**abstersus**, *see abstergeō*.

**ab-sum**, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant, be off*; with **ā** or **ab** and abl. (502.)

**āc**, conj., *see atque*.

**ac-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ad-],

*go or come near, approach*. Cf.

**adeō** and **adpropinquō**.

**ac-cendō**, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus [ad-], *kindle, set fire to, light*; *inflame*.

**ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, — [ad-cadō], *fall upon, fall out, happen*. ACCIDENT.

**ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad-capiō], (*take to*), *receive, accept*.

**ac-currō**, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursus [ad-], *run towards, run up*.

**accūsātiō**, -ōnis, f. **accusation**.

**ācer**, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen*: *active, eager*. (182.) ACRID.

**acerbitās**, ātis, f. *bitterness, harshness, severity*.

**acervus**, -ī, m. *pile, heap, mass*.

**Achillēs**, -is, m. **Achilles**, a hero of the Trojan war.

**aciēs**, -cī, f. [ācer], *edge*; *line, line of battle, battle array*.

**ācriter**, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly, spiritedly, fiercely*.

- ad**, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near, up to*; with gerund or gerundive, *to, for*: **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner*; as adv. *about*.
- ad-aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *become equal to, equal*. ADEQUATE.
- adclivis**, -e, adj. *sloping towards, rising, ascending*. ACCLIVITY.
- ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to*. ADDUCE.
- ad-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, visit*. (507.) Cf. **accēdō** and **adpropinquō**.
- ad-ferō**, -ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bear to, bring, render*. (506.)
- ad-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *affect, influence; afflict, oppress*.
- ad-flīgō**, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, *(dash at), weaken, afflict*.
- ad-hibeō**, -ēre, -nī, -itus [-habeō], *apply, employ, use*.
- ad-hūc**, adv. *hitherto, as yet, still*.
- aditus**, -ūs, m. [adeō], *approach, way of access*. Cf. **adventus**.
- ad-ministrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *manage, direct, administer*.
- admīrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [admīror], *admiration, astonishment, wonder*.
- ad-mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [admīrātiō], *wonder at, admire*.
- ad-moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, warn, admonish*.
- admōtus**, *see admoveō*.
- ad-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, (*move to*), *apply, employ*.
- ad-nectō**, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *tie to, fasten to, attach*. ANNEX.
- ad-olēscō**, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, *grow up*. ADULT.
- ad-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, (*drive to*): **nāvis adpellere**, *land, put in*.
- ad-petō**, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -ītus, *seek after, attack*.
- ad-prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *seize, catch hold of*. APPREHEND.
- ad-propinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *approach, come near to*. Cf. **adeō** and **accēdō**.
- ad-ripiō**, -ere, -uī, -reptus [-rapiō], *seize, snatch*.
- ad-rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *claim*. ARROGATE.
- ad-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, (*write in addition*), *add, enroll*. ASCRIBE.
- ad-spiciō**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look at, look upon, behold*. ASPECT.
- ad-stō**, -stāre, -stitī, —, *stand near*.
- ad-sum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present, be here*; with dat. (502.)
- Aduātucī**, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Aduātuci*, a Gallic tribe.
- adolēscēns**, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscō, *grow*], *youth, young person*. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. **iuvenis**.
- adultus**, *see adolēscō*.
- ad-ūrō**, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus, *set on fire, burn, singe*.
- advectus**, *see advehō*.
- ad-vehō**, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *carry to, bring on, bring*.
- advena**, -ae, m. and f. [ad-veniō], *stranger*.
- adventus**, -ūs, m. *approach, arrival*. ADVENT. Cf. **aditus**.
- adversus**, -a, -um, adj. *turned towards, opposite, in front, adverse*.
- adversus**, prep. with acc. *against*.



- ad-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *summon, call upon*. ADVOCATE.
- aedēs** (-is), -is, f. *building*; plur. *house*.
- aedificium**, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building*.  
EDIFICE.
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs-faciō], *build*. EDIFY.
- aeger**, *aegra*, *aegrum*, adj. *sick, weak, feeble*.
- aequālis**, -e, adj. *equal, like, of the same age*.
- aequē**, adv. *equally*.
- Aequī**, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Aequi, a people of ancient Italy*.
- āēr**, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air*.
- aestās**, -ātis, f. *summer*.
- aetās**, -ātis, f. *life, age*.
- Aetna**, -ae, f. *Aetna, a mountain in Sicily*.
- Āfrica**, -ae, f. *Africa*.
- ager**, agri, m. *field, territory, land*. (108.)
- agger**, -eris, m. *mound, rampart*.
- agitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, chase, drive*. AGITATE.
- agmen**, -inis, n. [agō], (*the thing led*), *army, host, column*.
- āgnōscō**, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [ad-(g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*. Cf. cōgnōscō.
- āgnus**, -ī, m. *lamb*.
- agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, bring up; act, do; treat; celebrate; pass (life)*.
- agrestis**, -e [ager], *of the country, rustic, clownish*.
- agricola**, -ae, m. [ager-colō], *farmer, husbandman*.
- āiō**, defective verb, *say*.
- āla**, -ae, f. *wing*.
- alacer**, -cris, -cre, adj. *brisk, active, eager*.
- Alba**, -ae, f. *Alba*, an ancient city of Italy.
- Albānus**, -a, -um, adj. *Alban*: as noun, *an Alban, inhabitant of Alba, a town in Latium*.
- albus**, -a, -um, adj. *white*.
- Alcmēna**, -ae, f. *Alcmēna*, the mother of Hercules.
- āles**, -itis, m. [āla], *bird*.
- aliās**, adv. [alius], *elsewhere, at any other time*.
- ali-quandō**, adv. [alius], *at some time; formerly, once*. Cf. ōlim.
- ali-quantō**, adv. [alius], *somewhat*.
- aliquis**, -qua, -quid [-quod], indef. pron. *some one, some, any*. (496.)
- aliter**, adv. [alius], *otherwise, in any other way*.
- alius**, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other, else*: alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*. (312.) Cf. cēteri.
- alō**, -ere, -uī, -tus or -itus, *nourish, strengthen*.
- Alpēs**, -ium, f. plur. *the Alps*.
- altāria**, -ium, n. plur. *altar*.
- alter**, -era, -erum, adj. *the one, the other (of two); second*: alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*. (312.)
- altitūdō**, -inis, f. [altus], *height*.
- altum**, -ī, n. [altus], *the sea*.
- altus**, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep*.
- alveus**, -ī, m. *hollow vessel, tub, trough*.
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo), *both*.
- ambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk, take a walk*.

- āmentia**, -ae, f. *want of reason, madness.*
- amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus], *friendship.*
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly;* as noun, *friend.*
- ā-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send away; lose.* Cf. **perdō**.
- amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amor], *love, like, be fond of.* (497.)
- amor**, -ōris, f. [amō], *love.*
- ā-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move away, put aside.*
- amplus**, -a, -um, *large, wide; honorable.* AMPLE.
- Amūlius**, -ī, m. *Amulius*, father of Rhea Silvia.
- an**, conj. *or.*
- ancora**, -ae, f. *anchor.*
- angustus**, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*
- anima**, -ae, f. [animus], *breath, soul, life.* ANIMATE.
- anim-advertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus-], *turn the mind to, notice.*
- animal**, -ālis, n. [anima], *living being, animal.* (169.)
- animus**, -ī, m. [anima], *mind, soul, spirit, disposition.* Cf. **mēns**.
- Aniō**, -ēnis, m. the *Anio*, a branch of the Tiber.
- annōna**, -ae, f. [annus], (*the year's supply*), *provisions; price (of provisions), market; scarcity.*
- annus**, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.
- ante**, adv. and prep. with acc. *before.*
- anteā**, adv. [ante], *before.*
- ante-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, —, *go before.*
- ante-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *place in advance, prefer.* (506.) Cf. **ante-pōnō** and **mālō**.
- ante-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place in advance, prefer.* Cf. **anteferō**, **praepōnō**, and **mālō**.
- ante-quam**, adv. *sooner than, before.*
- antīquus**, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. **vetus**.
- antrum**, -ī, n. *cave.*
- anxius**, -a, -um, *troubled, anxious.*
- Apollō**, -inis, m. *Apollo*, a god of the Greeks.
- ap-pareō**, -ēre, -uī, — [ad-], *appear, show one's self.*
- ap-pellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.
- aptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit.*
- apud**, prep. with acc. *with, by, near, among.*
- aqua**, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.
- āra**, -ae, f. *altar.* (Page 21.)
- arātrum**, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* (Page 87.)
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think, suppose.*
- arbor**, -ōris, f. *tree.*
- arceō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *keep off.*
- arcessō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *send for, summon.*
- arcus**, -ūs, m. *bow.* (242, a.) ARC.
- ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn, blaze.* ARDENT.
- arduus**, -a, -um, adj. *steep; difficult, arduous.*
- ariēs**, -etis, m. *ram, battering ram.* (Page 202.)
- arma**, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons, armor.*
- armātus**, -ī, m. [armō], *armed man, warrior.*
- armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*
- arō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.*
- ars**, artis, f. *art, skill.*

- arx**, arcis, f. [arceō], *citadel*.
- ascēnsus**, -ūs, m. *a going up, ascent*.
- asper**, -era, -erum, *rough, fierce, harsh*. EXASPERATE.
- at**, conj. *but*. Cf. *sed* and *autem*.
- Athēna**, -ae, f. *Athena*, a goddess.
- Atlās**, -antis, m. *Atlas*, one of the Titans.
- at-que** (before vowels and consonants, **āc** before consonants only) [ad-], *and also, and especially, and; as*. Cf. *et* and *-que*.
- atrōx**, -ōcis, adj. *savage, fierce, severe*. ATROCIOUS. Cf. *saevus*.
- at-tingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus [ad-tangō], *touch, reach*. ATTAIN.
- at-tonitus**, -a, -um [ad-], *thunder-struck, astounded, awe-struck*.
- auctor**, -ōris, m. [augeō], *author, doer*.
- audācia**, -ae, f. [audāx], *daring, boldness, audacity*.
- audāx**, -ācis, adj. *daring, bold*. (484.) AUDACIOUS.
- audiō**, -īre, -ivī (-īi), -ītus, *hear, listen*. (501.) AUDIENCE.
- au-ferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab(s)-], *bear off, carry away, take away*. (506.) ABLATIVE.
- Augēās**, -ae, m. *Augeas*, a mythical hero.
- augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus [auxilium], *increase, enlarge*. AUGMENT.
- Augustus**, -ī, m. *Augustus*, title of Caesar Octavianus as emperor.
- aura**, -ae, f. *air*.
- aureus**, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden*.
- auris**, -is, f. *ear*. AURIST.
- aurum**, -ī, n. *gold*.
- aut**, conj. *or*: *aut . . . aut, either . . . or*.
- autem**, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover, now*.
- auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus sum [auxilium], *give help, aid, assist*.
- auxilium**, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support*. AUXILIARY.
- avārus**, -a, -um, adj. *greedy, rapacious*. AVARICIOUS.
- ā-versor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *turn away from*. AVERSE.
- ā-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn away, turn aside, avert*.
- avia**, -ae, f. *grandmother*.
- avis**, -is, f. *bird*. AVIARY.
- balteus**, -ī, m. *belt*.
- barba**, -ae, f. *beard*.
- barbarus**, -ī, m. *barbarian*.
- beātus**, -a, -um, adj. *happy*.
- Belgae**, -ārūm, m. plur. *the Belgians* or *Belgae*, a Gallic tribe.
- bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [bellum], *war, carry on war*. Cf. *bellum gerō*.
- bellum**, -ī, n. [bellō], *war*.
- bellus**, -a, -um, adj. *pretty*.
- bēlua**, -ae, f. *beast, monster*.
- bene**, adv. [bonus], *well*. (267.)
- beneficium**, -ī, n. [bene-faciō], *kindness, service, benefit*.
- bēstia**, -ae, f. *beast, animal*.
- bibō**, -ere, bibī, —, *drink*. IMBIBE.
- bis**, adv. *twice*.
- bonus**, -a, -um, adj. *good, kind*. (483.)
- bōs**, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow*. (482.)
- brevis**, -e, adj. *short, brief*. (182.)
- Britannia**, -ae, f. *Britain*.

**Britannus**, -ī, m. a *Briton*, inhabitant of Britannia.

**Brūtus**, -ī, m. *Brutus*, a Roman surname.

**C.**, abbreviation for *Gāius*.

**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall*.

**caecus**, -a, -um, adj. *blind*.

**caedēs**, -is, f. [caedō], *slaughter, carnage, murder*.

**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus [caedēs], *cut; kill*.

**caelum**, -ī, n. *sky, heaven, heavens*.

**Caesar**, -aris, m. *Caius Julius Caesar*, a famous Roman.

**calathus**, -ī, m. *basket*.

**cale-faciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [caleō], *make hot, heat*.

**calor**, -ōris, m. *heat, glow*. CALORIC.

**Cambricus**, -ī, m. *Cambricus*.

**Campānia**, -ae, f. *Campania*, a district of Italy.

**campus**, -ī, m. *field*. CAMP.

**cancer**, -crī, m. *crab*. CANCER.

**canis**, -is, m. and f. *dog*. CANINE.

**Cannae**, -ārum, f. plur. *Cannae*, a town of southern Italy.

**cantō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cantus], *sing*.  
CHANT.

**cantus**, -ūs, m. [cantō], *singing, song*. CHANT.

**capiō**, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture; form*. (500.)

**capra**, -ae, f. *she-goat*.

**captīva**, -ae, f. [capiō], *captive, prisoner*.

**captīvus**, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner*.

**Capua**, -ae, f. *Capua*, a city in Italy.

**caput**, -itis, n. *head; person*. (154.)

CAPITAL.

**cārē**, adv. [cārus], *dearly*.

**careō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be in want of, lack, want; with abl*.

**carō**, carnis, f. *flesh*. CARNAL.

**Carolus**, -ī, m. *Charles*.

**carpō**, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble; enjoy*.

**carrus**, -ī, m. *wagon, cart, car*.

**Carthāgō**, -inis, f. *Carthage*, a town in Africa.

**cārus**, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious*.

**casa**, -ae, f. *hut, cottage*.

**Cassivellaunus**, -ī, m. *Cassivellaunus*, a British chief.

**castellum**, -ī, n. [diminutive of castrum], *redoubt, stronghold*.

CASTLE.

**castra**, -ōrum, n. plur. *camp*.

**cāsus**, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss*. CASE.

**caterva**, -ae, f. *crowd, troop, throng*.

**Catīlīna**, -ae, m. *Catiline*, a famous Roman conspirator.

**causa**, -ae, f. *cause, reason; causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake*.

**caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard, beware; with ā and abl., guard against*. CAUTION.

**cēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *give way, retire*. SECEDE.

**celeber**, -bra, -brum, adj. *frequented, visited; renowned, celebrated*.

**celeritās**, -ātis, f. [celer, *swift*], *swiftness, speed, quickness, celerity*.

**celeriter**, adv. [celer, *swift*], *swiftly, quickly*.

**cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal*.

**cēna**, -ae, f. *dinner, meal*.

- Cēnaeum**, -ī, n. *Cenaeum*, a promontory on the island of Euboea.
- cēnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dine, take a meal*.
- Centaurus**, -ī, m. *Centaur*, a fabled monster, half man, half horse.
- centēsimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [centum], *hundredth*.
- centum**, indecl. num. adj. *hundred*.
- CENT**.
- centuriō**, -ōnis, m. *centurion*, an underofficer in the Roman army.
- cera**, -ae, f. *wax*.
- cernō**, -ere, crēvī, certus (crētus), *distinguish, discern, decide, perceive, see*.
- certāmen**, -inis, n. *strife, contest*.
- certē**, adv. [certus], *really, surely, certainly*.
- certus**, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, determined, certain, sure*: certīorem faciō, (*make more certain*), *inform*.
- cerva**, -ae, f. *deer, hind*.
- cervīx**, -īcis, f. *the neck*.
- cēterī**, -ae, -a, plur. adj. *the rest, the remaining, the others*. Cf. *alius*.
- Chrīstus**, -ī, m. *Christ*.
- cibus**, -ī, m. *food*.
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, m. *Cicero*, a famous Roman orator.
- Cimbrī**, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Cimbrians*, a German tribe.
- Cincinnātus**, -ī, m. *Cincinnatus*, a famous Roman.
- cingō**, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, encircle, gird*.
- circiter**, adv. *about*.
- circuitus**, -ūs, m. [circum-eō], (*a going round*), *circumference, circuit*.
- circum**, prep. with acc. *around*.
- circum-arō**, -āre, -āvī, —, *plough around*.
- circum-dō**, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround, inclose*.
- circum-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead around*.
- circum-mūniō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *wall around, fortify, blockade*.
- circum-sedeō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, (*sit around*), *blockade, besiege*.
- circumsessus**, see *circumsedeō*.
- circum-sistō**, -ere, -stetī, —, *stand around, surround*.
- circum-stō**, -āre, -stetī (-stitī), —, *stand around, surround*. CIRCUMSTANCE.
- circum-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *surround, circumvent*.
- citerior**, -ius, adj. comp. *hither, nearer*. (489.)
- cīvis**, -is, m. and f. *citizen*. (169, c.)
- cīvītās**, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship*. CITY.
- clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [clāmor], *cry, shout*.
- clāmor**, -ōris, m. [clāmō], *shout, cry; barking*. CLAMOR.
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj. *clear, loud; renowned, famous*. CLARION.
- classicum**, -ī, n. *field signal, trumpet call*.
- claudō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut, close*.
- claustra**, -ōrum, n. plur. [claudō], *barrier, dike*.
- clēmētia**, -ae, f. *indulgent disposition; gentleness, clemency*.
- Cloelia**, -ae, f. *Cloelia*, a noble Roman maiden.
- Cocles**, -itis, m., (*blind of one eye*), *Cocles*, surname of Horatius.

- coepī, -isse, coeptus (defective; tenses from present stem wanting), *began*.
- co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [com-arceō], *keep back, check, restrain*. COERCE.
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-agitō], *consider thoroughly, reflect*.
- cōgnōmen, -inis, n. [com-(g)nōmen], *surname, cognomen*.
- cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m)-gnōscō], *learn, recognize, know, understand*. Cf. āgnōscō.
- cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort*, a division of the Roman army.
- collis, -is, m. *hill*. Cf. mōns.
- collum, -ī, n. *neck*.
- colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *care for, cultivate, till; honor*. Cf. incola and agricola.
- columba, -ae, f. *dove*.
- com (col-, con-, cor-, co-), primitive form of *cum*, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.
- comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-eō], *comrade, companion*.
- comitium, -ī, n. [com-eō], (*place of assembling*), the *comitium*, a part of the Roman forum.
- com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call to mind, remember, recount, tell*.
- com-minus, adv. [-manus], *hand to hand*. Cf. ēminus.
- com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *in-trust, commit*: proelium committere, *join battle, engage*.
- com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate, move*. COMMOTION.
- commūnis, -e, adj. *common, general*.
- com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, (*drive together*), *force, compel*.
- com-plector, -ī, -plexus sum, *embrace*.
- com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, fill up, cover*. COMPLETE.
- com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), adj. *very many, many, a number*.
- com-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, *catch, seize*.
- com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [-premō], *press together, grasp; check, suppress*. COMPRESS.
- compulsus, *see compellō*.
- cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor], *attempt*.
- con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, — [-cadō], *fall down, fall*.
- con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rouse up, rouse, spur on*.
- concordia, -ae, f., (*an agreeing together*), *union, harmony, concord*.
- con-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursus, *run together, rush together, rally, gather*. CONCOURSE.
- condiciō, -ōnis, f. [con-dīcō], (*a talking together*), *agreement, condition, terms*.
- con-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *conceal, hide; found*. Cf. cēlō.
- con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give up, surrender; forgive, pardon, condone*.
- cō-nectō, -ere, —, -nexus, *bind together; join, tie*. CONNECT.
- cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus (coll-), *bring together, collect*: sē cōnferre, *betake one's self*. (506.)
- cōn-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick, dense*.
- cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f. *confession*.

- cōnfestim**, adv. *immediately, forthwith.*
- cōn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out.*
- cōn-fidō**, -ere, -fīsus sum (semi-deponent), *trust entirely; believe, trust.* CONFIDE.
- cōn-firmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm, strengthen, steady.* CONFIRM.
- cōn-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee for refuge, flee.*
- con-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum [-gradior], *(come together); engage in battle, meet, fight.* CONGRESS.
- con-gregō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [grex], *(herd together), gather, collect, assemble.* CONGREGATE.
- cōn-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō], *throw together; throw, put, hurl, cast.* CONJECTURE.
- con-iungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *join together, unite.* CONJUNCTION.
- coniūnx**, -iugis, m. and f. [coniungō], *husband, wife.* CONJUGAL.
- con-iūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *unite by oath, conspire.* CONJURE.
- con-locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, station.* Cf. **pōnō**.
- conloquium**, -ī, n. [con-loquor], *a talking together; conversation, conference, colloquy.*
- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt, try.*
- con-ripiō**, -ere, -uī, -reptus [-rapiō], *seize, take hold of.*
- con-ruō**, -ere, -uī, —, *fall together, fall down, fall.* Cf. **concidō**.
- cōn-salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *salute cordially, greet.*
- cōn-scendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēsus [-scandō], *climb up, mount, go on board.*
- cōnsēsus**, -ūs, m. [cōn-sentiō], *agreement, unanimity, consent.*
- cōn-serō**, -ere, -uī, -sertus, *join; with manum, fight hand to hand.*
- cōn-servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *preserve, save.*
- cōn-sīdō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *sit down.*
- cōnsilium**, -ī, n. *advice, counsel, prudence, wisdom; plan, design.*
- cōn-sistō**, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *stand firm, take one's stand, halt; depend, rest.*
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, m. *look, view, sight.*
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *get sight of, descry.*
- cōnstanter**, adv. [cōnstantia], *firmly, steadily, resolutely.*
- cōnstantia**, -ae, f. [cōnstanter], *firmness; constancy.*
- cōn-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [-statuō], *establish, determine, fix, decide, resolve.* CONSTITUTION.
- cōn-suēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *accustom; become accustomed; perf. be accustomed, be wont.* Cf. **soleō**.
- cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, habit.*
- cōnsul**, -ulis, m. *consul.* (479, b.)
- cōnsulātus**, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], *consulship.*
- cōn-sūmō**, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *use up, spend, pass, consume.*
- con-temnō**, -ere, -tempī, -temptus, *despise, contemn.*
- contemptus**, -ūs, m. [contemnō], *contempt, scorn.*

- con-tendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus, *strain, struggle, strive, hasten*. **CON-TEND.**
- contentiō**, -ōnis, f. [contendō], *struggle, exertion*. **CONTENTION.**
- con-tineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [-teneō], *hold together, keep together, hold, contain*.
- continuus**, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], *continuous, successive*.
- contrā**, prep. with acc. *against, contrary to*.
- contrōversia**, -ae, f. *dispute, quarrel; controversy*.
- contumēliōsē**, adv. *abusively, insolently*.
- con-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, assemble; convene*.
- con-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, turn away*. **CONVERT.**
- convivium**, -ī, n. *feast, banquet*.
- con-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon, convoke*.
- cōpia**, -ae, f. [com-ops], *abundance, wealth, plenty; plur. troops, forces*. **COPIOUS.**
- cōram**, adv. *face to face*.
- Corinthus**, -ī, f. *Corinth*. (47, 2.)
- Coriolānus**, -ī, m. *Coriolanus*, a famous Roman warrior.
- Coriolī**, -ōrum, m. plur. *Corioli*, an ancient town in Italy.
- Cornēlia**, -ae, f. *Cornelia*, mother of the Gracchi.
- cornū**, -ūs, n. *horn*. (242.)
- corōna**, -ae, f. *crown*. **CORONET.**
- corpus**, -oris, n. *body*. (163.) **CORPSE.**
- corvus**, -ī, m. *raven; grappling hook*.
- cotidiē**, adv. [quot-diēs], *daily*.
- crātēra**, -ae, f. *mixing bowl, bowl*. **CRATER.**
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj. *thick, numerous, frequent*. Cf. *frequēns*.
- crēdibilis**, -e, adj. *to be believed, credible*.
- creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make, create; choose, elect*.
- cruciātus**, -ūs, m. *torture*. **EXCRUCIATING.**
- crūdēlis**, -e, adj. *cruel*.
- cruentus**, -a, -um, adj. [cruor], *bloody*.
- cruor**, -ōris, m. *blood, gore*. Cf. *sanguis*.
- crūs**, *crūris*, n. *leg*.
- cubiculum**, -ī, n. [cubō], *bedchamber*.
- cubō**, -āre, -uī, -itūrus, *lie, lie asleep*.
- culpa**, -ae, f. [culpō], *blame, fault*. **CULPABLE.** Cf. *vitium*.
- culpō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [culpa], *blame, find fault with*.
- culter**, -trī, m. *knife, butcher's knife*.
- cum**, conj. *when; as, since; though, although*. (397, 398.)
- cum**, prep. with abl. *with*.
- cūnae**, -ārum, f. plur. *cradle*.
- cūctus**, -a, -um, adj. *all together, all*. Cf. *omnis, tōtus, and ūniversus*.
- cupidē**, adv. [cupidus], *eagerly*.
- cupiditās**, -ātis, f. [cupidus], *longing, desire*. **CUPIDITY.**
- cupidus**, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], *desirous, fond*.
- cupiō**, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [cupidus], *desire, be eager for*. Cf. *volō*.
- cūr**, adv. [quā-rē], *why, wherefore*.
- cūra**, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety*.
- cūriōsus**, -a, -um, adj. *inquisitive, curious*.



- cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra], *care for, take care*; with gerundive, *have* (a thing done).
- currus**, -ūs, m. *chariot, car*.
- cursus**, -ūs, m. *course*.
- curūlis**, -e, adj. *cur'us*: *sella curūlis*, *official chair*, used by higher magistrates.
- custōdiō**, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [custōs], *guard, protect, defend*.
- custōs**, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper*. CUSTODIAN.
- Cyclōps**, -ōpis, m., (*round eye*), a *Cyclops*, one of a fabulous race of giants on the coast of Sicily.
- damnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damnum], *condemn, sentence, doom*.
- damnum**, -ī, n. [damnō], *hurt, harm, damage, loss*.
- dē**, prep. with abl. *down from, from; about, concerning, of; (of time) in, during, for*.
- dea**, -ae, f. [deus], *goddess*. (Page 22, note 2.)
- dēbeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *owe, ought, must, should*.
- dēbitus**, -a, -um, adj. [dēbeō], *owed; due, appropriate*. DEBIT, DEBT.
- dē-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *depart; die*. Cf. *abeō* and *morior*.
- decem**, indecl. num. adj. *ten*.
- dē-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, (*separate from*), *decide, settle, determine; contend; decree*.
- dē-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, — [-cadō], *fall down, fall off*.
- decimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth*.
- dē-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [-capiō], *deceive*.
- dē-clārō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [clārus], (*clear off*), *disclose, prove, show, declare*.
- dē-currō**, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursus, *run down*.
- dēditicius**, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], *surrendered*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *prisoners of war, subjects*.
- dēditio**, -ōnis, f. [dēdō], *a giving up; surrender*.
- dē-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, give away; surrender*.
- dē-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down, lead off, escort, bring to*.
- dē-fendō**, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect*.
- dēfēnsor**, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], *defender, protector*.
- dē-fessus**, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary, very tired*.
- dē-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *be wanting, fail, run out*. DEFECT.
- dē-figō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *fasten, fix; strike motionless, stupefy, astonish*.
- Dēianīra**, -ae, f. *Deianira*, wife of Hercules.
- dē-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō], *throw down, let fall; pass. slip, stumble*. DEJECTED.
- dēiectus**, see *dēiciō*.
- dē-inde**, adv., (*from thence*), *then, afterwards, next*.
- dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight*.
- dēleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy, wipe out*. DELETE.
- dē-ligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind down, fasten, tie*.
- dē-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [-legō], *pick out, choose, select*.

- Delphī, -ōrum, m. *Delphi*, a town in Greece.
- Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *of Delphi, Delphic.*
- dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *migrate from; remove, go away.* Cf. abeō and dēcēdō.
- dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, (*send down*), *let down, let go, lose.*
- dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show, describe.* DEMONSTRATE.
- dēmum, adv. *at length, at last: tum dēmum, not till then.*
- dēnique, adv. *at last, finally; at least, at any rate.*
- dēns, dentis, m. *tooth.* DENTIST.
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. *thick, dense.*
- dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, drive away, remove, banish.*
- dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put down, lay aside, abandon.* DEPOSIT.
- dēpositus, *see dēpōnō.*
- dēpulsus, *see dēpellō.*
- dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, (*climb down*), *come down, descend.*
- dē-serō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *abandon, desert.*
- dēsertus, *see dēserō.*
- dē-siliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus, *jump down, leap down.*
- dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, (*stand off or apart*), *leave off, cease; desist.*
- dēspectus, -ūs, m., (*a looking down upon*), *view, prospect; plur. heights.*
- dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *be hopeless, despair.*
- dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, deprive, despoil.*
- dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be from, be wanting, lack; with dat.*
- dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *draw off, throw off, remove.* DETRACT.
- dē-trectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [-tractō], *decline, refuse.*
- dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (*thrust down*), *upset, drive away, dislodge.*
- deus, -ī, m. *god.* (482.)
- dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swallow up, devour, gulp down.*
- dē-voeō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *vow, offer, devote.*
- dexter, -tra, -trum (-era, -erum), adj. *right (hand).* DEXTEROUS.
- dextra, -ae, f. [dexter], *right hand.*
- dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus (imv. dīc, for dīce), *say, tell, speak; ap- point.*
- dictātor, -ōris, m. [dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator.*
- dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *dictatorship.*
- diēs, -ēī, m. and f. *day.* (275.)
- dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis-facilis], *hard, difficult.* (254.)
- difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis], *difficulty.*
- dīgnus, -a, -um, adj. *worthy, deserving; with abl.*
- dī-laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tear to pieces.*
- dīligenter, adv. [diligentia], *diligently, industriously.*
- dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligenter], *diligence, carefulness, industry.*
- dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend.* Cf. pūgāō.

- dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send off, dismiss; let slip, let go by.*
- dīs-**, **dī-** (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions.* Cf. **dīmittō**, **discēdō**, **dissimilis**, **distrahō**.
- dīs-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *depart, withdraw, go off.* Cf. **abeō** and **dēcēdō**.
- disciplīna**, -ae, f. [discō], *order, discipline.*
- discō**, -ere, didicī, discitūrus, *learn.*
- discordia**, -ae, f. [discordō], *disagreement, discord.*
- discordō**, -āre, —, — [discordia], *be at variance, differ, quarrel.*
- discrīmen**, -inis, n. *risk, danger; crisis.* Cf. **periculum**.
- dīs-cutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [-quatiō], *(shake apart), scatter, remove.* DISCUSS.
- dīs-similis**, -e, adj. *unlike, dissimilar.*
- dīs-tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *divide, distribute.*
- dīū**, adv. *for a long time, long.* (490.)
- dī-vellō**, -ere, -vellī, -volsus, *tear asunder, tear apart.*
- dīversus**, -a, -um, adj., *(turned away), separate, different, diverse.*
- dīves**, -itis, adj. *rich.*
- dī-vidō**, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide, apportion.* DIVISION.
- dīvīnus**, -a, -um, adj. *of the gods, divine.*
- dīvitiae**, -ārum, f. plur. [dīves], *riches, wealth.*
- dīvolsus**, see **dīvellō**.
- dō**, dare, dedī, datus, *give, offer; fut.* Cf. **dōnō**.
- doceō**, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show.*
- doleō**, -ēre, -uī, — [dolor], *grieve, be sorry.*
- dolor**, -ōris, m. [doleō], *pain, grief.*  
DOLOROUS.
- dolus**, -ī, m. *deceit, trick, fraud, cunning.*
- domina**, -ae, f. [dominus], *mistress, lady.*
- dominus**, -ī, m. [domina], *lord, master, owner.* (109.) DOMINATE.
- domus**, -ūs, f. *house, home: domi, at home.* (195, b, 197, 482.) DOMESTIC.
- dōnec**, conj. *until.*
- dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dōnum], *give, present.* DONATE. Cf. **dō**.
- dōnum**, -ī, n. [dō], *gift, present.*
- dormiō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, *sleep.*  
DORMITORY.
- dracō**, -ōnis, m. *serpent, dragon.*
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dubius], *hesitate, doubt.*
- dubium**, -ī, n. [dubius], *doubt.*
- dubius**, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful.* DUBIOUS.
- dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dux], *lead, draw; derive.*
- Duilius (C.)**, -ī, m. *Caius Duilius*, a Roman general.
- dulcis**, -e, adj. *sweet, pleasant.*  
DULCET.
- dum**, conj. *while, as long as; until.*
- duo**. *duae, duo, num. adj. two.* (304.) Cf. **ambō**.
- duo-decim** [-decem], indecl. num. adj. *twelve.*
- duo-decim**, num. adj. [duodecim], *twelfth.* \*
- duo-dē-vīgintī**, num. adj. *eighteen.*

- duplex**, -icis, adj. [duo], *twofold, double*.
- dūrus**, -a, -um, adj. *hard, rough, harsh, cruel*.
- dux**, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō], *leader, general*. DUKE. Cf. imperātor.
- ē**, see ex.
- ē-dīcō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *declare, publish, proclaim*. EDICT.
- edō**, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, *eat, devour, consume*. EDIBLE. Cf. dēvorō.
- ē-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put forth, raise, utter*.
- ēducō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, train, educate*.
- ē-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, lead forth, bring away; draw*.
- Edvardus**, -ī, m. *Edward*.
- ef-ferō**, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-], *bear out, carry forth; lift up, raise*. (506.) ELATED.
- ef-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-faciō], *bring about, effect, accomplish*.
- ef-flō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-], (*blow out*), *breathe out*.
- ef-fundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus [ex-], *pour forth, pour out, shed*.
- effūsus**, see effundō.
- ego**, pers. pron. *I*; plur. nōs, *we*. (492.) EGOTIST.
- ē-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum, *go out, go forth: in terram ēgressus, having gone ashore*.
- ēgregiē**, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently*.
- ēgregius**, -a, -um, adj. *extraordinary, distinguished, excellent*. EGREGIOUS. Cf. eximius and praestāns.
- ēgressus**, see ēgredior.
- ēheu**, interj. *alas!*
- ēlātus**, see efferō.
- elephantus**, -ī, m. *elephant*.
- ē-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [-legō], *pick out, choose, select*. ELECT.
- Ēlis**, -idis, f. *Elis*, a division of Greece.
- Elisabētha**, -ae, f. *Elizabeth*, a queen of England.
- ē-minus**, adv. [-manus], *at a distance, afar*. Cf. comminus.
- ē-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send forth, let loose, let out*. EMIT.
- emō**, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy*.
- enim**, conj. (never the first word), *for; indeed, in fact*. Cf. nam.
- ēnsis**, -is, m. *sword*. Cf. gladius.
- e-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius], *proclaim, announce, reveal, utter*. ENUNCIATE.
- eō**, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there*.
- eō**, ire, ivī (iī), itūrus, *go*. (507.)
- Ēpīrus**, -ī, f. *Epirus*, a division of Greece.
- epistula**, -ae, f. *letter, epistle*.
- epulae**, -ārum, f. plur. *feast, banquet*.
- eques**, -itis, m. [equus], *horseman, knight*.
- equester**, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], (*of horsemen*), *equestrian*.
- equidem**, adv. *indeed, certainly, truly*.
- equitātus**, -ūs, m. [eques], (*body of horsemen*), *cavalry*.
- equus**, -ī, m. *horse*. EQUINE.
- ergā**, prep. with abl. *towards*.
- ē-ripiō**, -ere, -uī, -reptus [-rapiō], *snatch out, seize: sē ēripere, escape*.

- errō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander, err.*
- ē-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *burst forth, break out.*
- ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f. [ē-rumpō], (*a bursting forth*), *sally.* ERUPTION.
- et**, conj. *and, also: et . . . et, both . . . and.* Cf. *atque, ac, and -que.*
- etiam**, adv. and conj. [et-iam], (*and now*), *also, even.* Cf. *quoque.*
- Etrūscī**, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Etruscans*, people of Etruria, in Italy.
- et-sī**, conj. *although.*
- Eunomus**, -ī, m. *Eunomus.*
- Eurōpa**, -ae, f. *Europe.*
- Eurystheus**, -ī, m. *Eurystheus*, king of Mycenae, in Greece.
- Eurytus**, -ī, m. *Eurytus*, father of Iole.
- ē-vādō**, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, (*go out*), *get away, escape.* EVADE.
- ē-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, (*come out*), *fall out, happen, turn out.* Cf. *accidō* and *fiō.*
- ēventus**, -ūs, m. [ēveniō], (*a happening*), *issue, result, event.*
- ex** or **ē**, prep. with abl. *out of, from, of, off, on; in accordance with.*
- ex-animātus**, -a, -um, adj. *breathless, out of breath, exhausted.*
- ex-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [-capiō], *receive, welcome, entertain; cut off, interrupt.* EXCEPT.
- ex-citō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (*call out*), *rouse, arouse, wake.* EXCITE.
- ex-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, exclaim.*
- excursiō**, -ōnis, f., (*a running out*), *sally, sortie.* EXCURSION.
- excussus**, *see* *excutiō.*
- ex-cutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussus [-quatiō], *shake off, throw off, strike off.*
- exemplum**, -ī, n. *sample, example, warning.*
- ex-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out, go forth, come out.* (507.) EXIT. Cf. *ēgredior.*
- exercitus**, -ūs, m., (*the thing trained*), *army.*
- eximius**, -a, -um, adj. *excellent, remarkable.* Cf. *ēgregius.*
- ex-istimātiō**, -ōnis, f. [ex-istimō], *estimate, opinion.*
- ex-istimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, judge, consider, suppose.* Cf. *arbitror* and *putō.*
- exitium**, -ī, n. [ex-eō], *ruin, destruction.*
- ex-orior**, -īrī, -ortus sum, *spring up, arise, appear; begin.*
- ex-ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prevail upon, persuade, induce.*
- ex-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, expel.* EXPULSION.
- ex-perior**, -īrī, -pertus sum [-pariō], *try, test; experience.* Cf. *tentō.*
- expertus**, *see* *experior.*
- ex-petō**, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *seek out, demand, ask.*
- ex-piō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make amends for, expiate.*
- explōrātor**, -ōris, m. [explōrō], *scout, spy.*
- ex-plōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [explōrātor] *examine, explore, investigate.*
- ex-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, explain, relate; expose.*
- expositus**, *see* *expōnō.*

- ex-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, take, capture*. Cf. **oppūgnō**.
- expulsus**, *see expellō*.
- ex-secror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *curse, execrate, abhor*.
- ex-serō**, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, *thrust out*.
- ex-siliō**, -īre, -siluī, —, *jump forth, dart out*.
- exsilium**, -ī, n. [exsil], *exile*.
- ex-spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *await, wait for, wait, expect*.
- ex-spīrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die*. Cf. **morior** and **dēcēdō**.
- ex-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, (*heap up*), *build, erect, construct*.
- exsul**, -ulis, m. and f. *an exile*.
- extemplō**, adv. *immediately, forthwith*. Cf. **subitō** and **repente**.
- ex-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten, affright*.
- extrā**, prep. with acc. *outside of, beyond*.
- extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj. *outermost, last, furthest; end of; extreme*. (489.)
- faber**, -brī, *workman, artisan, smith*.
- Fabius**, -ī, m. (**Quintus Fabius** (**Maximus**)), a celebrated Roman consul.
- Fabricius**, -ī, m. **Fabricius**, a famous Roman general.
- fābula**, -ae, f. *story, tale, fable*.
- facile**, adv. [facilis], *easily*.
- facilis**, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy*. (254.) FACILITY.
- faciō**, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make; form, perform*.
- factum**, -ī, n. [faciō], *act, deed, action*.
- FACT.
- facultās**, -ātis, f. [faciō], *power, opportunity, chance*. FACULTY.
- fāma**, -ae, f. *rumor, report; fame, renown*.
- famēs**, -is, f. *hunger, famine*.
- familia**, -ae, f. *household, family*.
- fascis**, -is, m. *bundle, load; plur. the fasces, a bundle of rods with an axe, carried by the lictors*.
- Faustulus**, -ī, m. **Faustulus**, a shepherd.
- favēō**, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor, befriend; with dat.*
- fax**, facis, f. *torch, firebrand*.
- Februārius**, -ī, m. **February**.
- fēlēs**, -is, f. *cat*. FELINE.
- fēliciter**, adv. [fēlix], *luckily, fortunately, successfully*.
- fēlīx**, -īcis, adj. *lucky, fortunate, happy*. FELICITY.
- fēmina**, -ae, f. *woman*. FEMININE. Cf. **mulier**.
- ferē**, adv. *nearly, for the most part, almost, about*.
- ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring; report, say*. (506.) Cf. **portō** and **vehō**; also **tolerō**.
- ferōx**, -ōcis, adj. *fierce, impetuous*. FEROCIOUS.
- ferreus**, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron, iron*.
- ferrum**, -ī, n. *iron; sword*. Cf. **gladius** and **ēnsis**.
- ferveō**, -ēre, —, —, *be hot, glow*. FERVENT.
- fidēlis**, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful*. FIDELITY.
- fidēs**, -eī, f. *trust, confidence*.

- fidus**, -a, -um, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful*.
- figūra**, -ae, f. [fi(n)gō], *shape, form; figure*.
- filia**, -ae, f. [filius], *daughter*. (Page 22, note 2.)
- filius**, -ī, m. [filia], *son*. (478, a.)  
FILIAl.
- finḡō**, -ere, finxī, fictus, *fashion, devise*. FEIGN. FICTION.
- finis**, -is, m. *end, border*; plur. *territories*. (169, c.) FINAL.
- finitimus**, -a, -um, adj. [finis], *bordering upon*; plur. *neighbors*.
- fiō**, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, be done, become, happen*. (508.) Cf. accidō and ēveniō.
- fīrmus**, -a, -um, adj. *strong, firm*.
- flagrāns**, -antis, adj. *flaming, blazing, burning*. FLAGRANT.
- flectō**, -ere, flēxī, flexus, *bend, turn*.  
FLEXIBLE.
- flūmen**, -inis, n., (*that which flows*), *river, stream*.
- fluvius**, -ī, m., (*the flowing thing*), *river, stream*.
- foculus**, -ī, m. *sacrificial hearth, fire pan, brazier*.
- foedus**, -a, -um, adj. *filthy, foul, horrible*.
- foedus**, -eris, n. *league, treaty, alliance*. FEDERAL.
- folium**, -ī, n. *leaf*. FOLIAGE.
- fōns**, fontis, m. *spring, fount, source*.
- fore**, for futūrum esse.
- forma**, -ae, f. *form, figure; beauty*.
- fors**, fortis, f. *chance, luck*.
- forte**, adv. [fors], *by chance, perhaps*.
- fortis**, -e, adj. [fortiter], *strong, brave, courageous*. Cf. validus.
- fortiter**, adv. [fortis], *bravely, courageously*.
- fortitūdō**, -inis, f. [fortis], *strength, bravery, endurance; fortitude*.
- fortūna**, -ae, f. [fors], *fortune, good fortune*.
- fossa**, -ae, f. *ditch, trench, fosse; canal*.
- fragor**, -ōris, m. [frangō], *crash*.
- frangō**, -ere, frēgī, frāctus [fragor], *break in pieces, break*. FRACTURE.
- frāter**, -tris, m. *brother*. FRATER-NAL.
- fraus**, fraudis, f. *deceit, trickery, crime*. FRAUD.
- frequēns**, -entis, adj. *crowded, in great numbers*. FREQUENT. Cf. crēber.
- frīgidus**, -a, -um, adj. [frīgus], *cold*.  
FRIGID.
- frīgus**, -oris, n. [frīgidus], *cold*.
- frōns**, frondis, f. *leaf, foliage*.
- frūmentum**, -ī, n. [fruor], *corn, grain*.
- fruor**, -ī, frūctus (fruitus) [frūmentum], *enjoy*; with abl. (388.)
- frūstrā**, adv. *in vain*. FRUSTRATE.
- fuga**, -ae, f. [fugiō], *flight*.
- fugiō**, -ere, fūgī, — [fugō, fuga], *run away, flee; flee from*. FUGITIVE.
- fugō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fugiō, fuga], *put to flight, rout*.
- fūmus**, -ī, m. *smoke*. FUMES.
- fundō**, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out*.
- fūnis**, -is, m. *rope, cord*. (176, a.)
- furor**, -ōris, m. *madness, frenzy, furor*.
- fūsus**, see fundō.

- Gāius, Gāi, m. Caius**, a Roman first name.
- Galba, -ae, m. Galba.**
- galea, -ae, f. helmet.** (Page 89.)
- Gallia, -ae, f. Gaul.**
- Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. Gallic.**
- gallīna, -ae, f. hen.**
- Gallus, -ī, m. a Gaul.**
- gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum** (semi-deponent) [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice.*
- gaudium, -ī, n. [gaudeō], joy, gladness.** Cf. *laetitia.*
- gāvīsus, see gaudeō.**
- Gelertus, -ī, m. Gelert**, name of a hound.
- geminus, -a, -um, adj. twin-born, twin.**
- gemitus, -ūs, m. groan, moan.**
- gemma, -ae, f. gem, jewel.**
- gēns, gentis, f. [genus], race, tribe, house, family.** GENTEEL.
- genus, -eris, n. [gēns], race, lineage; kind, class.**
- Germānus, -ī, m. a German.**
- gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on, wage (war); manage, do; wear: sē gerere, act, behave; pass. go on, take place.**
- gigās, -antis, m. giant.**
- gladius, -ī, m. sword.** (Page 27.) Cf. *ēnsis.*
- gracilis, -e, adj. slender.** (254.)
- gradus, -ūs, m. step; period, stage.** (242.) GRADE.
- Graecia, -ae, f. Greece.**
- Graecus, -ī, m. a Greek.**
- grāmen, -inis, n. grass.**
- grātia, -ae, f. [grātus], favor, kindness; plur. thanks, gratitude.**
- grātor, -ārī, -ātus sum [grātus], give thanks, thank; with dat.**
- grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [grātus], congratulate.**
- grātus, -a, -um, adj. [grātia], acceptable, pleasing; grateful.**
- gravis, -e, adj. [graviter], heavy, severe, serious.** GRAVE.
- graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily, severely, vehemently, greatly.**
- gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gravis], oppress, burden, overcome.**
- gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, taste, eat.**
- habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold, keep; with *ōrātiōnem*, make, deliver.**
- habilis, -e, adj. [habeō], (easily handled), suitable, fit.**
- habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of habeō], inhabit; dwell, live.** Cf. *incolō* and *vivō.*
- haedus, -ī, m. young goat, kid.**
- haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus, stick, cling, be fixed; be perplexed, hesitate.** ADHERE.
- Hannibal, -alis, m. Hannibal**, a famous Carthaginian general. (Page 97.)
- hasta, -ae, f. spear.** (53.) (Page 43.)
- haud, adv. not.** Cf. *nōn.*
- haud-quāquam, adv. by no means, not at all.**
- hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, drink, drain.** EXHAUST.
- herbidus, -a, -um, adj. grassy.**
- Herclē, interj. by Hercules, assuredly, indeed.**
- Herculēs, -is, m. Hercules**, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength.



- Hesperidēs**, -um, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters of Iesperus, guardians of the golden apples.
- hesternus**, -a, -um, adj. *of yesterday, yester-*.
- hīc**, haec, hōc, demon. pron. *this, this of mine*; as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (200.)
- hīc**, adv. *here, hereupon.*
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -atūrus [hiems], *spend the winter.*
- hiems**, hiemis, f. [hiemō], *winter; storm.*
- hinc**, adv. [hīc], *hence, from here.*
- Hispania**, -ae, f. *Spain.*
- Hispanus**, -ī, m. *a Spaniard.*
- historia**, -ae, f. *history.*
- ho-diē**, adv. [hōc-diē], *to-day.*
- homō**, -inis, m. and f., (*human being*), *man.* (163.) Cf. **vir**.
- honor**, -ōris, m. *honor.*
- honōrificē**, adv. [honor], *honorably, with marks of honor.*
- hōra**, -ae, f. *hour*: in *hōrās*, *from hour to hour, hourly.*
- Horātius**, -ī, m. *Horatius (Cocles).*
- horribilis**, -e, adj. *terrible, dreadful, horrible.* Cf. **terribilis**.
- hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *urge, entreat, exhort.*
- hortus**, -ī, m. *garden.* (84.)
- hospitium**, -ī, n. *hospitality.*
- hostilis**, -e, adj. [hostis], *of the enemy, hostile.* Cf. **infestus**.
- hostis**, -is, m. and f. *enemy.* (169, 171.) **HOSTILE.** Cf. **inimicus**.
- hūc**, adv. [hīc], *hither.*
- hūmānitās**, -ātis, f. [hūmānus], *humanity, gentleness, kindness, refinement.*
- hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [homō], (*pertaining to man*), *man's, human.*
- humī** (locative), *on the ground.* (195, b).
- humilis**, -e, *low, lowly, humble.*
- Hydra**, -ae, f. [hydrus], *the Hydra*, a water monster killed by Hercules.
- hydrus**, -ī, m. *water-serpent, serpent, snake.*
- iaceō**, -ēre, -uī, — [iaciō], (*be thrown*), *lie, lie dead.*
- iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactus [iaceō], *throw, cast, hurl.*
- iaculum**, -ī, n. [iaciō], (*the thing thrown*), *dart, javelin.*
- iam**, adv. *already, now, at last*: **nōn iam**, *no longer.* Cf. **nunc**.
- Iāniculum**, -ī, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome.
- ibi**, adv. [is], *in that place, there.*
- ictus**, -ūs, m. *stroke, blow.*
- īdem**, eadem, idem, demon. pron. [is], *same*: **īdem quī**, *same as.* (329.)
- id-eō**, adv. *for that reason, therefore.*
- idōneus**, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable.*
- īdūs**, -uum, f. *the Ides.*
- igitur**, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then.* Cf. **itaque**.
- īgnis**, -is, m. *fire.* (169, c.) **IGNITE.**
- īgnōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *not know, be ignorant of.* **IGNORE.**
- īgnōtus**, -a, -um, adj. [in-(g)nōtus], *unknown, unfamiliar, strange.*
- ille**, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (yonder)*; as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (200.)

- imbēcillis**, -e, adj. *weak, feeble*.  
IMBECILE.
- imbuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *wet, moisten, soak*. IMBUE.
- imitor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *imitate, copy*.
- immānitās**, -ātis, f. *savageness, cruelty, barbarity*.
- im-mineō**, -ēre, -uī, — [in-], *hang over, impend*. IMMINENT.
- im-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [in-], *send against, let fly, let in*.
- impediō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus [in-pēs], *entangle, hamper, impede*.
- im-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [in-], *move, induce, drive, impel*.
- imperātor**, -ōris, m. [imperō], *commander, general*. EMPEROR.
- imperātum**, -ī, n. [imperō], *order, command*. Cf. iūssum.
- imperium**, -ī, n. [imperō], *command, rule, power*. EMPIRE.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [imperium], *order, command, demand*; with dat. IMPERATIVE. Cf. iubeō.
- impetus**, -ūs, m. *attack, assault*. IMPETUOUS.
- impiger**, -gra, -grum, adj. [in-piger], *(not slow), active, diligent*.
- im-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [in-], *fill up, cover, fill*.
- im-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [in-], *put or place in or upon; mount; impose*; with dat.
- impositus**, *see impōnō*.
- improbus**, -a, -um, adj., *(not good), bad, wicked, shameless*.
- impulsus**, *see impellō*.
- in**, prep. with acc. *into, to, against, upon, towards, for*; with abl. *in, on, in case of*.
- in-**, prefix, *into, upon, towards, etc.*; also in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. *un-, in-, not*.
- in-calēscō**, -ere, -caluī, —, *grow warm, grow hot*.
- in-cendō**, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn*. INCENDIARY.
- incēnsus**, -a, -um, adj. [incendō], *inflamed, hot, fiery*. INCENSE.
- inceptus**, *see incipiō*.
- in-certus**, -a, -um, adj. *uncertain, doubtful*. Cf. dubius.
- in-cidō**, -ere, -dī, — [-cadō], *fall into: in insāniam incidere, become insane*.
- in-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [-capiō], *(take in hand), begin*. INCIPIENT.
- in-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out; appeal to*.
- in-clūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sus [-claudō], *shut in, confine*. INCLUDE.
- incola**, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant*.
- in-colō**, -ere, -uī, — [incola],  *dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell*. Cf. habitō and vivō.
- incolumis**, -e, adj. *unharméd, safe*. Cf. salvus.
- in-crepitō**, -āre, —, —, *upbraid, taunt, abuse*.
- inde**, adv. [is], *thence, thereupon*.
- indīcium**, -ī, n. *evidence, proof, sign, token*.
- in-dīcō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *proclaim, declare, appoint*. INDICT.
- in-diligenter**, adv. *carelessly, listlessly*.
- indolēs**, -is, f. *nature, character*.

- in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, draw to, induce, persuade.*
- induō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *put on, clothe one's self in, clothe, wrap.*
- industria**, -ae, f. *diligence, industry.*
- in-eō**, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -itus, *go in, enter; begin, form.* (507.)
- īn-fāns**, -antis, adj., (*not speaking*); as noun, *infant, baby.*
- īn-fēlīx**, -īcis, adj. *unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy.*
- īnferior**, -ius, adj. [īnferus], *lower.* (489.) INFERIOR.
- īn-ferō**, īnferre, intulī, inlātus, (*hear in or against*), *cause, bring upon, inflict; with dat.* (506.)
- īnferus**, -a, -um, adj. *low, below, underneath.* (489.)
- īnfēstus**, -a, -um, adj. *hostile; as noun, enemy.* Cf. *hostilis.*
- īn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *soak, imbue, stain.* INFECT.
- īnfula**, -ae, f. *fillet (worn by priests).*
- ingenium**, -ī, n. *genius, temper, character.*
- ingēns**, -entis, adj. *huge, great.* Cf. *māgnus.*
- in-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum, *step in, enter.* Cf. *intrō.*
- ingressus**, *see ingredior.*
- in-hiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gape at, long for, desire.* Cf. *cupiō.*
- in-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō], *throw upon, cast upon, put upon.*
- iniectus**, *see iniciō.*
- in-imīcus**, -ī, m. [-amīcus], *enemy.* (171.) INIMICAL. Cf. *hostis.*
- in-īquus**, -a, um, adj. [-aequus], *unequal; uneven, unfavorable.*
- initium**, -ī, n. [īneō], *beginning.*
- INITIAL.
- iniūria**, -ae, f. [in-iūs], *wrong, harm, insult, injury.*
- in-iūssū**, only abl. *without command.*
- inluviēs**, —, abl. -ē, *dirt, filth.*
- inopia**, -ae, f. *want, poverty, lack, need.*
- inquit** (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he.*
- in-rideō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*
- inrīsus**, -ūs, m. [inrideō], *mockery, derision: ab inrīsū, in mockery.*
- in-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break into, break in, rush at.* IRRUPTION.
- īnsānia**, -ae, f. *insanity, madness.*
- in-sidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *sit upon.*
- īn-signe**, -is, n. [īnsignis], *mark, sign, symbol, insignia.*
- īnsignis**, -e, adj. [in-signum], (*distinguished by a mark*), *remarkable, conspicuous, prominent.*
- īn-siliō**, -īre, -uī, —, *leap upon, throw one's self upon.*
- īn-sinuō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *thrust in, push in.* INSINUATE.
- īn-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [-statuō], *set up, fix, arrange.*
- īn-stō**, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, (*stand against*), *press on, pursue.*
- īnstrūctus**, *see instruō.*
- īnstrūmentum**, -ī, n. [īnstruō], *instrument.*
- īn-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build in, form; instruct, train; prepare, provide.*
- īnsula**, -ae, f. *island.* PENINSULA.

- in-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in, be among*; with dat. and with in and abl. (345.)
- intellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [interlegō], (*choose between*), *learn, know, perceive, understand*. INTELLECT. Cf. cōgnōscō.
- in-tendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus, (*stretch out towards*), *bend, aim*. INTEND.
- inter**, prep. with acc. *between, among, amid, during, while*: inter sē, *together*.
- inter-dum**, adv. *sometimes*.
- inter-eā**, adv. *meanwhile*.
- interfectus**, see interficiō.
- inter-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *kill, slay, put to death*. Cf. necō and occidō.
- interior**, -us, adj. *inner, interior*. (489.)
- interpres**, -etis, m. *interpreter*.
- inter-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break down*. INTERRUPT.
- inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be among, be present at*; with dat. (345.) Cf. adsum.
- intrā**, prep. with acc. *within*.
- intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go into, enter*. Cf. ingrediōr.
- intrō-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead in, introduce*.
- introitus**, -ūs, m. [intrō-eō], *entrance*.
- intrō-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, (*let go in*), *let in, admit*.
- intus**, adv. [in], *within, inside*.
- in-undō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *overflow, inundate, cover*.
- in-ūsitatūs**, -a, -um, adj. *unusual, strange*.
- in-vādō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come upon, attack, invade, take possession of*.
- in-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, discover*. Cf. reperiō.
- in-vicem**, adv. *in turn, mutually*.
- in-victus**, -a, -um, adj. [-vincō], *unconquered, invincible*.
- in-videō**, -ēre, -visī, -vīsus [invidia], (*look towards*), *be jealous of, envy*.
- invidia**, -ae, f. [invideō], *envy, jealousy*?
- Iolāus**, -ī, m. *Iolaus*, a friend of Hercules.
- Iolē**, -ēs, f. *Iole*, daughter of Eurystus.
- Iphiclēs**, -is, m. *Iphicles*, brother of Hercules.
- ipse**, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron. *self, very*. (329.)
- īra**, -ae, f. *anger, wrath, ire*.
- īrātus**, -a, -um, adj. [īrā], *angry, enraged*. IRATE.
- is**, ea, id, demon. pron. *that*; as pers. pron. *he, she, it*. (138.)
- iste**, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (of yours)*. (493.)
- isthmus**, -ī, m. *isthmus*.
- ita**, adv. *so, thus*. Cf. sic and tam.
- Ītalia**, -ae, f. *Italy*.
- ita-que**, conj. *and so, therefore*. Cf. igitur.
- iter**, itineris, n. [eō], *way, journey, march, line of march*. (482.) ITINERANT.
- iterum**, adv. *a second time, again*. ITERATION.
- iubeō**, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command*. Cf. imperō.
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iūs], *judge, decide*.

- iūgerum**, -ī, n. (gen. plur. iūgerum), *acre, juger*.
- iugum**, -ī, n. [iungō], *yoke*.
- Iūlius**, -ī, m. *Julius*, a Roman name.
- iūunctus**, *see iungō*.
- iungō**, -ere, iūnxī, iūunctus, *unite, join, span, cross*. JUNCTION.
- Iūnō**, -ōnis, f. *Juno*, queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter.
- Iuppiter**, Iovis, m. *Jupiter*, the supreme deity of the Romans. (482.)
- iurgium**, -ī, n. *quarrel, dispute*.
- iūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iūs], *swear, take an oath*. ABJURE.
- iūs**, iūris, n. *right, justice*.
- iūssum**, -ī, n. [iubeō], *order, command*. Cf. imperātum.
- iūssus**, *see iubeō*.
- iūstus**, -a, -um, adj. [iūs], *just*.
- iuvenca**, -ae, f. *young cow, heifer*.
- iuvenis**, -e, adj. *young*; as noun, *young man, youth*. (260.) JUVENILE. Cf. adulēscēns.
- iuventūs**, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis], *body of youth, youth*.
- iuvō**, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid*.
- L.**, abbreviation for Lūcius.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, m. *Labienus*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.
- labor**, -ōris, m. [labōrō], *labor, toil*. Cf. opus and opera.
- labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labor], *work, toil; suffer*. ELABORATE.
- lāc**, lactis, n. *milk*.
- lacrima**, -ae, f. *tear*.
- lacus**, -ūs, m. *lake, pool*.
- laetitia**, -ae, f. [laetus], *joy, gladness*.
- laetus**, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry, pleasant, joyful*.
- laeva**, -ae, f. *the left hand*.
- Laevīnus**, -ī, m. *Laevinus*, a Roman consul.
- lambō**, -ere, —, —, *lick, lap*.
- lāmenta**, -ōrum, n. plur. [lāmentor], *wailing, laments, lamentation*.
- lāmentor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [lāmenta], *wail, lament*.
- lapis**, -idis, m. *stone, milestone*. LAPIDARY.
- lateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *lurk, lie hid, be concealed*. LATENT.
- Latīnus**, -a, -um, adj. *Latin*.
- lātrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bark*.
- latrō**, -ōnis, m. *robber, brigand*.
- lātus**, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide*.
- laudābilis**, -e, adj. [laudō], *praiseworthy, laudable*.
- laudō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise, laud*.
- laus**, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.
- lēctus**, *see legō*.
- lectus**, -ī, m. *bed, couch*.
- lēgātus**, -ī, m. *ambassador, deputy, lieutenant, legatus*. LEGATE.
- legiō**, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.
- legō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather; select; read*.
- lēnis**, -e, adj. [lēniter], *soft, smooth, gentle, mild*. LENIENT.
- lēniter**, adv. [lēnis], *gently, moderately*.
- leō**, -ōnis, m. *lion*.
- Lernaeus**, -a, -um, adj. *Lernaeon, of Lerna*, a district near Argos in Greece.
- levō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lift up, raise*.
- libenter**, adv. *willingly, gladly*.

- liber**, -brī, m. *book*.
- liber**, -era, -erum, adj. *free*. (103.)  
LIBERAL.
- liberālitās**, -ātis, f. [liber], *noble disposition, generosity, liberality*.
- liberē**, adv. [liber], *freely, frankly*.
- liberī**, -ōrum, m. plur. [liber], *children*.
- liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber], *set free, free, liberate*; with abl. of separation.
- libertās**, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.
- licet**, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. *it is permitted, (one) may*.
- Lichās**, -ae, m. *Lichas*, an attendant of Hercules.
- licitor**, -ōris, m. *licitor*, ceremonial attendant of a high officer.
- lignum**, -ī, n. *wood; stake, stick*.
- līmus**, -ī, m. *mud, slime*.
- lingua**, -ae, f. *tongue, language*.
- lītus**, -oris, n. *shore*.
- locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [locus], *place, put, set*. LOCATE.
- locus**, -ī, m. (plur. locī, m., and loca, n.), *place, position, situation; chance, opportunity*. LOCAL.
- locūtus**, *see loquor*.
- longē**, adv. [longus], *far, far off*.
- longinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [longus], *distant, remote, far away*.
- longus**, -a, -um, adj. *long, tedious*.  
LONGITUDE.
- loquor**, -ī, -cūtus sum, *speak, talk, say*.
- lūbricus**, -a, -um, adj. *slippery, slimy, muddy*. LUBRICATE.
- lūceō**, -ēre, lūxī, — [lūx], *shine*.  
[lūdicer], -cra, -crum, adj. *serving for sport, sportive*.
- lūmen**, -inis, n. [lūx], *light*. LUMINOUS.
- lūna**, -ae, f. [lūx], *moon*. LUNATIC.
- lupa**, -ae, f. [lupus], *she-wolf*.
- lupus**, -ī, m. [lupa], *wolf*.
- lutum**, -ī, n. *mud, mire*.
- lūx**, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.) [lūceō], *light*.
- māchina**, -ae, f. *contrivance, machine, engine*.
- māchinātiō**, -ōnis, f. [māchina], *contrivance, machine, engine*.
- mācte**, adj. (voc.), in the phrase **mācte virtūte estō**, *be honored for thy valor! good for your pluck!*
- maculō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, stain, soil*. IMMACULATE.
- maestus**, -a, -um, adj. *sad*. Cf. **tristis**.
- māgis**, adv. [māg(nus)], *more, rather*.
- magister**, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher*.
- magistrātus**, -ūs, m. [magister], *office (of a magistrate), magistracy*.
- māgnificus**, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus-faciō], *splendid, magnificent*.
- māgnitūdō**, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude*.
- māgnopere**, adv. [abl. of māgnus opus], *greatly, exceedingly, heartily*.
- māgnus**, -a, -um, adj. *great, large; loud*. (260.)
- māiestās**, -ātis, f. [māior], *dignity, honor, majesty*.
- māior**, -ius, adj. *greater, larger*. (260.) MAJOR.
- male**, adv. [malus], *badly, ill*. (267.) MALEVOLENT.

- male-dīcō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *speak ill of, revile, abuse.* MALEDICTION.
- mālō**, mālle, māluī, — [magisvolō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (505.)
- malum**, -ī, n. [malus], *bad thing, evil.*
- malus**, -a, -um, adj. *bad, evil.* (260.) Cf. *improbus.*
- mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manus-dō], (*put in hand*), *charge, command, intrust.*
- mane**, adv. *in the morning.*
- manēō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain, wait.* PERMANENT.
- Mānlius**, -ī, m. *Manlius*, a Roman name.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, f. *clemency, kindness, gentleness.*
- manus**, -ūs, f. *hand; grappling hook; force, band.* (243, a.) MANUAL.
- Mārcius**, -ī, m. *Marcus*, a Roman name.
- Mārcus**, -ī, m. *Marcus*, a Roman first name.
- mare**, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), *sea.* (482.) MARINE.
- marītus**, -ī, m. *husband.*
- Mārs**, Mārtis, m. *Mars*, the god of war.
- Mārtius**, -ī, m. [Mārs], *March.*
- massa**, -ae, f. *mass, lump.*
- māter**, -tris, f. *mother.* MATERNAL.
- mātrimōnium**, -ī, n. [māter], *matrimony, marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry.*
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.* Cf. *properō* and *contendō.*
- māximē**, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* Cf. *praecipuē.*
- māximus**, -a, -um, adj. *greatest.* (260.) MAXIMUM.
- Māximus**, -ī, m. *Maximus*, surname of Quintus Fabius.
- mē**, *see ego.*
- medicus**, -ī, m. *doctor, physician.* MEDICINE.
- mediocris**, -e, adj. [medius], *middle, moderate; a little.* MEDIOCRE.
- medius**, -a, -um, adj. *middle, middle of: in mediō, between (them); in medium, to the centre.* MEDIUM.
- melior**, -ius, *better.* (260.) AMELIORATE.
- membrum**, -ī, n. *limb.* MEMBER.
- memoria**, -ae, f. [memorō], *memory.*
- memorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [memoria], *mention, relate, state.* COMMEMORATE.
- mendācium**, -ī, n. *falsehood, lying.* MENDACIOUS.
- mēns**, mentis, f. *mind.* Cf. *animus.*
- mēnsis**, -is, m. *month.*
- mercātor**, -ōris, m. *trader, merchant.*
- Mercurius**, -ī, m. *Mercury*, messenger of the gods. (84, d.)
- mereor**, -ērī, -itus sum, *deserve, merit.*
- mergō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *sink.* MERGE.
- meritum**, -ī, n. [mereor], *thing deserved, deserts, merit.*
- mersus**, *see mergō.*
- metus**, -ūs, m. *fear, dread.*
- meus**, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron. *my, mine.* (229.)
- micō**, -āre, -uī, —, *quiver; flash, gleam, twinkle.*
- mihi**, *see ego.*
- mīles**, -itis, m. *soldier.* MILITARY.
- mīlītāris**, -e, adj. [mīles], *military.*

- mille**, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur., *mīlia*, -ium, *thousand*; also (supply *passuum*), *miles*. (305, e.)
- minimē**, adv. [*minimus*], *least, not at all, by no means*.
- minimus**, -a, -um, *least, very little*. (260.) MINIMUM.
- minor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten*.
- minor**, -us, adj. *smaller, lesser*. (260.)
- Minūcius**, -ī, m. *Minucius*, a Roman consul.
- mīrābilis**, -e, adj. [*mīror*], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary*. ADMIRABLE.
- mīrāculum**, -ī, n. [*mīror*], *wonder, marvel, miracle*.
- mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [*mīrus*], *wonder, wonder at, admire*.
- mīrus**, -a, -um, adj. [*mīror*], *wonderful, extraordinary*.
- miser**, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*.
- miserē**, adv. [*miser*], *wretchedly, miserably*. (267.)
- misericordia**, -ae, f. *pity, compassion*.
- mītis**, -e, adj. *mild, gentle*.
- mittō**, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send*. MISSION.
- modo**, adv. [*modus*], *only*.
- modus**, -ī, m. *way, manner*. MOOD.
- moenia**, -ium, n. plur. [*mūniō*], *walls (of a city)*. Cf. *mūrus*.
- mōlēs**, -is, f. *mass, heap*.
- moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *remind, advise, warn*. (498.) MONITOR.
- mōns**, montis, m. *mountain, hill*. Cf. collis.
- mōnstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show, point out*. DEMONSTRATE.
- mōnstrum**, -ī, n. *monster*.
- mora**, -ae, f. [*moror*], *delay*.
- mordeō**, -ēre, momordī, morsus, *bite*.
- MORSEL.
- moribundus**, -a, -um, adj. [*morior*], *dying, at the point of death*.
- morior**, -ī, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus) [*mors*], *die*.
- moror**, -ārī, -ātus sum [*mora*], *retard, hinder, delay*.
- mors**, mortis, f. [*morior*], *death*.
- MORTAL. Cf. nex.
- mortifer**, -era, -erum, adj. [*morsiferō*], *death-dealing, deadly, fatal*.
- mortuus**, -a, -um, adj. [*morior*], *dead*.
- mōs**, mōris, m. *manner, habit, custom*. MORAL.
- moveō**, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move*.
- mox**, adv. *soon, presently*.
- Mūcius**, -ī, *Mucius*, a Roman name.
- mulier**, -eris, f. *woman*. Cf. *fēmina*.
- multitūdō**, -inis, f. [*multus*], *great number, multitude, quantity*.
- multō**, adv. [*multus*], *by much, much*.
- multum**, adv. [*multus*], *much*. (267.)
- multus**, -a, -um, adj. *much*; plur. *many*. (260.)
- mūniō**, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītus [*moenia*], *fortify, defend*.
- mūniō**, -ōnis, f. [*mūniō*], *fortification, defence*. MUNITIONS.
- mūnus**, -eris, n. *duty, office*.
- mūrus**, -ī, m. *wall*. Cf. *moenia*.
- mūs**, mūris, m. *mouse*.
- mūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, alter*.
- MUTATION.



- nam**, conj. *for*.
- namque**, conj. *for, inasmuch as*.
- nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell, relate, narrate*.
- nāscor**, -ī, nātus sum, *be born*.
- natō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [frequentative of nō], *swim, float*.
- nātū** (only abl.) [nāscor], *by birth, in age*. (260.)
- nātūra**, -ae, f. [nāscor], (*birth*), *nature, character*.
- nauta**, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor*. NAUTICAL.
- nāvālis**, -e, adj. [nāvis], *naval*.
- nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvis-agō], *sail, cruise, navigate*.
- nāvis**, -is, f. (acc. -em, -im; abl. -ī, -e), *ship*. (169, c.) NAVAL.
- nē**, conj. *that not, that; lest; with hortatory subjunctive, not: nē . . . quidem, not even*.
- ne**, interrog. adv. enclitic. (44, 3.) Cf. nōne and num.
- nec**, *see neque*.
- necesse**, indecl. neut. adj. *unavoidable, necessary*.
- necessitās**, -ātis, f. [necesse], *need, necessity*.
- necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nex], *kill, slay*. Cf. interficiō and occidō.
- negōtium**, -ī, n. [nec-ōtium, ease], *business, labor*.
- nēmō**, -inī (dat.; no gen. or abl.), m. and f. [nē-homō], *no one, nobody, no man*.
- ne-que or nec**, conj. *and not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.
- Nervii**, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Nervii, a tribe of northeastern Gaul*.
- Nessus**, -ī, m. *Nessus, a centaur slain by Hercules*.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, adj. *neither (of two)*. (312.) NEUTRAL.
- nex**, necis, f. (no gen. plur.) [necō], *death, slaughter, murder*. Cf. mors.
- nī**, conj. *if not, unless*.
- niger**, -gra, -grum, adj. *black*. NEGRO.
- nihil**, n., indecl. *nothing: nihil cibi, no food*. NIHILIST.
- Nilus**, -ī, m. *the Nile, a river of Egypt*.
- nimium**, adv. *too much*.
- ni-si**, conj. *if not, unless, except*.
- nix**, nivis, f. *snow*.
- nō**, nāre, nāvī, —, *swim*.
- nōbilis**, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, of high birth; noble*.
- noceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *do harm to, hurt, injure; with dat. NOXIOUS*. Cf. obsum.
- noctū**, only abl. [nox], *by night*.
- nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, — [nē-volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish*. (505.)
- nōmen**, -inis, n. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name*. NOMINAL.
- nōn**, adv. [nē-ūnum], *not: nōn iam, no longer*. Cf. haud.
- nōn-dum**, adv. *not yet*.
- nōn-ne**, interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, *not?* Cf. -ne and num.
- nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, adj., (*not none*), *some, several*.
- nōnus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem], *ninth*.
- nōs**, *see ego*.
- nōscō**, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn; perf. know*.

- noster**, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron. [nōs], *our, ours: nostri, our men.* (229.)
- notō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark, notice, observe, perceive.* NOTATION.
- nōtus**, -a, -um, adj. [nōscō], *known.*
- novem**, indecl. num. adj. *nine.*
- novus**, -a, -um, adj. *new.* NOVELTY.
- nox**, noctis, f. *night.* NOCTURNAL.
- nūbēs**, -is, f. *cloud.* (169.)
- nūdus**, -a, -um, adj. *stripped, bare, unclotted; nude.*
- nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. [nē-ūllus], *no, none, no one.* (312.) NULLITY.
- num**, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer; in indir. question, *whether.* Cf. nōnne and -ne.
- numerus**, -ī, m. *number.* NUMERAL.
- numquam**, adv. [nē-umquam], *never.*
- nunc**, adv. *now.* Cf. iam.
- nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius], *report, announce.*
- nūntius**, -ī, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*
- nūper**, adv. [for noviper; novus], *recently, lately.*
- nympha**, -ae, f. *nymph.*
- Ō**, interj. *O, oh!*
- ob**, prep. with acc. *on account of.*
- ob-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō], (*throw in the way*), *throw between, interpose.* OBJECT.
- obiectus**, see obiciō.
- oblātus**, see offerō.
- oblītus**, -a, -um, adj. [oblīvīscor], *forgetful.*
- oblīvīscor**, -ī, oblītus sum, *forget.* OBLIVIOUS.
- ob-noxius**, -a, -um, adj. *liable to, exposed to.*
- obscurō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [obscurus], *darken, conceal.*
- obscurus**, -a, -um [obscurō], *dark.* OBSCURE.
- ob-serō**, -ere, -sēvī, -situs, (*sow, plant*), *cover, strew, fill.*
- obses**, -idis, m. and f. [ob-sedeō], (*one who sits or remains as a pledge*), *hostage.*
- ob-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus [-sedeō], (*sit down against*), *besiege, beset, blockade.* Cf. oppugnō.
- obsidiō**, -ōnis, f. [obsideō], *siege, blockade.*
- obsitus**, see obserō.
- ob-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, (*build up against*), *block up, bar, barricade, obstruct.*
- ob-stupefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *astonish, amaze, astound.*
- ob-stupēscō**, -ere, -stupūī, —, *be astonished, be amazed.*
- ob-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be against, be opposed to; injure; with dat.* (502.) Cf. noceō.
- ob-tineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [-teneō], (*hold against*), *possess, occupy, hold.* OBTAIN.
- ob-truncō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cut to pieces, kill, slay, slaughter.*
- obviam**, adv. *in the way: obviam fiō, meet;* with dat.
- occāsiō**, -ōnis, f. *chance, opportunity.* OCCASION. Cf. potestās.
- occāsus**, -ūs, m. *setting (of the sun).*
- oc-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [ob-caedō], *cut down, slay, kill.* Cf. interficiō, necō, and obtruncō.

- occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-capiō],  
take possession of, seize: *occupy*.  
Cf. **potior**.
- oc-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob-],  
run towards; meet, fall in with.
- ōceanus**, -ī, m. *ocean*.
- octāvus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō],  
eighth. OCTAVE.
- Octōber**, -bris, m. [octō], *October*.
- oculus**, -ī, m. *eye*. OCULAR.
- ōdī**, -isse, def. (used only in perf.  
and pluperf.) [odium], *hate*.
- odium**, -ī, n. [ōdī], *hatred, enmity*.  
ODIUM.
- odor**, -ōris, m. *smell, odor*.
- Oechalia**, -ae, f. *Oechalia*, a city of  
Euboea.
- Oeneus**, -ī, m. *Oeneus*, father of  
Deianira.
- Oeta**, -ae, f. *Oeta*, a mountain in  
Greece.
- of-fendō**, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus [ob-], *strike*  
*against; come upon, find*.
- of-ferō**, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus [ob-],  
*offer, present*.
- officīna**, -ae, f. *workshop, laboratory*.
- ōlim**, adv. [olle, old form of ille],  
(at that time); formerly, once;  
once upon a time. Cf. **aliquandō**.
- Olympus**, -ī, m. *Olympus*, a moun-  
tain in Greece, the abode of the  
gods.
- o-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ob-],  
*let go by, disregard, neglect, omit*.
- omnīnō**, adv. [omnis], *wholly, alto-*  
*gether, entirely*.
- omnis**, -e, adj. *whole, all, every*. Cf.  
**tōtus**, **cūctus**, and **ūniversus**.
- onus**, -eris, n. *load, burden, bulk,*  
*weight*. ONEROUS.
- onustus**, -a, -um, adj. [onus], *laden,*  
*loaded*.
- opera**, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care,*  
*work*. Cf. **labor** and **opus**.
- opīniō**, -ōnis, f. *expectation, opinion*.
- oportet**, -ēre, -uit (impers.), *it be-*  
*hooves, it is necessary, one ought*.
- oppidānus**, -ī, m. [oppidum], *towns-*  
*man*.
- oppidum**, -ī, n. *town, stronghold*.
- op-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-  
premō], *overcome, crush, oppress*.
- op-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-], *at-*  
*tack, assault, besiege*. Cf. **ex-**  
**pūgnō** and **obsideō**.
- [ops], opis, f. *aid, help*. Cf. **auxilium**.
- optimus**, -a, -um, adj. *best*. (260.)  
OPTIMIST.
- opus**, -eris, n. *work, labor*. Cf. **labor**.
- ōrāculum**, -ī, n. [ōrō], *oracle*.
- ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], *speech, plea;*  
*oration*.
- ōrātor**, -ōris, m. [ōrō], *speaker,*  
*orator; ambassador*.
- orbis**, -is, m. *circle, orb, world; orbis*  
*terrārum, earth, world*.
- orbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deprive, be-*  
*reave*.
- ōrdō**, -inis, m. *rank, order; ex ōrdine,*  
*in succession, one after another;*  
*extrā ōrdinem, out of the ranks*.
- oriēns**, -entis, m. [orior], *rising*  
(sun), *east*. ORIENT.
- orior**, -īrī, ortus sum, *arise, spring,*  
*descend (from); ortā lūce, at day-*  
*break*.
- ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (*that*  
*which adorns*), *ornament, jewel*.
- ōrnātus**, -ūs, m. [ōrnō], *equipment,*  
*adornment; dress*.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn, ornament, deck.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōs], (*speak*), *beg, pray, entreat, plead.*

ortus, *see orior.*

ōs, ōris, n (no gen. plur.), *mouth, face.*

os-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus [ob(s)-], *stretch out; show, display.* OSTENSIBLE.

ōtium, -ī, n. *leisure, idleness.*

ovis, -is, f. *sheep.*

ōvum, -ī, n. *egg.* OVAL.

pābulum, -ī, n. [pāscō], *food.*

paene, adv. *nearly, almost.*

paenitet, -ēre, -uit (impers.), *it repents; with gen. and acc.*

pallium, -ī, n. *cloak, mantle.*

pālus, -ī, m. *stake, pale.*

palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj. *equal.* PARITY.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [parō], *ready, prepared.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus, *spare; with dat.* PARSIMONY.

parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey; with dat.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, bear; lay.*

pariter, adv. [par], *equally; pariter āc, equally with, as well as.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make ready, prepare for, prepare.*

pars, partis, f. *part, share; direction, side.* PARTIAL.

parum, adv. *too little, not enough; parum honorificē, disrespectfully.* (490.)

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of parvus], *very small, slight, insignificant; masc. plur. as noun, the little ones, the babies.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little.* (260.)

pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, tend; pasture.*

passus, *see patior.*

passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace: mille passuum, mile.*

pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāscor], (*feeder*), *shepherd.* PASTOR.

pate-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [pateō], (*make open*), *open, throw open.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, be open, be exposed.*

pater, -tris, m. *father.* (163.)

paternus, -a, -um, adj. [pater], *of a father, father's, paternal.*

patientia, -ae, f. [patior], *patience.*

patior, -ī, passus sum, *bear, suffer, allow, permit.*

patria, -ae, f. [pater], *fatherland, native land, country.* PATRIOTISM.

patricius, -a, -um, adj. [pater], *patrician, noble.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little.* PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. *by a little, little.*

paulum, adv. *a little, somewhat.*

pavidus, -a, -um, adj. [pavor], *trembling, fearful, timid.* Cf. *timidus.*

pavor, -ōris, m. [pavidus], *fear, dread, alarm.* Cf. *terror.*

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace.* PACIFY.

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make a mistake, err.* PECCADILLO. Cf. *errō.*

- pectus**, -oris, n. *breast*. PECTORAL.
- pecūnia**, -ae, f. [pecus], *money*.  
PECUNIARY.
- pecus**, -oris, n. *cattle, flock*.
- pedes**, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.
- peditātus**, -ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry*.
- pēior**, -ius, adj. *worse*. (260.)
- pellis**, -is, f. *skin, hide*. PELT.
- pēnsūm**, -ī, n., (*what is weighed out*, e.g. *wool, as a task for spinning*), *task; lesson, exercise*.
- per**, prep. with acc. *through, by, by means of, on account of*.
- per-agrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse*. Cf. **perlūstrō**.
- per-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [-capiō], *perceive, feel*. Cf. **sentiō**.
- per-contor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ask, inquire*. Cf. **quaerō**, **rogō**, and **petō**.
- percussus**, *see percutiō*.
- per-cutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [-quatiō], *hit, strike, run through*.
- per-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose*. PERDITION. Cf. **āmittō**.
- per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, conduct, bring*.
- per-eō**, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus, *perish*.
- per-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [-faciō], *accomplish; perfect*.
- perfrāctus**, *see perfringō*.
- per-fringō**, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [-frangō], *break to pieces, shatter, completely wreck*.
- pergō**, -ere, per-rēxī, per-rēctus [per-regō], *go on, proceed, hasten*. Cf. **prōcēdō** and **prōgredior**.
- pericūlum**, -ī, n. *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril*.
- per-lūstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander through, view all over, examine, survey*. Cf. **peragrō**.
- per-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *allow, grant, suffer, permit; yield, give up; with dat.* PERMISSION.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, adj. *continual, continuous, perpetual*.
- per-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *burst through, break through*.
- per-scribō**, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *write at length, describe fully*.
- perspectus**, *see perspicō*.
- per-spiciō**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus (*see through*), *see clearly, ascertain*.
- per-suādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade; with dat.* PERSUASION.
- per-terreō**, -ēre, —, -itus, *thoroughly frighten, alarm*.
- pertinācia**, -ae, f. *perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity*.
- pertrāctus**, *see pertrahō*.
- per-trahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, (*drag through*), *drag, drag along*.
- per-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come up, arrive, reach*.
- pēs**, pedis, m. *foot*: **pedem referre**, *retreat, fall back*. PEDAL.
- pessimus**, -a, -um, adj. *worst*. (260.)  
PESSIMIST.
- petō**, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *seek, demand, ask for, ask, beg; attack*. PETITION. Cf. **postulō**, **quaerō**, and **rogō**.
- pietas**, -ātis, f. *filial affection, love, loyalty*. PIETY.
- piger**, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy*.
- pigritia**, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth*.
- pīlum**, -ī, n. *javelin*. (Page 27.)
- pinguis**, -e, adj. *fat, heavy*.

- pīnus, -ī, f. (abl. pīnū), *pine tree, pine*.
- pīrāta, -ae, m. *pirate*.
- placābilis, -e, adj. *easily pacified, placable*.
- placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please*; with dat. PLACID.
- plānitīēs, -ēī, f., (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain*.
- plēbs, plēbis, f. *the common people, plebeians*.
- plēnus, -a, -um, adj. *full*.
- plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bewail, lament, grieve*. DEPLORE.
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. *most, very many*: plūrimum posse, *be very powerful, have most influence*. (260.)
- plūs, plūris, adj. *more*; plur. *more, many*. (260, 261.) PLURAL.
- pōculum, -ī, n. *cup, bowl*.
- poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], *fine, punishment*: poenās dare, *suffer punishment*.
- Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian*.
- poēta, -ae, m. *poet*.
- Polyphēmus, -ī, m. *Polyphemus, a Cyclops*.
- Pompēius, -ēī, m. *Pompey, a famous Roman general*.
- Pompōnius, -ī, m. *Pomponius, a tribune*.
- pōmum, -ī, n. *apple*.
- pondus, -eris, n. *weight, bulk*. PONDEROUS.
- pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set, set up, pitch (camp)*; pass. *lie*. POSITION.
- pōns, pontis, m. *bridge*.
- populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate, plunder, pillage*. DEPOPULATE.
- populus, -ī, m. *people*. POPULOUS.
- Porsena, -ae, m. *Porsena, a king of Etruria*.
- porta, -ae, f. *gate, door*. PORTAL.
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring*. Cf. ferō and vehō.
- portus, -ūs, m. *harbor, port*. (242, a.)
- positus, *see pōnō*.
- possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, can*: plūrimum posse, *be very powerful, have most influence*. (344, b, 503.)
- post, prep. with acc. *after, behind*; as adv. *afterwards*.
- post-eā, adv. *afterwards*.
- [posterus], -a, -um, adj. [post], *following, next*. (489.) POSTERN.
- post-quam, conj. *after*.
- postrīdiē, adv. [posterō diē], *on the next day*.
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request, demand*. Cf. petō, quaerō, and rogō.
- potestās, -ātis, f. [possum], *power, authority; opportunity, permission*. Cf. imperium and occāsio.
- potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *become master of, get, get possession of*; with gen. or abl. Cf. occupō.
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj. *sharpened at the end, pointed*.
- praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae-habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish; cause, render*.
- prae-caveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautus, *take care, take precautions, be on one's guard*.
- prae-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [-caedō], *cut off*. PRECISE.
- praecipuē, adv. *chiefly, especially, particularly*. Cf. māximē, praesertim.

- prae-clārus**, -a, -um, adj. *very splendid, glorious.*
- praeda**, -ae, f. [praedor], *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY. Cf. **spolium**.
- prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make known, proclaim, boast.* PREDICATE.
- praedor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [praeda], *rob, plunder.*
- prae-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry before.* (506.) PREFER.
- praelātus**, *see praeferō.*
- praemium**, -ī, n. *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.
- prae-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put before, prefer.* Cf. **antepōnō**.
- praesaepe**, -is, n. *stable, stall.*
- praesēns**, -entis, adj. *instant, immediate, present.*
- praesertim**, adv. *especially, particularly, chiefly.* Cf. **praecipuē**.
- praeses**, -idis, m. and f. [praesideō], *protector, guardian.*
- prae-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, — [-sedeō], (*sit before*), *preside over*; with dat. PRESIDENT.
- praesidium**, -ī, n. [praesideō], *defence, help, protection, support, guard.* Cf. **auxilium** and **subsidium**.
- praestāns**, -antis, adj. [praestō], *remarkable, extraordinary, surpassing.* Cf. **ēgregius**.
- praestantia**, -ae, f. [praestāns], *pre-eminence, superiority.*
- prae-stō**, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand out, surpass, be superior to, be preferable; perform.* Cf. **superō**.
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, be at the head of, command*; with dat. (345.)
- praeter-eā**, adv., (*besides this*), *besides, moreover.*
- praeter-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go by, pass by.*
- praetextus**, -a, -um, adj. *bordered: toga praetexta, toga with purple border, worn by the higher magistrates and by free-born children.*
- praetōrium**, -ī, n. *general's tent.*
- prātum**, -ī, n. *meadow.*
- prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *grasp, seize.*
- pretiōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [pretium], *costly, valuable, precious.*
- pretium**, -ī, n. *price, value; reward, ransom.*
- [**prex**, **precis**], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*
- prīmō**, adv. [prīmus], *at first, first, in the first place.*
- prīmōrēs**, -um, m. plur. [prīmus], *the first (men), leaders, chiefs.*
- prīmum**, adv. [prīmus], *first, at first.*
- prīmus**, -a, -um, adj. *first, foremost.* (489.) PRIME. PRIMAL.
- prīnceps**, -cipis, m. [prīmus-capiō], (*taking the first place*), *chief, leader.* PRINCE. Cf. **dux**.
- prius**, adv. [prior], *before, sooner, previously.*
- prius-quam**, conj. *sooner than, before.*
- prīvātus**, -a, -um, adj. [prīvō], *private.*
- prīvō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deprive*; with abl.
- prō**, prep. with abl. *before, in behalf of, for, instead of; considering; in accordance with.*
- prōbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prove, approve.*

- prō-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, —, *come forward, go forward, advance, proceed*. Cf. **prōgredior** and **pergō**.
- procul**, adv. *far, afar off*.
- prō-currō**, -ere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursurus, *run forward, rush forward*.
- prōdigium**, -ī, n. *sign, omen, prodigy*.  
**PRODIGIOUS**.
- prōditor**, -ōris, m. *betrayed, traitor*.
- prō-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead forth, bring forth*. **PRODUCE**.
- proelium**, -ī, n. *battle, combat, skirmish*. Cf. **pūgna**.
- profectus**, *see proficiscor*.
- prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *bring forth*. (506.)
- proficiscor**, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, march, go*. Cf. **exeō** and **ēgredior**.
- prō-fundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour out, shed copiously*. **PROFUSE**.
- prō-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum [-gradior], *go forward, advance, progress*. Cf. **prōcēdō** and **pergō**.
- prōgressus**, *see prōgredior*.
- prōmō**, -ere, -mpsī, -mptus [prō-emō], *take out, bring forth*.
- prōmontōrium**, -ī, n. *promontory*.
- prō-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move forward, advance*. **PROMOTE**.
- prope**, prep. with acc. *near, near to*; adv. *close at hand, nearly, almost*.
- prō-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, *drive forward, drive*. **PROPEL**.
- properē**, adv. *hastily, quickly*.
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten*. Cf. **mātūrō** and **contendō**.
- propior**, -ius, adj. [prope], *nearer, close*. (489.)
- propius**, adv. [prope], *nearer*.
- prō-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put before, set forth; make known, declare, propose*. **PROPOSITION**.
- propter**, prep. with acc. *on account of*.
- prōstrātus**, -a, -um, adj. *thrown down, prostrate*.
- prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfui, —, *be before, be useful to, benefit, avail; with dat.* (345.)
- prō-tegō**, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus, *cover in front, protect*.
- prōvectus**, *see prōvehō*.
- prō-vehō**, -ere, -vēxi, -vectus, *carry forward, carry off; pass. advance, proceed*.
- prō-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call forth, challenge, invite*. **PROVOKE**.
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj. *nearest, next*. (489.) **PROXIMITY**.
- prūdēns**, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent*.
- prūdētia**, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence*.
- pūblicē**, adv. [pūblicus], *in the name of the state, publicly*.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus], *(pertaining to the people), public; see rēs*.
- pudor**, -ōris, m. *shame, cause for shame, disgrace*.
- puella**, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer], *girl, maiden*.
- puer**, -erī, m. *boy, child*. (103.) **PUERILE**.
- pūgna**, -ae, f. [pūgnō], *battle, contest, fight*. Cf. **proelium**. **PUGNACIOUS**.
- pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pūgna], *fight*. Cf. **dīmīcō**.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, fair, pretty*.



**Pullō**, -ōnis, m. *Pullo*, a centurion.  
**pulvis**, -eris, m. *dust*. PULVERIZE.  
**Pūnicus**, -a, -um, adj. *Carthaginian*.  
**pūniō**, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itus [poena],  
*punish*.  
**purgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *clean, cleanse*.  
 PURGE.  
**pūrus**, -a, um, *clean, clear, pure*.  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe,*  
*reckon*. Cf. *arbitror* and *existimō*.  
**putridus**, -a, -um, adj. *bad, rotten,*  
*decayed*.  
**Pyrrhus**, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus*, king of  
 Epirus.  
**Pŷthia**, -ae, f. *Pythia*, the inspired  
 prophetess of Apollo at Delphi.

**Q.**, abbreviation for **Quīntus**.  
**quadrāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, num. adj.  
*fortieth*.  
**quaerō**, -ere, quaesivī (-iī), quaesitus,  
*seek, ask, inquire*. Cf. *petō* and *rogō*.  
**quam**, adv. *than, how*.  
**quam-quam**, conj. *though, although*.  
**quandō**, conj. *when*.  
**quandō-quidem**, conj. *since indeed,*  
*since, seeing that*.  
**quantus**, -a, -um, adj. [quam], *how*  
*great, how much; as great as, as*  
*much as*. QUANTITY.  
**quartus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [quat-  
 tuor], *fourth*. QUART.  
**quartus decimus**, -a, -um, num. adj.  
*fourteenth*.  
**qua-si**, adv. *as if*.  
**quatiō**, -ere, —, quassus, (*shake*),  
*strike*.  
**quattuor**, indecl. num. adj. *four*.  
**-que**, conj., enclitic, *and*. Cf. *et*,  
*atque*, and *āc*.

**quercus**, -ūs, f. *oak tree, oak*.  
**queror**, -ī, questus sum, *complain,*  
*complain of, bewail*.  
**questus**, -ūs, m. [queror], *complaint,*  
*wailing*.  
**quī**, quae, quod, rel. and adj.  
 pron. *who, which, what, that*.  
 (210.)  
**quia**, conj. *because*. Cf. *quod*.  
**quīdam**, quaedam, quoddam (quid-  
 dam), indef. pron. *certain, a certain*  
*one, a*. (335)  
**quidem**, adv. (never the first word),  
*indeed, certainly, in truth: nē*  
*. . . quidem, not . . . even*.  
**quiēs**, -ētis, f. [quiētus], *quiet, rest,*  
*repose*.  
**quiētus**, -a, -um, adj. [quiēs], *quiet,*  
*inactive*.  
**quīn**, conj. [quī-nē], (*why not*), *but*  
*that, that*.  
**quī-nam (quisnam)**, quaenam, quod-  
 nam (quidnam), interrog. pron.  
 and adj. *who? which? what?*  
 (emphatic), *who, pray? etc*.  
**Quīnctius**, -ī, m. *Quinctius*, family  
 name of Cincinnatus.  
**quīndecim**, indecl. num. adj. [quīn-  
 que-decem], *fifteen*.  
**quīnquāgintā**, indecl. num. adj.  
 [quīnque], *fifty*.  
**quīnque**, indecl. num. adj. *five*.  
 QUINQUENNIAL.  
**quīntus**, -a, -um [quīnque], num.  
 adj. *fifth*.  
**quippe**, adv. and conj. *truly, no*  
*doubt; inasmuch as, since*.  
**quis (quī)**, quae, quid (quod), in-  
 terrog. pron. and adj. *who?*  
*which? what?* (142.)

- quis, qua, quid, indef. pron.** after *si, nisi, nē, and num, any one, anything.*
- quisnam, see quīnam.**
- quisquam, quidquam** (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any, any one, anything (at all).* (335.)
- quisque, quaeque, quidque** (quodque), indef. pron. *each one, each, every.* (335.)
- quī-vīs, quaevis, quodvis** (quidvis), indef. pron. *any one, anything (you wish), any whatever.* (335.)
- quō, interrog. and rel. adv.** [quī], *whither, where.*
- quod, conj.** *because, in that.* Cf. *quia.*
- quō-modo, interrog. adv.** *in what way? how?*
- quoque, conj.** (after an emphatic word), *also, too.* Cf. *etiam.*
- quot, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj.** *how many? as many as: tot . . . quot, as many . . . as.*
- quot-annīs, adv.** *every year, yearly.*
- quotiēs, interrog. and rel. adv.** [quot], *how often? as often as.*
- quotiēs-cumque, adv.** *how often soever; just as often as.*
- Racilia, -ae, f.** *Racilia*, wife of Cincinnatus.
- rāna, -ae, f.** *frog.*
- rapīna, -ae, f.** [rapiō], *robbery, plundering.* RAPINE.
- rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, seize; snatch, drag.**
- rārō, adv.** *seldom, rarely.*
- ratiō, -ōnis, f., (a reckoning), reason, method, plan, way, conduct.** RATIO.
- recessus, -ūs, m.** *corner, inner room, recess.*
- re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [-capiō], *take back, receive, recover: sē recipere, withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.*
- re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, refresh, recreate, revive.** RECREATION.
- rēctē, adv.** [rēctus], *rightly.*
- rēctus, -a, -um** [regō], *straight, direct, right.*
- re-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, —, lie down, sink down.** RECUMBENT.
- re-currō, -ere, -currī, —, (run back), retire, return.** RECUR.
- re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [-causa], *decline, refuse.*
- red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** [re(d)-], *give back, return, render, make.*
- red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus** [re(d)-], *go back, return.* (507.)
- redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** [re(d)-agō], *(drive back), reduce, subdue.*
- redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus** [re(d)-emō], *buy back, purchase, redeem, ransom.*
- reditus, -ūs, m.** [redeō], *return.*
- re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, bring back.** REDUCE.
- redux, -ucis, adj.** [redūcō], *(led back), come back, returned.*
- re-ferō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātus, bring back; return, repay; report, announce: pedem referre, withdraw, retreat, fall back.** RELATE.
- re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** [-faciō], *make over, repair.*
- refrāctus, see refringō.**
- re-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus** [frangō], *break down, break open.*

- re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee for safety, flee, take to flight*. REFUGE.
- rēgīna, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen*.
- regiō, -ōnis, f. *place, region, country*.
- rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [rēx], *the king's, of the king, royal*.
- regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], *rule*.  
REGENT.
- re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [-iaciō],  
*throw back, drive back, hurl back*.  
REJECT.
- re-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, (*slide back*),  
*flow back, subside*. RELAPSE.
- re-lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *send away, banish, expel*.
- re-liquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *leave behind, leave, abandon*. RELINQUISH.
- reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*;  
as noun, *the rest*. Cf. cēteri.
- re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back, give up*. REMIT.
- re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, (*move back*), *remove*. REMOTE.
- re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *repay, reward*. REMUNERATE.
- rēmus, -ī, m. *oar*.
- Remus, -ī, m. *Remus*, brother of Romulus.
- re-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, (*be born again*),  
*grow again, spring up*.
- renātus, *see renāscor*.
- re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *report, announce*. RENUNCIATION.
- re-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive away, cast down, deprive*; *repulse, repel*.
- repente, adv. *suddenly, unexpectedly*.  
Cf. subitō and statim.
- repentīnō, adv. [repente], *suddenly, unexpectedly*.
- re-periō, -īre, -pperī, -pertus [pariō],  
*find, discover, ascertain*. Cf. inveniō.
- repertor, -ōris, m. [reperiō], *discoverer, inventor*.
- re-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill up again*. REplete.
- re-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put away, store, keep*.
- re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, gain*. REPORT. Cf. referō.
- re-poscō, -ere, —, —, *demand back, ask for, claim*.
- repositus, *see repōnō*.
- re-prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,  
*promise in return*.
- repulsus, *see repellō*.
- rēs, rei, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair, scheme, cause, matter, fact* (275): *rēs publica, republic, state, commonwealth*; *quā rē, wherefore*.
- re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut off, break down, demolish*. RESCIND.
- rescissus, *see rescindō*.
- re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *resist, oppose*; with dat.
- re-spergō, -ere, -sī, -sus [-spargō],  
*bespatter, besprinkle*.
- respersus, *see respargō*.
- re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus,  
(*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond*.
- respōnsum, -ī, n. [respondeō], *reply, response*.
- re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [-statuō],  
*replace, restore*. RESTITUTION.
- re-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [-teneō],  
*keep back, reserve*. RETAIN.
- reversus, *see revertor*.

- re-vertor, -ī, -sus sum (active in perf., plup., and fut. perf.), *turn back, return*. REVERT.
- rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king*. (479, a.) REGAL.
- Rhea Silvia, -ae, f. *Rhea Silvia*, a priestess of Vesta and mother of Romulus and Remus.
- rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh at, laugh*. DERIDE.
- rīgēō, -ēre, —, —, *be numb*. RIGID.
- rīma, -ae, f. *crack, chink*.
- rīpa, -ae, f. *bank*.
- rīvus, -ī, m. *brook*. RIVULET.
- rōbur, -oris, n. *oak; strength*. Cf. vīs.
- rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question*. Cf. quaerō, petō, and postulō.
- rogus, -ī, m. *funeral pile, pyre*.
- Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome*.
- Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], *Roman*; masc. as noun, *a Roman*.
- Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus*, first king of Rome.
- rosa, -ae, f. *rose*.
- rudis, -e, adj. *rude, uncultivated, ignorant*.
- ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus (*ruitus*), *hasten, hurry, run, rush*.
- rūpēs, -is, f. *steep rock, cliff*. Cf. saxum.
- rūrsus, adv. [for reversus], (*turned back*), *again*.
- rūs, rūis, n. *the country*. (195, b, 197.) Cf. patria and terra.
- rūsticus, -a, -um, adj. [rūs], *of the country, rustic, provincial*.
- Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines*, a tribe of Italy.
- sacer, -cra, -crum, adj. *sacred*.
- sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [sacer], *priest, priestess*.
- sacrificium, -ī, n. [sacrificō], *sacrifice*.
- sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacer-faciō], *sacrifice*.
- saepe, adv. *often, frequently*. (490.)
- saepiō, -īre, -sī, -tus, (*hedge in*), *surround, fortify, guard*.
- saevus, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage, fierce*. Cf. atrōx and trux.
- sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*.
- saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dance*.
- saltus, -ūs, m. *forest, glade, thicket*.
- salūbris, -e, adj. [salūs], *healthy, wholesome, salutary*.
- salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety, welfare; greeting*.
- salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salūs], *greet, salute, welcome*. SALUTATORY.
- salvus, -a, -um, adj. [salūs], *unhurt, safe, sound*. Cf. tūtus.
- sanguis, -inis, m. *blood*. Cf. cruor.
- sapiēns, -entis, adj. *wise, sensible*.
- sapienter, adv. [sapiēns], *wisely*.
- sapientia, -ae, f. [sapiēns], *wisdom*.
- satis, adv. *enough, sufficiently*. SATISFY.
- saxum, -ī, n. *stone, rock*. Cf. rūpēs.
- scelus, -eris, n. *wickedness, crime*.
- schola, -ae, f. *school*.
- scintillula, -ae, f. *tiny spark*.
- sciō, -īre, scīvī (-īi), scītus, *know, know how*. SCIENCE. Cf. nōscō and cōgnōscō.
- Scipiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio*, a famous Roman general. (Page 97.)
- scīscitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ask, inquire, examine*.

- scrība**, -ae, m. [scrībō], *writer, clerk, secretary*. SCRIBE.
- scrībō**, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*.  
SCRIPTURE.
- scrīptor**, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer, author*.
- scrīptus**, see scrībō.
- scūtum**, -ī, n. *shield*. (Page 163.)
- sē**, **sēsē**, see suī.
- sectiō**, -ōnis, f., (*a cutting*), *sale of confiscated goods, booty*. SECTION.
- secundus**, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second*.
- sed**, conj. *but*. Cf. **autem**.
- sedeō**, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus [sēdēs], *sit*. SEDENTARY.
- sēdēs**, -is, f. [sedeō], *seat, dwelling, perch*.
- seditiō**, -ōnis, f. [sedeō], *discord, revolt, sedition*.
- sella**, -ae, f. [sedeō], *seat, chair*.
- semel**, num. adv. *once, once for all*.
- semper**, adv. *always, ever*.
- sempiternus**, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.
- senātus**, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate*.
- senectūs**, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age*.
- senex**, senis, adj. *old*; as noun, *old man*. (260.) SENILE.
- senior**, -ōris, m. [senex], *elder*.  
SENIOR.
- sentiō**, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive*. Cf. **percipiō**.
- sepeliō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), sepultus, *bury, inter*.
- septem**, indecl. num. adj. *seven*.
- September**, -bris [septem], **Septem-ber**.
- septen-decim**, indecl. num. adj. [septem-decem], *seventeen*.
- septimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh*.
- sequor**, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow*.
- sērō**, adv. *late, too late*.
- serpēns**, -entis, m. *serpent, snake*.
- servitūs**, -ūtis, f. [servus], *slavery, servitude*.
- servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep, preserve*.
- servus**, -ī, m. *slave, servant*.
- essor**, -ōris, m. [sedeō], *sitter, rider*.
- seu**, see sive.
- sex**, indecl. num. adj. *six*.
- sextus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth*.
- Sextus**, -ī, m. **Sextus**, a Roman first name.
- sextus decimus**, -a, -um, *sixteenth*.
- sī**, conj. *if, whether*.
- sīc**, adv. *so, thus, in this way*. Cf. **ita** and **tam**.
- siccus**, -a, -um, adj. *dry*: in **siccō**, *on dry ground*.
- Sicilia**, -ae, f. **Sicily**.
- significātiō**, -ōnis, f., (*a pointing out*), *announcement, signal*.
- signum**, -ī, n. *mark, sign, ensign, signal*. (Page 151.)
- silentium**, -ī, n. *silence*.
- silva**, -ae, f. *wood, forest*. SILVAN.
- similis**, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling, similar*. (254.)
- simplex**, -icis, adj. *simple, sincere*.
- simul**, adv. [similis], *at the same time*: **simul āc**, *as soon as*.
- simultās**, -ātis, f. [similis], *rivalry*.
- sine**, prep. with abl. *without*.

- singulāris, -e, adj. [singulī], *single*.  
SINGULAR.
- singulī, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time, one on each side, single, separate*.
- sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left (hand)*.  
SINISTER.
- sitiēns, -entis, adj. *thirsty*.
- situs, -a, -um, adj. *placed, set, lying, situated*.
- sī-ve or seu, conj. *or if, whether*:  
seu . . . seu, *whether . . . or*.
- societās, -ātis, f. [socius], *alliance, association, partnership; society*.
- socius, -ī, m. *comrade, companion, ally*. SOCIAL.
- sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plur.), *sun*.  
SOLAR.
- soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (semi-deponent), *be accustomed, be wont*.
- sōlum, adv. [sōlus], *alone, only*.
- sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, single; sole*.
- solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen; melt; break; pay*. SOLVE.
- somnus, -ī, m. *sleep*. SOMNOLENT.
- sonitus, -ūs, m. [sonō], *sound, noise, din, clash*.
- sonō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, resound*.
- sopor, -ōris, m. *sleep, slumber*.
- soror, -ōris, f. *sister*.
- sors, sortis, f. *lot, luck, fortune, fate*.
- spatium, -ī, n. *room, space, distance, time*.
- speciēs (-ēī), f. *sight, appearance, pretence*. SPECIES.
- spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, behold, witness*. SPECTACLE.
- speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *spy out, watch, examine; peep*. SPECULATE.
- spēlunca, -ae, f. *cave, cavern, den*.
- spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, *despise, reject, scorn, spurn*.
- spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope, hope for*.
- spēs, speī, f. [spērō], *hope*: in *spem venire, to entertain hopes*.
- splendeō, -ēre, —, —, *shine*.
- splendidus, -a, -um [splendeō], *splendid, fine, handsome, magnificent*.
- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spolium], *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil*.
- spolium, -ī, n. [spoliō], *booty, prey, spoil*. Cf. praeda.
- sponte (suā), only abl. of *(one's own) accord*.
- squālor, -ōris, m. *dirt, filth*. SQUALID.
- stabulum, -ī, n. [stō], *(standing place), stable, stall*.
- statim, adv. [stō], *(standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once*. Cf. subitō and repente.
- statiō, -ōnis, f. [stō], *(standing place), post, station*.
- statua, -ae, f. [statuō], *(the thing set up), statue*.
- statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [stō], *(make stand, set up), fix, determine, decide*.
- statūra, -ae, f. [stō], *stature*.
- stella, -ae, f. *star*.
- sterilis, -e, adj. *barren, sterile*.
- stipendium, -ī, n. *wages, pay; military service*. STIPEND.
- stō, stāre, stēī, status, *stand*.
- stolidē, adv. [stolidus], *stupidly, stolidly*.
- stolidus, -a, -um [stolidē], *dull, stupid*.
- stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw tight; draw*. STRINGENT. STRICT.

- studium**, -ī, n. *zeal, eagerness*; **study**.
- stultitia**, -ae, f. *foolishness, folly*.
- stupeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *be astonished, be amazed*.
- suādeō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus, *advise, urge*.
- sub**, prep. with acc. and abl. *under, up to*.
- sub-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put under, set to*.
- sub-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under, go up to, enter*; *undergo*. (507.)
- sub-iciō**, -ere, -ieci, -iectus [-iaciō], *put under, place under*; with dat. *bring under, subdue*.
- sub-igō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [-agō], *bring under, subdue*.
- subitō**, adv. *suddenly, unexpectedly*. Cf. *repente* and *statim*.
- sub-levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *lift up, raise up*.
- sublicius**, -a, -um, adj. *resting on piles*: **pōns Sublicius**, *the Sublician bridge*, i.e. *the pile bridge*.
- sub-mergō**, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, *sink, overwhelm, submerge*.
- sub-rideō**, -ēre, -rīsī, —, *smile*.
- subsidium**, -ī, n. *help, aid, relief*.  
SUBSIDY. Cf. *auxilium* and *prae-sidium*.
- sub-veniō**, -īre, -vėnī, -ventus, (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist*.
- suc-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [sub-caedō], (*cut from under*), *cut down, fell*.
- succinctus**, *see succingō*.
- suc-cingō**, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīctus [sub-], *gird up, put on with a girdle*; *provide*.
- suc-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus [sub-], (*run up to*), *help, aid, succor*.
- sūdor**, -ōris, m. *sweat*.
- suī**, reflex. pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)*. (492.)
- sum**, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist*. (502.)
- summus**, -a, -um, adj. *highest, greatest, extreme*. (489.) SUM.  
CONSUMMATE.
- sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up*; *assume*.
- super**, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above, upon*.
- super-adstō**, -stāre, -stitī, —, *stand above, appear above*.
- super-iaciō**, -ere, -ieci, -iectus, *throw over, cast upon*.
- superiectus**, *see superiaciō*.
- super-incidō**, -ere, —, —, *fall upon from above*.
- superior**, -ius, adj. *higher, superior*. (489.)
- superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [super], *pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer*. Cf. *praestō* and *vincō*.
- super-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be over, be left over; survive*; with dat. (345.)
- superus**, -a, -um, adj. [super], *above*. (489.)
- supplex**, -icis, adj., (*knecling in entreaty*), *humble, suppliant*; as noun, *suppliant*.
- supplicium**, -ī, n. [supplex], *punishment, torture*.
- suprā**, adv. [superus], *above, before*.
- suprēmus**, -a, -um, adj. [superus], *last*. (489.) SUPREME.
- sus-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [sub-capiō], *take up, undertake*.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, f. [suspīcor], *suspicion*.

**su-spīcor**, -ārī, -ātus sum [suspiciō],  
*suspect, mistrust.*

**sus-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub-  
teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; support; withstand, sustain.*

**suus**, -a, -um, possess. and reflex. adj.  
and pron. [suī], *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.* (229.)

**T.**, abbreviation of Titus.

**tacitus**, -a, -um, adj. *silent.* TACIT.

**tālis**, -e, adj. *such.*

**tam**, adv. *so, so much.* Cf. *ita* and *sic*.

**tamen**, adv. *yet, but, however, nevertheless.*

**tandem**, adv. [tam-], (*just so far*), *at length, finally.*

**tangō**, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*  
TANGENT.

**tantulus**, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of  
tantus], *so small.*

**tantum**, adv. [tantus], *only.*

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj. *so great, so much, such.*

**tarditās**, -ātis, f. [tardus], *slowness.*

**tardō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardus], *delay, hinder.*

**tardus**, -a, -um, adj. [tardō], *slow, sluggish, tardy.*

**Tarentīnus**, -a, -um, adj. *of Tarentum*, a city of southern Italy; masc. plur. as noun, *the Tarentines.*

**Tarpēius**, -a, -um, adj. *Tarpeian.*

**Tarquīnius**, -ī, m. *Tarquin*, name of two kings of Rome.

**tēctum**, -ī, n. [tegō], *roof, house.*

**tegō**, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover, conceal.*

**tēlum**, -ī, n. *weapon.*

**temerē**, adv. *rashly, inconsiderately.*  
**tempestās**, -ātis, f. [tempus], *storm, tempest, weather.*

**templum**, -ī, n. *temple.* (Page 93.)

**tempus**, -oris, n. *time.* TEMPORAL.

**teneō**, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *hold, keep, have.*

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj. *soft, delicate, tender.*

**tentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

Cf. *experior.*

**tergum**, -ī, n. *back: ā tergō, behind, in the rear.*

**terō**, -ere, trīvī, trītus, (*rub, wear away*), *pass, spend, waste.*

**terra**, -ae, f. *earth, land; region.*

TERRACE.

**terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

**terrestris**, -e, adj. [terra], *of the land, land.* TERRESTRIAL.

**terribilis**, -e, adj. [terreō], *dreadful, frightful, terrible.* Cf. *horribilis.*

**terror**, -ōris, m. [terreō], *terror, alarm, fear.* Cf. *pavor.*

**tertium**, adv. [tertius], *the third time.*

**tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third.*

**tertius decimus**, -a, -um, num. adj. *thirteenth.*

**thalamum**, -ī, n. *chamber.*

**Tiberis**, -is, m. (acc. -im), *the Tiber*, a river of Italy.

**Tīcīnus**, -ī, m. *the Ticinus*, a river of Italy.

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of.* TIMID. Cf. *vereor.*

**timidus**, -a, -um, adj. [timeō], *faint-hearted, timid.* Cf. *pavidus.*

**tintinnābulum**, -ī, n. *bell.*



- Tīryns** (acc. Tīrynthā), f. *Tiryns*, a city of Greece.
- Titus**, -ī, m. *Titus*, a Roman first name.
- toga**, -ae, f. *toga*.
- togātus**, -a, -um, adj. [toga], *clad in the toga*.
- tolerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, endure*.  
TOLERATE. Cf. ferō.
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, pick up, take*.
- Torquātus**, -ī, m. [torquis], *Torquatus*, surname of Titus Manlius.
- torquis**, -is, m. *chain, necklace, collar*.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, adj. *whole, all, entire*.  
(312.) TOTAL. Cf. omnis, ūniversus, and cūnctus.
- trabs**, trabis, f. *beam, timber, log*.
- tractō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trahō], *handle, feel of*.
- trā-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [trāns-], *give over, give up, surrender, deliver: trādunt, they say*.
- trahō**, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag, lead*. TRACTION.
- trā-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [trāns-iaciō], *throw across, cross; pierce*.
- trā-nō**, -āre, -āvī, — [trāns-], *swim across*.
- trāns**, prep. with acc. *across, beyond, over, the other side of*.
- trāns-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross*.  
(507.) TRANSIT.
- trāns-fīgō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *pierce through, stab*. TRANSFIX.
- trānsfixus**, see trānsfīgō.
- trāns-fodiō**, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *run through, pierce through, stab*.
- trāns-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, —, *go over (to the enemy), desert*.
- trecentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs-centum], *three hundred*.
- tre-decim**, num. adj. [trēs-decem], *thirteen*.
- trepidātiō**, -ōnis, f. [trepidō], *confused hurry, alarm, consternation, trepidation*.
- trepidō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be in alarm, be in confusion*.
- trēs**, tria, num. adj. *three*. (304.)
- tribūnal**, -ālis, n. [tribūnus], *judgment seat, tribunal*.
- tribūnus**, -ī, m. *tribune*, a Roman officer.
- trīgintā**, indecl. num. adj. [trēs], *thirty*.
- trīstis**, -e, adj. *sad, gloomy*. Cf. maestus.
- triumphālis**, -e, adj. [triumphus], *triumphal, having enjoyed a triumph*.
- triumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph*.
- triumphus**, -ī, m. [triumphō], *triumph*.
- Trōia**, -ae, f. *Troy*, an ancient city of Asia Minor.
- trux**, trucidis, adj. *wild, harsh, savage, fierce*. Cf. atrōx and saevus.
- tū**, pers. pron. *thou, you*. (492.)
- tuba**, -ae, f. *trumpet*. (Page 35.)
- tugurium**, -ī, n. *hut, cottage*.
- tum**, adv. *at that time, then*.
- tumulus**, -ī, m. *mound, bank of earth, dike*.
- tunc**, adv. [tum], *at that time, then*.
- turba**, -ae, f. [turbō], *crowd, throng*.
- turbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [turba], *disturb, confuse, trouble*.

- turbulentus, -a, -um [turba], *stirred up, troubled; muddy*. TURBULENT.
- turpis, -e, adj. *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful*.
- turris, -is, f. *tower*. (479.) TURRET.
- tūtēla, -ae, f. *guardianship, charge, care*. TUTELARY.
- tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe*. Cf. *salvus*.
- tuus, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron. *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one person). (229.)
- ubi, interrog. and rel. adv. *where, when*.
- ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *avenge*.
- Ulixēs, -is, m. *Ulysses*, a Greek hero.
- ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus], *any, any one*. (312.)
- ultimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last*. (489.) ULTIMATE.
- umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder*.
- umquam, adv. *at any time, ever*.
- unda, -ae, f. *wave*. UNDULATE.
- unde, interrog. and rel. adv. *whence*.
- ūndecim, indecl. num. adj. [ūnus-decem], *eleven*.
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ūn-decim], *eleventh*.
- ūndēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ūnus-dē-vīgīntī], *nineteenth*.
- undique, adv. *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere*.
- unguis, -is, m. *nail, claw, talon*.
- ūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus], *only*. UNIQUE.
- ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus-versus], (*turned into one*), *whole, all, in a mass*. UNIVERSAL. Cf. *cūnctus, omnis, and tōtus*.
- ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. *one; alone*. (304.)
- urbs, -is, f. *city*. (169.) SUBURBS.
- ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, benefit, advantage*.
- ut or utī, adv. and conj. *how, as, when; that, in order that, so that, to*.
- uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two)? uter . . . utrī, which . . . to the other*. (312.)
- ūter, -tris, m. *leather bottle, skin* (of wine).
- uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both*. (312.)
- ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous*. UTILITY.
- ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, enjoy, maintain; with abl.* (388.)
- uxor, -ōris, f. *wife*.
- vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, vacant, destitute*.
- vāgīna, -ae, f. *sheath, scabbard*.
- vāgītus, -ūs, m. *a crying*.
- vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wander*.
- valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be in good health: valē, farewell, good-bye*.
- Valerius, -ī, m. *Valerius*, a Roman name.
- validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy*. VALID. Cf. *fortis*.
- vāllum, -ī, n. *earthworks, rampart*.
- varius, -a, -um, adj. *various*.
- vās, vāsis, f. (plur. *vāsa, -ōrum, n.*), *vase, pot*.
- vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vāstus], *lay waste, ravage*.
- vāstus, -a, -um, adj. [vāstō], *waste, desolate; immense, huge*.

-ve, conj., enclitic (44, 3), *or*.

vectus, *see* vehō.

vehementer, adv. *eagerly, earnestly, very much, vehemently*.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus, *carry, draw, convey*; pass. *ride, sail*.

VEHICLE.

vel, conj. [volō], *or*: vel . . . vel, *either . . . or*. Cf. aut.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cover, encircle, envelope, veil*.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. *swiftness, velocity*.

vel-ut, adv. *just as, as if, like*.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor], *hunter*.

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *sell, vend*.

venēnum, -ī, n. *poison*. VENOM.

venia, -ae, f. *indulgence, favor*. VENIAL.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come*.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *hunt, chase*.

venter, -tris, m. *belly, stomach*.

ventus, -ī, m. *wind*.

vēr, vēris, n. *spring*. VERNAL.

verbum, -ī, n. *word*. VERB.

verēcundia, -ae, f. *bashfulness, modesty; reverence*.

vereor, -ērī, -ītus sum, *fear, reverence, respect*. Cf. timeō.

Vergilius, -ī, m. *Vergil*, a famous Roman poet. (Page 125.)

vērītās, -ātis, f. [vērus], *truth, verity*.

vērō, adv. [vērus], *in truth, but*.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vertō], *turn*; *deal with*.

versus, *see* vertō.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, change*.

vērus, -a, -um, adj. *true, real*.

vescor, -ī, —, *eat*. Cf. edō.

vesper, -erī, m. *evening, nightfall*.

Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta*, a goddess.

vester, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron. *your, yours* (of more than one person). (229.)

vestimentum, -ī, n. [vestis], *clothing, garment*. VESTMENT.

vestis, -is, f. *garment, robe, clothing*.

Veturia, -ae, f. *Veturia*, mother of Coriolanus.

vetus, -eris, adj. *old*. (260.) VETERAN. Cf. antiquus.

via, -ae, f. *way, road, street; gap*.

viātor, -ōris, m. [via], *traveller*.

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [vīgintī], *twentieth*.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], *near, neighboring*; masc. as noun, *neighbor*. VICINITY.

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō], *conqueror, victor*; as adj. *victorious*.

victōria, -ae, f. [victor], *victory*.

vīcus, -ī, m. *village, district, street*.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive*; pass. *be seen, seem*. VISION.

vigilia, -ae, f. *watch, night watch*.

vīmen, -īnis, n. *pliant twig, wither, osier*.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind*.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat*. Cf. superō.

vinculum, -ī, n. [vinciō], *chain, bond*: in vincula, *into prison, in chains*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay claim to, claim, demand*. VINDICATE.

vinea, -ae, f. *covered shed, movable shelter, vinea*. (Page 155.)

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*.

violentia, -ae, f. *fury, violence*.

vir, virī, m. *man, hero*. (478.) Cf. homō.

vireō, -ēre, —, —, *be green*.

**virga**, -ae, f. *twig, rod.*

**virgō**, -inis, f. *maiden, virgin.*

**virgula**, -ae, f. [virga], *little twig, small rod.*

**virtūs**, -ūtis, f. [vir], *manliness, courage, bravery; virtue, valor.*

**vīs**, see **volō**, *wish.*

**vīs**, vīs, f. *strength, power, force, violence.* (482.) Cf. **rōbur**.

**vīsus**, -ūs, m. [videō], *sight, appearance.*

**vīta**, -ae, f. [vīvō], *life.* VITAL.

**vītis**, -is, f. *vine.*

**vitium**, -ī, n. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish, vice.* Cf. **culpa**.

**vīvō**, -ere, vīxī, —, *live.* Cf. **habitō** and **incolō**. VIVID.

**vix**, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vōx], *call.* VOCATION. Cf. **appellō**.

**Volcānus**, -ī, m. *Vulcan*, the god of fire.

**volnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volnus],

*wound, hurt, injure.* VULNERABLE.

**volnus**, -eris, n. [volnerō], *wound.*

**volō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.* VOLATILE.

**volō**, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing, desire, intend.* (505.)

**Volscī**, -ōrum, *the Volscians*, a people of Italy.

**voltus**, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks, features.*

**Volumnia**, -ae, f. *Volumnia*, wife of Coriolanus.

**voluntās**, -ātis, f. [volō], *will, good will, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

**voluptās**, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment.*

**Vorēnus**, -ī, m. *Vorenius*, a centurion.

**vōx**, vōcis, f. [vocō], *voice, word, remark.* VOCAL.

**vulpēs**, -is, f. *fox.* VULPINE.

**Zama**, -ae, f. *Zama*, a town in Africa.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For the principal parts of verbs and other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary or to the special vocabularies. The figures, 1, 2, 3, 4 after verbs indicate the conjugation.

- a, an**, commonly not translated; *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quīdam*) (335, 496).  
**about**, *dē*, *with abl.*  
**about to** (love, etc.), *fut. act. part.*  
**account of (on)**, *abl. of cause.*  
**active**, *impiger*, -*gra*, -*grum*; *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
**adorn**, *ōrnō*, 1.  
**advance**, *prōcēdō*, 3.  
**advise**, *moneō*, 2 (498).  
**afraid (be)**, *vereor*, 2; *timeō*, 2.  
**Africa**, *Āfrica*, -*ae*, *f.*  
**after**, *sometimes implied in participle.*  
**afterwards**, *postea*, *deinde*.  
**again**, *rūrsus*.  
**aid**, *n. auxilium*, *auxilī*, *n.*  
**aid**, *v. iuvō*, 1.  
**air**, *āēr*, *āeris* (acc. *āera*), *m.*  
**alas!** *ēheu!*  
**all**, *omnis*, -*e*; *tōtus*, -*a*, -*um* (312).  
**ally**, *socius*, *soci*, *m.*  
**alone**, *sōlus*, -*a*, -*um*; *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um* (312).  
**already**, *iam*.  
**also**, *quoque*.  
**altar**, *āra*, -*ae*, *f.*  
**although**, *cum*, *with subjv.*  
**always**, *semper*.  
**among**, *inter*, *with acc.*; *in*, *with abl.*  
**Amulius**, *Amūlius*, -*ī*, *m.*  
**ancient**, *antiquus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
**and**, *et*, *atque* (*āc*); -*que*.  
**anger**, *īra*, -*ae*, *f.*  
**animal**, *animal*, -*ālis*, *n.* (169).  
**another**, *alius*, -*a*, -*ud* (486).  
**answer**, *respondeō*, 2.  
**any. any one, any thing**, *ūllus*, -*a*, -*um* (312); *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* (*aliquod*) (335); *quisquam*, —, *quidquam* (335); *quīvīs*, *quaevīs*, *quidvīs* (*quodvīs*) (335).  
**approach**, *adpropinquō*, 1.  
**arm**, *armō*, 1.  
**arms**, *arma*, -*ōrum*, *n.*  
**army**, *exercitus*, -*ūs*, *m.*  
**arrow**, *sagitta*, -*ae*, *f.*  
**art**, *ars*, *artis*, *f.*  
**as**, *cum*, *with subjv.*  
**ask**, *interrogō*, 1; (**for**), *rogō*, 1; *petō*, 3.  
**assemble**, *congregō*, 1; *conveniō*, 4.  
**as to** (after *so*, *such*, etc.), *nt.*  
**at**, *in*, *with acc. or abl.*; *with names of towns, locative case* (195); *abl. of cause*; *abl. of time.*  
**Athens**, *Athēnae*, -*ārum*, *f. plur.*

at last, iam, tandem.

attack, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*

Augustus, Augustus, -ī, *m.*

away from, ā or ab, *with abl.*

bad, malus, -a, -um (260).

battle, pūgna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*

be, sum (502).

bear, ferō (506); tolerō, 1; sustineō, 2.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod; quia.

become, fiō (508).

before, ante, *with acc.*; prō, *with abl.*

behooves (it), oportet, 2.

benefit, prōsum (504), *with dat.*

between, inter, *with acc.*

beyond, extrā, *with acc.*

bid, iubeō, 2.

bind, vinciō, 4.

bird, avis, -is, *f.* (169, *c*).

black, niger, -gra, -grum.

blame, culpō, 1.

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e.

boldly, cum audāciā.

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

both (each of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (312); ambō, -ae, -ō; both . . . and, et . . . et.

boy, puer, -erī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte.

bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

bring, portō, 1; ferō (506); (up), educō, 1.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*

build, aedificō, 1.

building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*

but, sed; autem; at.

buy, emō, 3.

by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; denoting means or instrument, *abl. alone*; sometimes implied in *participle*.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

can, possum (503).

Capua, Capua, -ae, *f.*

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

care for, cūrō, 1.

carefully, cum cūrā.

carry, portō, 1; ferō (506); carry on war, bellum gerō.

Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*

Carthaginian, *n.* Poenus, -ī, *m.*

Carthaginian, *adj.* Pūnicus, -a, -um.

Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*

cause, praebeō, 2.

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*

certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (335).

chance, locus, -ī, *m.*

change, mūtō, 1.

check (hold in), sustineō, 2.

children, puerī, -ōrum, *m.*; liberī, -ōrum, *m.*

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.* and *f.*

city, urbs, -is, *f.*

cloud, nūbēs, -is, *f.*

cold, *adj.* frīgīdus, -a, -um.

cold, *n.* frīgus, -oris, *n.*

**come**, veniō, 4.  
**coming**, *n.* adventus, -ūs, *m.*  
**command**, iubeō, 2, *with acc.*; prae-  
 sum (504), *with dat.*  
**common**, communis, -e.  
**commonwealth**, rēs pūblica, rei  
 pūblīcae, *f.*  
**comrade**, socius, soci, *m.*  
**confidence**, fidēs, -eī, *f.*  
**conquer**, superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**constancy**, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*  
**consul**, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*  
**contend**, contendō, 3.  
**Corinth**, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*  
**Cornelia**, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*  
**country** (*fatherland*), patria, -ae,  
*f.*; (*land*), terra, -ae, *f.*; (*not city*),  
 rū, rūris, *n.*  
**courage**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**cover**, tegō, 3.  
**cup**, pōcūlum, -ī, *n.*  
  
**dance**, saltō, 1.  
**danger**, perīcūlum, -ī, *n.*  
**daring**, audācia, -ae, *f.*  
**daughter**, filia, -ae, *f.* (page 22,  
 note 2).  
**day**, diēs, -ēī, *m.* and *f.* (275).  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um.  
**death**, mors, mortis, *f.*  
**death (put to)**, interficiō, 3.  
**deck**, ōrnō, 1.  
**deep**, altus, -a, -um.  
**defeat**, vincō, 3; superō, 1.  
**defend**, dēfendō, 3.  
**defender**, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*  
**delay**, mora, -ae, *f.*  
**delight**, dēlectō, 1.  
**Delphi**, Delphī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**deprive**, prīvō, 1.

**deputy**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*  
**design**, cōsiliū, consili, *n.*  
**desirous**, cupidus, -a, -um.  
**destroy**, dēleō, 2.  
**die**, dēcēdō, 3; morior, 3.  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*  
**diligence**, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**diligently**, dīligenter; cum dīli-  
 gentiā.  
**dismiss**, dīmīttō, 3.  
**dismount**, dēscendō, 3.  
**do**, faciō, 3; agō, 3; *also as auxil-*  
*iary*; (*not*), nōlī, nōlite.  
**doctor**, medicus, -ī, *m.*  
**dog**, canis, -is, *m.* and *f.*  
**dove**, columba, -ae, *f.*  
**draw**, ēdūcō, 3; (*up*), īnstruō, 3.  
**drive**, agitō, 1.  
**Duilius**, Duīlius, Duīli, *m.*  
**dwell**, habitō, 1.

**each (one)**, quisque, quaeque, quid-  
 que (quodque) (335); (*of two*),  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque (312).  
**eager**, ācer, ācris, ācre.  
**eagerness**, studium, studī, *n.*  
**easily**, facile.  
**easy**, facilis, -e (254).  
**elephant**, elephantus, -ī, *m.*  
**eleven**, ūndecim.  
**end**, fīnis, -is, *m.* (169, *c*).  
**endure**, tolerō, 1.  
**enemy**, hostis, -is, *m.* and *f.*; inimī-  
 cus, -ī, *m.* (171).  
**enjoy**, fruor, 3, *with abl.*  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*  
**even**, etiam; ipse (329).  
**event**, rēs, rei, *f.* (275).  
**every one**, quisque, quaeque (335).  
**everything**, omnia, -ium, *n. plur.*

- example**, exemplum, -ī, *n.*  
**excel**, praestō, 1, *with dat.*  
**exile**, exsilium, exsilī, *n.*
- Fabius**, Fabius, Fabī, *m.*  
**Fabricius**, Fabricius, Fabricī, *m.*  
**fact**, rēs, rei, *f.* (275).  
**faithful**, fidēlis, -e.  
**faithfully**, fidēliter.  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um.  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, *m.*  
**father**, pater, -tris, *m.*  
**fault**, culpa, -ae, *f.*  
**fear**, *v.* timeō, 2; vereor, 2.  
**February**, Februārius, -ī, *m.*  
**few**, paucī, -ae, -a.  
**field**, ager, agrī, *m.*  
**fierce**, asper, -era, -erum.  
**fifteenth**, quīndecimus, -a, -um.  
**fight**, pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.  
**fighting (there is)**, pūgnātur.  
**fill**, compleō, 2; impleō, 2.  
**find**, reperiō, 4.  
**fire**, īgnis, -is, *m.* (169, *c*).  
**first**, primus, -a, -um.  
**five**, quīnque.  
**flee**, fugiō, 3.  
**fly**, fugiō, 3.  
**foe**, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*  
**foliage**, frōns, frondis, *f.*  
**follow**, sequor, 3.  
**fond**, cupidus, -a, -um.  
**food**, cibus, -ī, *m.*  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, *m.*  
**foot-soldier**, pedes, -itis, *m.*  
**for**, *conj.* nam.  
**for**, *sign of dative; prep.*, dē, prō, *with abl.*; (*of time, space, purpose*), in, *with acc.*; ad, *with gerundive; with acc. of extent.*
- form**, faciō, 3.  
**former**, ille, -a, -ud.  
**fortification**, mūniō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4.  
**fortune**, fortuna, -ae, *f.*  
**found**, condō, 3.  
**fourteen**, quattuordecim.  
**free**, *adj.* liber, -era, -erum.  
**free**, *v.* liberō, 1.  
**friend**, amīcus, -ī, *m.*  
**frighten**, terreō, 2.  
**from**, dē, *with abl.*; **away from**, ā *or ab, with abl.*; **out of, from**, ē *or ex, with abl.*; *abl. of separation.*  
**full**, plēnus, -a, -um.
- Galba**, Galba, -ae, *m.*  
**garden**, hortus, -ī, *m.*  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
**Gaul (a)**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*  
**general**, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**Germans**, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**get (possession of)**, potior, 4, *with abl.* (388).  
**gift**, dōnum, -ī, *n.*  
**girl**, puella, -ae, *f.*  
**give**, dō, 1; dōnō, 1.  
**glad**, laetus, -a, -um.  
**gladly**, cum gaudiō.  
**gladness**, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*  
**go**, eō (507); (**off, away**), dēmigrō, 1; discēdō, 3; abeō.  
**god**, deus, -ī, *m.* (482).  
**goddess**, dea, -ae, *f.* (page 22, note 2).  
**going to**, *fut. act. part.*  
**gold**, aurum, -ī, *n.*  
**golden**, aureus, -a, -um.  
**good**, bonus, -a, -um (260).  
**grain**, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*



- great**, māgnus, -a, -um (260); ingēns, -entis.  
**greatest**, māximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (489).  
**Greece**, Graecia, -ae, *f.*  
**greedy**, avārus, -a, -um.  
**grieve**, doleō, 2.  
**ground (on the)**, humī (*loc.*).  
**hand**, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
**hand to hand**, comminus.  
**Hannibal**, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*  
**happen**, accidō, 3; fiō (508).  
**hasten**, properō, 1.  
**have**, habeō, 2; sum, *with dat. of possessor.*  
**he, is** (138); hīc (200); ille (200).  
**head**, caput, -itis, *n.* (156).  
**hear**, audiō, 4 (501).  
**heaven**, caelum, -ī, *n.*  
**helmet**, galea, -ae, *f.*  
**help**, *n.* auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*  
**help**, *v.* iuvō, 1.  
**her**, ēius (138); huius (200); illius (200); *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (230, a).  
**here (be)**, adsum (502).  
**hesitate**, dubitō, 1.  
**high**, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um (489).  
**hill**, collis, -is, *m.*  
**himself**, *see self.*  
**his**, ēius (138); illius (200); *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (230, a).  
**hold**, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; (**in check**), sustineō, 2.  
**home**, domus, -ūs, *f.* (482); **at home**, domī (195, b).  
**hope**, *n.* spēs, -eī, *f.*  
**hope**, *v.* spērō, 1.  
**Horatius**, Horātius, Horātī, *m.*  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, *n.* (242).  
**horse**, equus, -ī, *m.*  
**horseman**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*  
**hostile**, hostilis, -e.  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
**house**, domus, -ūs, *f.* (482).  
**how many**, quot.  
**hundred**, centum.  
**hurl**, iaciō, 3; coniciō, 3; mittō, 3.  
**I**, ego (492).  
**if**, sī; **if not**, nisi.  
**imitate**, imitor, 1.  
**in**, in, *with abl.*; *abl. of specification.*  
**infantry**, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*  
**injure**, noceō, 2, *with dat.*; obsum (502), *with dat.*  
**into**, in, *with acc.*  
**iron**, ferreus, -a, -um.  
**island**, īnsula, -ae, *f.*  
**it, is** (138); hīc (200); ille (200).  
**Italy**, Italia, -ae, *f.*  
**itself**, *see self.*  
**javelin**, pīlum, -ī, *n.* (page 27).  
**joy**, gaudium, gaudiī, *n.*  
**joyful**, laetus, -a, -um.  
**joyfully**, cum gaudiō.  
**jump down**, dēsiliō, 4.  
**keep**, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; (**off**), arceō, 2, *with ā (ab) and abl.*  
**kill**, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.  
**kind**, bonus, -a, -um (260).  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, *m.*  
**know**, sciō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3.

- lack, *n.* inopia, -ae, *f.*  
 lack, *v.* careō, 2, *with abl.*; dēsum  
 (502), *with dat.*  
 lady, domina, -ae, *f.*  
 lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*  
 land, terra, -ae, *f.*  
 large, māgnus, -a, -um (260).  
 last, proximus, -a, -um (489).  
 laugh, rīdeō, 2.  
 lay waste, vāstō, 1.  
 laziness, pigritia, -ae, *f.*  
 lazy, piger, -gra, -grum (483).  
 lead, dūcō, 3; ēdūcō, 3; (back),  
 redūcō, 3.  
 leader, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*  
 leaf, frōns, frondis, *f.*  
 leap down, dēsiliō, 4.  
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 lest, nē, *with subjv.*  
 let, *sign of subjv. or inv.*  
 letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*  
 liberate, liberō, 1.  
 lie, lie down, iaceō, 2.  
 lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*  
 life, vīta, -ae, *f.*  
 like, similis, -e (254).  
 line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*  
 lion, leō, -ōnis, *m.*  
 little, parvus, -a, -um (260).  
 live, vivō, 3; habitō, 1.  
 long, longus, -a, -um; for a long  
 time, long, diū (490).  
 love, *n.* amor, -ōris, *m.*  
 love, *v.* amō, 1 (497).  
 lying, mendācium, mendāci, *n.*  
  
 make, faciō, 3; (ready), parō, 1.  
 man, vir, virī, *m.* (478); homō, -inis,  
*m.* (163).  
 manage, regō, 3.  
 many, multī, -ae, -a (260).  
 March, Mārtius, Mārtī, *m.*  
 march, *v.* iter faciō (3).  
 Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*  
 master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magister,  
 -trī, *m.* (109).  
 means (*by means of*), *use abl.*  
 memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*  
 Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*  
 merry, laetus, -a, -um.  
 messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*  
 mile, mille passuum (305, *e.*)  
 mind, animus, -ī, *m.*  
 mine, meus, -a, -um (229).  
 miserable, miser, -era, -erum.  
 money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*  
 month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*  
 moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*  
 more, plūs (261); *comp. degree.*  
 most, *superl. degree.*  
 mother, māter, -tris, *f.*  
 mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*  
 move, moveō, 2.  
 much, *adj.* multus, -a, -um (260).  
 much, *adv.* multum; multō.  
 multitude, multitudō, -inis, *f.*  
 must, *gerundive with sum.*  
 my, meus, -a, -um (229).  
  
 native country, patria, -ae, *f.*  
 neither, neque (nec).  
 never, numquam.  
 nevertheless, tamen.  
 new, novus, -a, -um.  
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*  
 no, nūllus, -a, -um (312).  
 nor, neque (nec).  
 not, nōn; nē.  
 now, nunc; iam.

- O!** Ō!  
**oak, oak tree,** quercus, -ūs, *f.*  
**oar,** rēmus, -ī, *m.*  
**of,** *sign of genitive*; dē, *with abl.*; **out of, of,** ē or ex, *with abl.*; *abl. of separation.*  
**often,** saepe (490).  
**old,** antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (260); senex, senis (260, 482); (*having been born*), nātus, -a, -um.  
**older,** māior nātū.  
**on** (*of place*), in, *with abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*  
**once** (**upon a time**), ōlim.  
**one,** ūnus, -a, -um (304); **one . . . one thing, another another,** alius aliud; **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.  
**orator,** ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**order,** iubeō, 2, *with acc.*; **in order that,** ut, *with subjv.*  
**other,** alius, -a, -ud (486); (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **which** (*of two*) **to the other,** uter utrī (or alterī).  
**ought,** dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2; *gerundive with sum.*  
**our,** noster, -tra, -trum.  
**ourselves,** *see self.*  
**out of,** ē or ex, *with abl.*  
**overcome,** superō, 1; vincō, 3.  
**own** (**his, her, their**), suus, -a, -um; (**my**), meus, -a, -um; (**our**), noster, -tra, -trum; (**your**), vester, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), tuus, -a, -um (229).  
**owner,** dominus, -ī, *m.*  
**part,** pars, partis, *f.*  
**peace,** pāx, pācis, *f.*  
**people,** populus, -ī, *m.*  
**persuade,** persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*  
**physician,** medicus, -ī, *m.*  
**pine, pine tree,** pīnus, -ī (*abl.* pīnū), *f.*  
**pirate,** pīrātus, -ī, *m.*  
**place,** *n.* locus, -ī (*plur.* locī and loca), *m.*  
**place,** *v.* pōnō, 3.  
**plan,** cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*  
**plead,** ōrō, 1.  
**please,** placeō, 2, *with dat.*  
**pleasing,** grātus, -a, -um.  
**plenty,** cōpia, -ae, *f.*  
**plough,** *n.* arātrum, -ī, *n.*  
**plough,** *v.* arō, 1.  
**poet,** poēta, -ae, *m.*  
**Pompey,** Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*  
**poor,** miser, -era, -erum.  
**position,** locus, -ī (*plur.* locī and loca), *m.*  
**possession of (get),** potior, 4, *with abl.*  
**power,** potestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**praise,** laudō, 1.  
**pray,** ōrō, 1.  
**prefer,** mālō (505).  
**prepare,** parō, 1.  
**present,** dōnum, -ī, *n.*  
**present (be),** adsum (502), *with dat.*  
**preserve,** cōservō, 1.  
**pretty,** pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**prisoner,** captīvus, -ī, *m.*  
**prove,** probō, 1.  
**prudent,** prūdēns, -entis.  
**Pullo,** Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*  
**punish,** pūniō, 4.  
**purpose** (*for the purpose of*), ut or quī, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*; causā, *following a gerund or gerundive*; *supine.*  
**put,** pōnō, 3; (**on**), induō, 3; (**to death**), interficiō, 3; (**to flight**), fugō, 1.

- queen, *rēgīna*, -ae, *f.*  
 rather, *comp. degree.*  
 raven, *corvus*, -ī, *m.*  
 read, *legō*, 3.  
 ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.  
 receive, *capiō*, 3 (500); *recipiō*, 3.  
 reduce, *redigō*, 3.  
 relate, *nārrō*, 1.  
 remain, *maneō*, 2.  
 remember, *memoriā teneō*, 2.  
 remove (*emigrate*), *dēmigrō*, 1.  
 resound, *sonō*, 1.  
 reverence, *vereor*, 2.  
 reward, *praemium*, *praemī*, *n.*  
 right (hand), *dexter*, -tra, -trum.  
 river, *flūmen*, -inis, *n.*  
 road, *via*, -ae, *f.*  
 rob, *spoliō*, 1.  
 robber, *latrō*, -ōnis, *m.*  
 robust, *validus*, -a, -um.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, *f.*  
 Romulus, *Rōmulus*, -ī, *m.*  
 rose, *rosa*, -ae, *f.*  
 rough, *asper*, -era, -erum.  
 rouse, *concitō*, 1.  
 rule, *v. regō*, 3 (499).  
 rush at, *inrumpō*, 3.  
  
 sad, *trīstis*, -e.  
 safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.*  
 sagacious, *prūdēns*, -entis.  
 sailor, *nauta*, -ae, *m.*  
 sake (*for the sake*), *causā*, *following a gen.*  
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem* (493).  
 save, *servō*, 1; *cōservō*, 1.  
 say, *dīcō*, 3.  
 scare, *terreō*, 2.  
 school, *schola*, -ae, *f.*  
 Scipio, *Scipiō*, -ōnis, *m.*  
 sea, *mare*, -is, *n.*  
 second, *secundus*, -a, -um.  
 see, *videō*, 2.  
 seek, *petō*, 3.  
 seem, *videor*, 2.  
 seize hold of, *adprehendō*, 3.  
 self, *ipse*, -a, -um (329); *suī* (492).  
 send, *mittō*, 3; (*off, away*), *dīmittō*, 3.  
 servant, *servus*, -ī, *m.*  
 set (out), *proficiscor*, 3; (*free*), *liberō*, 1; (*up*), *īstituō*, 3.  
 several, *plūrēs*, -ium (261).  
 Sextus, *Sextus*, -ī, *m.*  
 she, *ea* (138).  
 shepherd, *pāstor*, -ōris, *m.*  
 shield, *scūtum*, -ī, *n.*  
 shine, *lūceō*, 2.  
 ship, *nāvis*, -is, *f.* (169, *c*).  
 shore, *litus*, -oris, *n.*  
 short, *brevis*, -e.  
 show, *mōnstrō*, 1; *praebeō*, 2.  
 sick, *aeger*, -gra, -grum.  
 silent, *tacitus*, -a, -um.  
 since, *cum*, *with subjv.*; *sometimes implied in participle.*  
 sing, *cantō*, 1.  
 sister, *soror*, -ōris, *f.*  
 six, *sex*.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, *m.*  
 sleep, *somnus*, -ī, *m.*  
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um (260).  
 snow, *nix*, *nivis*, *f.*  
 so, *tam*; (*that, as to*), *ut*; (*as not to*), *ut nōn*; *nē*.  
 soldier, *mīles*, -itis, *m.*  
 some, often not expressed; *some . . . others*, *aliī . . . aliī*.

- something**, aliquid.  
**sometimes**, interdum.  
**son**, filius, fili, *m.*  
**song**, cantus, -ūs, *m.*  
**soon**, mox.  
**sound**, sonō, 1.  
**spare**, parcō, 3, *with dat.*  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, *f.*  
**spirit**, animus, -ī, *m.*  
**spiritedly**, ācriter.  
**state**, civitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*  
**stay**, maneō, 2.  
**steadfastness**, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*  
**step**, gradus, -ūs, *m.* (242).  
**stone**, lapis, -idis, *m.*  
**story**, fābula, -ae, *f.*  
**stranger**, advena, -ae, *m.* and *f.*  
**street**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**strength**, rōbur, -oris, *n.*  
**strong**, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.  
**study**, studium, studī, *n.*  
**successfully**, fēliciter.  
**suddenly**, subitō.  
**suffer**, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**surpass**, superō, 1, *with acc.*; praestō, 1, *with dat.*  
**survive**, supersum (502).  
**swiftness**, vėlōcitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**swim**, natō, 1; (**across**), trānō, 1.  
**sword**, gladius, gladī, *m.*  
  
**take**, capiō, 3 (500).  
**tall**, altus, -a, -um.  
**task**, pēnsūm, -ī, *n.*  
**teach**, doceō, 2.  
**teacher**, magister, -trī, *m.*  
**tell**, nārō, 1; dicō, 3.  
**temple**, templum, -ī, *n.*  
  
**ten**, decem.  
**tender**, tener, -era, -erum.  
**tenth**, decimus, -a, -um.  
**territory**, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*  
**terror**, terror, -ōris, *m.*  
**test**, experior, 4.  
**than**, quam; *abl.* (250).  
**that**, *conj.*: *in purpose or result clauses*, ut; *after verbs of fearing*, nē; (**not**), nē; ut nōn; *after verbs of fearing*, ut; *after verbs of saying and the like*, not expressed.  
**that**, *demon. pron.* is, ea, id (138); ille, -a, -ud (200); iste, -a, -ud (493); *rel. pron.* quī, quae, quod (210).  
**the**, not expressed.  
**their**, *gen. plur. of is*; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (229).  
**then**, tum.  
**there**, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.  
**thing**, rēs, reī, *f.*; sometimes omitted.  
**think**, putō, 1; arbitror, 1.  
**this**, is, ea, id (138); hīc, haec, hōc (200).  
**though**, cum, *with subjv.*; sometimes implied in participle.  
**thousand**, mille (304).  
**throw**, iaciō, 3; mittō, 3; (**over**), supericiō, 3.  
**thus**, sic.  
**Tiber**, Tiberis, -is, *m.*  
**time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*; spatium, spatī, *n.*  
**tired**, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
**to**, *sign of dative*; ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*;

- causā, *following a gerund or gerundive; supine.*
- to-day, hodiē.
- too, quoque; *comp. degree.*
- touch, tangō, 3.
- town, oppidum. -ī, *n.*
- townsman, oppidānus, -ī, *m.*
- train, educō, 1.
- tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
- tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
- troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
- trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
- try, tentō, 1; experior, 4.
- twenty-eight, duodētrigintā.
- twenty-fourth, vicēsīmus quartus.
- twenty-one, vīgintī ūnus.
- two, duo, -ae, -o; (*which of*), uter, -tra, -trum; (*each of*), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
- under, sub, *with acc. or abl.*
- unwilling (be), nōlō (505).
- upon, in, *with acc. or abl.*
- urge, hortor, 1.
- use, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
- various, varius, -a, -um.
- very, *superl. degree; māximē; ipse, -a, -um (329).*
- Vesta, Vesta, -ae, *f.*
- victorious, victor, -ōris, *m.*
- victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
- virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
- Vorenius, Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*
- wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*
- walk (*take a walk*), ambulō, 1.
- wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
- want (*lack*), careō, 2, *with abl.; dēsum, with abl. (502).*
- war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
- warn, moneō, 2.
- water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
- way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.* (482).
- weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
- welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
- well, bene (267).
- well-known, *sometimes expressed by ille.*
- what, *interrog.* quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (142).
- when, cum; *ablative absolute.*
- where, ubi.
- whether, num.
- which, quī, quae, quod (142); (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum (312).
- while, inter, *with gerund; sometimes implied in participle.*
- white, albus, -a, -um.
- whither, quō.
- who, *rel.* quī, quae (210); *interrog.* quis, quae (142).
- whole, tōtus, -a, -um (312); omnis, e.
- why, cūr.
- wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
- winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
- wise, sapiēns, -entis; prūdēns, -entis.
- wisely, sapienter.
- wish, volō (505); (*not*), nōlō.
- with, cum, *with abl.; sometimes abl. alone.*
- within (*into*), in, *with acc.*
- without, sine, *with abl.*
- withstand, sustineō, 2.
- woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*
- word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
- work, labōrō, 1.
- worse, pēior, -ius (260).

**worst**, *pessimus*, -a, -um (260).

**wound**, *n.* *volnus*, -eris, *n.*

**wound**, *v.* *volnerō*, 1.

**wretched**, *miser*, -era, -erum.

**write**, *scribō*, 3.

**writer**, *scriptor*, -ōris, *m.*

**year**, *annus*, -ī, *m.*

**yonder (that)**, *ille*, -a, -ud.

**you**, *sing.* *tū*; *plur.* *vōs* (492).

**your**, *sing.* *tuus*, -a, -um; *plur.*

*vester*, -tra, -trum (229).

**yourselves**, *see self*.

**youth (body of)**, *iuventūs*, -ūtis, *f.*

**Zama**, *Zama*, -ae, *f.*





# INDEX

NOTE — References are to sections unless otherwise indicated.

## A

- ā** or **ab** with ablative of agent, 207, *a*, 208.
- ā**-declension of nouns, 48, 53, 477.
- ā**-verbs, 59, 60, 497.
- ablative** case, 46 and *d*.
- absolute, 357, 358.
- after a comparative, 249, *a*, 250.
- of agent, 207, *a*, 208.
- of cause, 164, *a*, 165.
- of degree of difference, 263, *a*, 264.
- of description, 306, *a*, 307.
- of manner, 128, *a*, 129.
- of means or instrument, 123, *a*, 124.
- of place where, 81.
- of place whence, 159, 197, 3.
- of separation, 231, *a*, 232.
- of specification, 372, *b*, 374.
- of time, 187, *a*, 188.
- with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., 387, 388.
- with *ex*, equivalent of partitive genitive, 256, *b*.
- ablative** of adjectives of third declension, 182, *b*.
- ābus** in dative and ablative of first declension, page 22, note 2.
- accent**, 44, 1, 2, and 3.
- in contracted genitive of nouns in *-ius*, 84, *c*, *d*.
- accusative** case, 46 and *b* and *c*.
- of extent, 277, *a*, 278.
- object of transitive verbs, 57.
- of place whither, 160, 197, 2.
- subject of the infinitive, 318, rule 1.
- in indirect discourse, 321-326.
- ācer**, declension, 182, 484.
- comparison, 253.
- adjectives**, definition, 3.
- kinds and definitions, 3, *a-d*.
- of first and second declensions, 90, 483.
- adjectives** of third declension, 182, 484.
- of one, two, and three terminations, 182, *a*, *b*, note.
- irregular (gen. in *-ius*), 312, 313, 486.
- comparison, 246-248, 253, 254, 260, 487, 489.
- meaning of comparative and superlative, 255, *a*.
- declension of comparatives, 248, 483.
- irregular comparison, 254, 260, 489.
- comparison by adverbs, 26, *a*, and note.
- positive wanting, 262, 489.
- interrogative adjectives, 144, *a*, *b*.
- possessives, 229; distinction in use between *suus* and *ēius*, 230, *a*; between *tuus* and *vester*, 229, note; omission of *suus*, 230, *b*.
- predicate, 100, *a*.
- with complementary infinitive, 318, rule 2.
- used as nouns, 3, *d*.
- in the plural without a noun, page 39, note 1.
- with nouns: agreement, 92.
- of description, 306, *a*, 307.
- of manner, 128, *a*, 129.
- with dat., 116, *a*, 117.
- adverbs**, definition, 5.
- kinds and definitions, 5, *a-f*.
- formation, 267, *b*.
- comparison, 267 and *b*, 490.
- in place of positives of adjectives, 262.
- agent**, expressed by abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 208.
- with the gerundive, 425, *d*, 426.
- ager**, declension, 108, 478.
- agreement** of adjectives, 92.
- after complementary infinitive, 318, rule 2.

- agreement of appositives, 111.  
 of predicate nouns, 99.  
 of relative pronouns, 213, 222, *a*.
- aliquis, 335, 496.
- alius, declension, 312, 486.
- alius . . . alius, 313.
- alius . . . aliud, 313.
- alphabet, 36.
- alter . . . alter, 313.
- altior, declension, 248.
- altus, comparison, 247.
- amāns, declension, 485.
- amō, conjugation, 497.
- ANECDOTES, 434-438.
- animal, declension, 169, 479, *c*.
- antecedent, definition, 2, note.
- antepenult, 42, 5.  
 when accented, 44, 2.
- appeals, 340 and *a*.
- apposition, 110, 111.
- article, none in Latin, 50, *a*.
- artus, irregular dat. and abl. plural,  
 242, *a*.
- audāx, declension, 182, 484.  
 comparison, 247.
- audiō, conjugation, 501.
- avis, 169, *c*.
- B**
- base, 53, *b*.
- bonus, declension, 483.  
 comparison, 260, 489.
- bōs, declension, 482.
- brevis, declension, 182, 484.  
 comparison, 247.
- C**
- capiō, conjugation, 500.
- caput, declension, 154, 479.
- cardinals, definition, 3, *b*.  
 table of, 491.  
 indeclinable from *quattuor* to *centum*,  
 305, *c*.  
 declension, 304, 305, 486.
- case of relative pronouns, 213.
- cases, names of English, 24, 1, 2, 3.  
 names of Latin, 46. See under *nominative*, *genitive*, etc.  
 general rules for endings, 46, *a-d*.
- causal clauses, with *cum*, 396, *a*, 398.
- cause, expressed by the ablative, 164, *a*,  
 165; 357, 358.
- characteristic ablative, 306, *a*, 307. See  
*ablative of description*.
- characteristic vowels of the four conju-  
 gations, 59.
- cīvis, 169, *c*.
- clauses, definition and kinds, 20 and  
*a, b, c*.  
 of purpose, with *ut* and *nē*, 283, *a*, 284.  
 of result, with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 289, *a*,  
 290.  
 relative of purpose, 419, 420.  
 with *cum*, when, 396-398.
- commands, 340 and *a*.
- comparative, declined, 248, 488; *plūs*,  
 declined, 261.  
 followed by the ablative, 250.  
 meaning *too*, 255, *a*.
- comparison, definition, 26; of adjectives,  
 246-248, 253, 254, 260-262, 487;  
 methods in English and in Latin, 26,  
*a*, and note; irregular, 254, 260-262,  
 489; six adjectives in *-lis*, 254, 489;  
 positive wanting, 262, 489.  
 of adverbs, 267 and *b*.  
 ablative of, 249, *a*, 250.
- complement of verb, 15, *a*.
- compound tenses often omit *est*, cf. page  
 190, note 14.
- conditional sentences, 403.  
 simple conditions, 404 and *a*, 405.  
 doubtful conditions, 404 and *b*, 406.  
 contrary to fact, 404 and *c*, 407.
- conjugation, definition, 27.  
 in English verb, 27, *a*. See *verbs*.
- conjunction, definition, 7.  
 kinds and definitions, 7, *a, b*.
- cōnsilium, genitive in *-ī*, 84, *d*.
- consonant-*i*, 37.
- consonant stems, pages 60, 64.
- consonants, 38.  
 how pronounced, 41.
- contraction in perfect and cognate tenses  
 when *v* is lost, 414, *b*.  
 in gen. of nouns in *-ium* and *-ius*, 84,  
*c* and *d*.
- coördinate clauses, 20, *c*.
- copula, 15, *a*.

cornū, declension, 242, 480.  
 corpus, declension, 163, 479, *b*.  
 cum, prep. with abl. of manner, 129.  
   joined to abl. of personal, relative, and  
   interrogative pronouns, 221, *d*.  
 cum, conj. in clauses of time, 396, *a*, 397.  
   causal and concessive, 396, *a*, 398.

## D

dative case, 46 and *d*.  
   of agent, 425, *d*, 426.  
   with adjectives, 116, *a*, 117.  
   with compound verbs, 346, *a*, 347.  
   of indirect object, 79.  
   of possession, 114, *a*, 115.  
   of service, 348, 349.  
   with intransitive verbs, meaning to *be-  
 lieve, favor, etc.*, 392, 393.  
 dea, dat. and abl. plural, page 22, note 2.  
 declension, definition, 22. See *nouns,  
 adjectives, and comparatives*.  
 degree of difference expressed by the  
 ablative, 263, *a*, 264.  
 demonstrative adjectives and pronouns,  
 definition, 2, *d*, 3, *c*.  
   See *pronouns*; also *hic, idem, ille,  
 ipse, is, iste*.  
 dependent clause, 19, note, 20 and *a*.  
 deponents, see *verbs*.  
 descriptive abl. and gen., 306, *a*, 307.  
 deus, declension, 482.  
 diēs, declension, 275, 481.  
   gender, 276.  
 diphthongs, how pronounced, 40.  
   quantity, 43, 4.  
 direct statements, 321.  
 domī as locative, 195, *b*.  
 domō, used of place whence, 196 and *b*.  
 domum, used of place whither, 196 and *b*.  
 domus, declension, 482.  
   gender, 243, *a*.  
   construction, 197.  
 dōnum, declension, 84, 478.  
 dum with pres. ind., page 172, note 4.  
 duo, declension, 304, 486.

## E

*ē*-stems (nouns), 275, 481.  
*ē*-verbs, 59, 71.

*ē*-verbs, conjugation, 498.  
*ē*-verbs, 147.  
   conjugation, 499.  
 ego, declension, 492.  
 ēius compared with *suus*, 230, *a*.  
 enclitics, 44, 3.  
 eō, 414-416; conjugation, 507.  
 est often omitted, cf. page 190, note 14.  
 extent of time or space, how expressed,  
   277, *a*, 278.

## F

FABLES, 458-467.  
 fearing, verbs of, 415, *a*.  
 feminine gender, rule, 47, 2.  
 ferō, 414-416; conjugation, 506.  
 filia, declension, page 22, note 2.  
 filius, vocative, 84, *d*, 478, *a*.  
   declension, 478.  
 finis, 169, *c*.  
 finite verb, definition, 35.  
 fiō, 414-416; conjugation, 508.  
 fruor, followed by the ablative, 388.  
 fungor, followed by the ablative, 388.  
 future active participle in place of per-  
 fect passive participle in principal  
 parts, page 75, foot-note 1.  
 future perfect tense, formation of, 192,  
   *a* and *b*.

## G

gender, in English and in Latin, 25 and *a*.  
 general rules for Latin gender, 47, 1  
   and 2.  
   in first declension, 54.  
   in second declension, 85.  
   in third declension, 173-175.  
   in fourth declension, 243.  
   in fifth declension, 276.  
 genitive case, 46.  
   descriptive, 306, *a*, 307.  
   limiting, 68.  
   partitive, 256, 257.  
 gerund, a verbal noun, 365.  
   use, 367 and *a* and *b*.  
 gerundive, a verbal adjective, 361, 362.  
   agreement of, 361.  
   takes the dative of agent, 425, *d*, 426.  
   used with *ad* to express purpose, 362, 3.  
   used with *sum* to form the Second  
   Periphrastic Conjugation, 424.

**gerundive** with *sum* implies necessity, duty, or obligation, 425, *b*.  
**gradus**, declension, 242, 480.

## H

**hasta**, declension, 53, 477.  
**hīc**, declension, 200, 493.  
 uses, 201, *a-c*.  
**historical tenses**, 296, *a*.  
**homō**, declension, 163, 479, *b*.  
**hortor**, conjugation, 509.  
**hortus**, declension, 84, 478.  
**hostis**, declension, 169, 479, *c*.  
 distinguished from *inimicus*, 171.  
**humī**, as locative, 195, *b*.

## I

**i**, with force of a consonant before a vowel, 37.  
**i-stems** (nouns), 169, 479, *c*.  
**i-verbs**, conjugation, 501.  
**īdem**, declension, 329, 493.  
 use, 331, *a*.  
**īdūs**, gender, 243, *a*.  
**iēns**, declension, 485.  
**īgnis**, 169, *c*, 479, *c*.  
**ille**, declension, 200, 493.  
 usēs, 201, *a-d*.  
**imperative**, formation, 339.  
 in commands and appeals, 340 and *a*.  
**impersonal use** of verbs, 418 and *b*.  
**impersonal verb**, definition, 4, *f*.  
**in**, with acc. and abl., 77, 81, 127, 160.  
**indefinite pronouns and adjectives**, definition, 2, *e*, 3, *c*. See also *pronouns*.  
**independent clause**, 18, note, 20 and *b*.  
**indirect discourse**, 321-326.  
**indirect object**, definition, 14, note.  
 case of, 78, 79.  
**indirect questions**, 294, 295.  
**infinitive**, definition and English uses, 32 and *a* and *b*.  
 formation, 316.  
 used as subject, 317, *a*.  
 complementary, 317, *a*.  
 in indirect discourse, 321, 322.  
 tenses in indirect discourse, 323-326.  
 used as in English, 317.  
 not used to express purpose, 283, *b*.

**infinitive**, takes a subject accusative, 317, *a*, 318, rule 1.  
 in compound forms *esse* is often omitted, page 182, note 4.  
**inflection**, definition, 21.  
 of nouns, 22-25.  
 of adjectives, 26.  
 of verbs, 27-31.  
**inimicus**, distinguished from *hostis*, 171.  
**instrumental abl.**, 123, *a*, 124.  
**īsum**, followed by *in* with abl., 347, *a*.  
**interjection**, definition, 8.  
**interrogative adjectives**, 142-145.  
 pronouns declined, 142, 495.  
 table of meanings, 143.  
 definition, 2, *c*.  
**intersum**, followed by *inter* with acc., 347, *a*.  
**intransitive verbs**, definition, 4, *b*.  
 followed by dative, 393.  
**īō**, verbs in *-īō* of the third conjugation, 157.  
 conjugation, 500.  
**ipse**, declension, 329, 493.  
 used for emphasis, 331, *c*.  
 distinguished from *sē*, 331, *c*.  
**irregular adjectives** (genitive in *-ius*), 312, 486.  
 comparison: of adjectives, 254, 260, 489; of adverbs, 267.  
 verbs: *eō*, 414-416, 507; *ferō* and *fīō*, 414-416, 506, 508; *possum* and *prōsum*, 503, 504; *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 391-395, 505.  
**is**, declension, 138, 493.  
 common uses, 140.  
 used as an adjective, 140, *a*.  
 used as a pronoun, 140, *b*.  
 relation to *hīc* and *ille*, 201, *c*.  
 table of meanings, 139.  
**iste**, declension, 493.  
 uses of, 331, *a* and *b*.  
**iter**, declension, 482.  
**Iuppiter**, declension, 482.  
**iuvenis**, comparison, 260, 489.

## L

**līber**, declension, 103, 483.  
**liquid stems**, 163, 479, *b*.

liquids, 38.

locative case, 195, 197.

endings, 195, *a*.

in what words used, 195 and *b*.

### M

*māgnus*, comparison, 260, 489.

*mālō*, 391-395; conjugation, 505.

*malus*, comparison, 260, 489.

*manner*, how expressed, 128, *a*, 129.

*manus*, gender, 243, *a*.

*mare*, declension, 482.

*masculine*, rule of gender, 47, 1.

*means*, denoted by the abl., 123, *a*, 124.

*Mercurius*, has vocative in *-ī*, 84, *d*.

*mīles*, declension, 154, 479.

*mīlitiae*, as locative, 195, *b*.

*mīlle*, declension, 304, 486.

use, 305, *e*.

*miser*, comparison, 253.

*moneō*, conjugation, 498.

*moods*, definition, 29-31.

*multus*, comparison, 260, 489.

*mute stems*, 154, 479, *a*.

*mutēs*, 38.

followed by a liquid, 43, 6.

### N

*nāvis*, 169, *c*.

*nē*, *that (lest)*, 415, *a*.

introducing negative clauses of purpose, 284.

various ways of translating, 283, 288.

as negative of commands and appeals, 340, *a*, 2.

*-ne*, enclitic, 44, 3, 50, *d*.

*neuter*, see *nouns*.

*nōlō*, 391-395; conjugation, 505.

the imperatives *nōlī* and *nōlīte* in negative appeals or commands, 340.

*nominative case*, 46.

subject of a finite verb, 51.

in the third declension has a different vowel from the stem, 154, *e*.

of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 221, *a*.

predicate nominative, 15, *b*.

*nōnne*, suggests the answer *yes*, 273.

*nōs*, declension, 492.

*nouns*, definition, 1.

kinds and definitions, 1, *a-e*.

gender, 47 and 1 and 2.

first declension, 48, 53, 65, 76, 90, 477;

second, 84, 90, 103, 108, 478; third,

154, 163, 169, 173-175, 479; fourth,

242, 480; fifth, 275, 481.

predicate nouns, 98, *a*, 99.

rules of gender, 47, 1 and 2, 54, 85,

173-175, 243, 276.

*nūbēs*, declension, 169, 479, *c*.

*num* in questions, 273.

*number*, singular and plural, 23.

*numerals*, 304, 305, 309, 486.

table of, 491.

definition, 3, *b*.

### O

*o-stems* (second declension), 84, 103, 478.

*object*, definition, 14.

direct and indirect, 14, note.

of a transitive verb, 57.

indirect object, 79.

*ordinals*, definition, 3, *b*.

table, 491.

declined like *bonus*, 491.

### P

*participles*, definition and uses in English, 34 and *a* and *b*.

agreement, 235, *a*, note, 352, *b*, *c*.

declension, 352, *b*, 485.

equivalents in English, 353 and *a*.

time denoted by, 353, *a*.

future, used with *sum* to form the periphrastic conjugations, 424, 425.

have no perfect active, 357, *c*.

in deponent verbs, 386, *c*.

perfect of, in deponent verbs, 386, *d*.

often best rendered as clause, 353, *a*.

tenses of, relative to main verb, 353, *a*.

*partitive genitive*, 257.

*parvus*, comparison, 260, 489.

*passive*, compound forms, 235, *a*, and note.

formation, 205, *a* and *b*.

the agent expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 208.

*pater*, declension, 163, 479, *b*.

- penult**, 42, 5.  
when accented, 44, 2.
- perfect tense**, loss of *v* in, when contraction may take place, 414, *b*.  
See also *participles*.
- periphrastic conjugations**, 424-428.  
synopsis of, 510, 511.
- person**, distinction between first, second, and third, 2, *a*.  
of relative pronouns, 222, *a*.
- personal pronouns**, see *pronouns*.
- phrase**, definition and kinds, 16.
- piger**, declension, 108, 483.
- place**, where, whither, whence, with names of towns, 197.  
with places other than names of towns, 81, 159, 160.
- pluperfect tense**, formation of, 192, *a* and *b*.
- plūs**, declension, 261.
- portus**, irregular dat. and abl. plur., 242, *a*.
- possessive adjectives**, see *adjectives*.
- possum**, how compounded, 344, *b*.  
conjugation, 503.
- postquam**, with perfect tense, page 175, note 6.
- potiōr**, conjugation, 509.  
governs the ablative, 388.
- predicate**, definition, 11 and *b*.  
simple, 12.  
complete, 13.
- predicate adjectives**, 100, *a*.  
definition of, 15.
- predicate nominative**, 15, *b*.
- predicate nouns (nominative)**, 98, *a*, 99.  
definition of, 15.
- prepositions**, definition, 6.
- principal parts of verbs**, 131 and *a*.
- principal tenses**, 296, *a*.
- pronouns**, definition, 2.  
kinds and definitions, 2, *a-f*.  
demonstrative, definition, 2, *d*; full declension, 493; *hic* and *ille*, declension, 200; uses, 201, *a-d*; *is*, 138, 139; uses, 140, *a, b*; relation to *hic* and *ille*, 201, *c*; *iste*, *idem*, *ipse*, 329, 330; uses, 331, *a-c*.
- indefinite, definition, 2, *e*; *aliquis* and *quīdam*, 335, *b*, 496; *quisquam*, *quīvis*, *quisque*, 335, *c*; *quid*-forms used as pronouns, *quod*-forms as adjectives, 335, *d*.
- interrogative, definition, 2, *c*; declension, 142, 495; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
- personal, definition, 2, *a*; declension, 492; nominative expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 221, *a*; third person sometimes supplied by *is*, *hic*, or *ille*, 220, *b*; used with a reflexive sense, 221, *c*; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
- possessive, see *possessive adjectives*.
- reflexive, definition, 2, *f*; use, 220, *b*; of first and second person, 221, *c*.  
relative, definition, 2, *b*; agreement, 212, *a*, 213, 222, *a*; declension, 210, 494; table of meanings, 211; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
- pronunciation**, Roman method, sounds of the letters, 39-41.
- proper names in -ius** contract *ī* to *ī*, 84, *d*.
- prōsum**, how compounded, 344, *c*.  
conjugation, 504.
- puer**, declension, 103, 478.
- purpose clauses**, expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē*, 283, *a, b*, 284, 288.  
accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 362, *b*, 367, *b*.  
dative of service, 348, 349.  
relative clauses, 419, 420.  
supine in *-um*, 372, *a*, 373.  
not expressed by the infinitive, 283, *b*.  
review of expressions of purpose, 429.

## Q

- quam** with a comparative, 249, 250.
- que**, enclitic, 44, 3.
- questions**, indirect, 294-296.
- quī**, 210-213.  
declension, 210, 494.
- quīdam**, 335, *b*; declension, 496.
- quis**, 142-144.  
declension, 142, 495.

**quis**, after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, page 195, note 10.  
**quisquam**, 335, *c*  
**quisque**, 335, *c*.  
**quīvis**, 335, *c*.  
**quod**, used for *quid* as an interrogative adjective, 144, *b*.

## R

**reflexive pronouns**, see *pronouns*.  
**regō**, 147; conjugation, 499.  
**relative pronouns**, see *pronouns*.  
 clauses of purpose, 419, 420.  
**rēs**, declension, 275, 481.  
**result**, expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*, 289, 290.  
**rēx**, declension, 154, 479.  
**Roman method** of pronouncing Latin 39-41.  
**rūrī**, as locative, 195, *b*.  
**rūs**, the accusative of, 196, 2.  
 like names of towns, 196 and *b*. 197.

## S

**sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 331, *c*.  
**senex**, comparison, 260, 489.  
**sentence**, definition, 9.  
 kinds and definitions, 10, 17-19.  
 parts, 11-16, 20 and *a*, *b*, and *c*.  
**separation**, how expressed, 231, 232.  
**sequence** of tenses, 296, *a*, 297.  
**sequor**, conjugation, 509.  
**service**, dative of, 348, 349.  
**sibilant**, 38.  
**space**, extent of, 277, 278.  
**specification**, ablative of, 372, *b*, 374.  
**stem** of a word, defined, page 22, note 1.  
 of nouns of the first declension, page 22  
 of nouns of the second declension, page 32.  
 of nouns of the third declension, page 60; how found, 154, *c*, 169, *d*; the last vowel changed to form the nominative, 154, *e*; mute, 154; liquid, 163; *i*-stems, 169, 170.  
 of nouns of the fourth declension, page 98.  
 of nouns of the fifth declension, page 110.

**stem** of verbs, 59.  
 perfect participle stem in principal parts of verbs, 131.  
 perfect stem of verbs. 131, *b*, 136, *a*, 185, *b*, and note.  
 of adjectives of the third declension, page 72.  
**STORIES OF HERCULES**, 439-449.  
**STORIES OF ULYSSES**, 450-457.  
**STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY**, 468-475.  
**STORY OF THE ADUATUCI**, 476.  
**subject**, definition, 11 and *a*.  
 simple, 12.  
 complete, 13.  
 agreement of verb with, 61.  
 of a verb, 51.  
 of an infinitive, 317, *a*, 318.  
 not expressed, 61, *a*, *b*.  
**subjunctive**, in commands and appeals, hortatory, 340 and *a*; also page 184, note 2.  
 with *cum* temporal, causal, and concessive, 396-398.  
 imperfect subjunctive denoting present time, and pluperfect, past time, 404, *d*.  
 sequence of tenses in, 296, 297 and *a*.  
 sequence of present, 281, 282; of imperfect, 287; of perfect and pluperfect, 293.  
 present tense translated as future, 415, *b*.  
 of purpose, 283, 284, 288.  
 of result, 289, 290.  
 of indirect question, 294-296.  
 in relative clauses of purpose, 419, 420.  
 after verbs of fearing, 415, *a*.  
 in doubtful conditions, 404, *b*, 406.  
 in conditions contrary to fact, 404, *c*, 407.  
**suī**, declension, 492.  
 distinguished from *ipse*, 331, *c*.  
**sum**, 96; conjugation, 502.  
 compounds, 344, 345.  
**supine**, definition, 370.  
 in *-um*, 372, 1, 373.  
 in *-ū*, 372, 2, 374.  
**suus**, how formed and declined, 229.

**suus**, compared with *ēius*, 230, *a*.  
 omission of, 230, *b*.  
**syllables**, definition, number of, 42, 1.  
 division of, 42, 2, 3.  
 in compound words, 42, 4.  
 how named, 42, 5.  
 when long, 43, 5, 6.

## T

**temporal clauses** introduced by *cum*, 396, *a*, 397.  
**tense**, definition, 33 and *a*.  
**tenses**, of infinitive in indirect discourse, 323-326.  
 distinction in use between perfect and imperfect, 132, *b*.  
 sign of imperfect, 121, *a*.  
 sign of future, 126, *a*.  
 principal and historical, 296, *a*.  
 sequence of, 296, 297.  
**terminations**, definition, 53, *b*.  
 of first declension, 53.  
 of second declension, 84.  
 of third declension, consonant stems, 154; *i*-stems, 169.  
 of fourth declension, 242.  
 of fifth declension, 275.  
**time**, how expressed, 188.  
 extent, 278.  
**towns**, rules for names of, 197, 1, 2, 3.  
**transitive verb**, 4, *a*.  
**trēs**, declension, 304, 305, *b* and *f*, 486.  
**tū**, declension, 492.  
**turris**, 169, *c*, 479, *c*.  
**tuus**, how formed and declined, 229.  
 compared with *vester*, 229, note.

## U

**u** as a semivowel, page 15, note.  
**u-stems**, 242, 480.  
 -**ubus**, irregular dat. and abl. plur., 242, *a*.  
**ultima**, 42, 5.  
**ūnus**, declension, 304, 305, *f*, 486.  
**urbs**, declension, 169, 479, *c*.  
**ut**, of purpose (negative *nē*), 284.  
 translated in various ways, 283, 288.  
 of result (negative *ut nōn*), 289, 290.  
 translated *that not* with verbs of fearing, 415, *a*.

**ut**, translated *when* or *as*, when followed by the ind., page 185, note 2.  
**ūtor**, governs the abl., 388.

## V

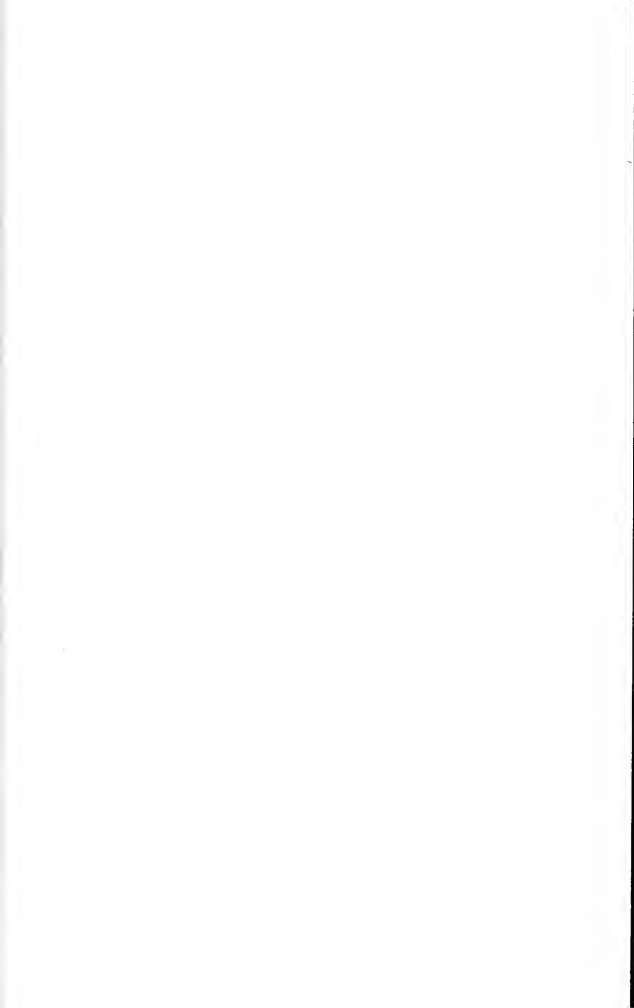
**v**, often lost between vowels in the perfect and cognate tenses, 414, *b*.  
**verbs**, definition, 4.  
 kinds and definitions, 4, *a-f*.  
 agreement, 61.  
 in relative clauses, 222, *a*.  
 case of subject, 51; of object, 57.  
 personal endings, 60, 132.  
 transitive in English are often intransitive in Latin and govern the dat., 392, *a*.  
 of *first conjugation*, 60; conjugation, 497.  
 of *second conjugation*, 71; conjugation, 498.  
 of *third conjugation*, 147; conjugation, 499.  
 of *third conjugation* in *-io*, 157; conjugation, 500.  
 of *fourth conjugation*, 185; conjugation, 501.  
 how conjugations are distinguished, 59.  
 principal parts, 131 and *a*.  
 review of four conjugations, 378-385.  
 deponents: form, meaning, how distinguished, 386; active forms, 386, *b*; participles of both voices, 386, *c*; perfect participle active in meaning, and gerundive passive, 386, *d*; conjugation, 509.  
 periphrastic conjugations, 424-428; synopsis of, 510, 511.  
 irregular verbs, see under *eō*, *fīō*, *ferō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *sum* and its compounds.  
 impersonal use and impersonal verbs, 418, *a* and *b*.  
**vereor**, conjugation, 509.  
**vescor**, governs ablative, 388.  
**vester**, how formed and declined, 229.  
 compared with *tuus*, 229, note.  
**vetus**, comparison, 260, 489.  
**vir**, declension, 478.  
**virtūs**, declension, 154, 479.



- vis**, declension, 482.
- vocabularies**, Latin-English, page 245.  
English-Latin, page 291.
- vocative case**, 46.
- vocative form**, 46, *a*.  
use, 53, *a*.  
of proper names in *-ius*, 84, *a*.  
of *us*-nouns of the second declension,  
84, *a*, 478, *a*.
- voice**, definition, 28.  
intransitive verbs used only in active,  
28, *a*.
- volnus**, declension, 163, 479, *b*.
- volō**, 391-395.  
conjugation, 505.
- vōs**, declension, 492.
- vowels**, quantity: short, 43, 2; long, 43,  
3, 4.









14 DAY USE  
 RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED  
**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
 on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

8 Nov '61	12 Nov '61
REC'D LD	REC'D LD
OCT 28 1961	JAN 21 '65 - 11 AM
DEAD	23 Feb '65 PH
25 APR '62 GC	IN STACKS
REC'D LD	MAY 10 1965
JUN 1 1962	REC'D LD
4 Oct '62 M S	JUN 7 '65 - 2 PM
REC'D LD	AUG 27 1976
SEP 20 1962	DEL. CIR. NO 2 4
REC'D LD	
JUN 3 '64 - 4 PM	

LD 21A-50m-8,'61  
 (C1795s10)476B

General Library  
 University of California  
 Berkeley

YB 38066

1955-1956

